

PREFACE

As the result of careful consideration and much patient labor, we are pleased to be able to offer to the church a new *Compendium*, differing from earlier publication in many important respects. Nothing comparable with it has previously been available. It has been prepared under the direction of the First Presidency, and has been completely reorganized. Greater convenience and more logical arrangements are thus afforded to the student. Many new references have been added.

This book was originally offered to the church as a result of the work of two distinguished members of the Reorganization, Henry A. Stebbins and Marietta Walker. It has been revised and enlarged a number of times, with notable contributions by S. A. Burgess and A. B. Phillips. The arrangement of this edition is largely the work of Leonard J. Lea, with valuable suggestions by Maurice L. Draper.

Biblical quotations used refer to the Inspired Version of the Holy Scriptures, but when the verse number of the King James text is different, it is added in parentheses at the end of the quotation. When the Inspired rendering differs from that of King James, the quotation is preceded by an asterisk (*), even if the difference is slight. But when the Inspired Version text quoted is new matter, no comparable text being found in the King James Version, the quotation is preceded by a dagger (†).

Book of Mormon quotations are to the Authorized Edition. For convenience, the four Books of Nephi are numbered in sequence, 3 Nephi being that on page 600, and 4 Nephi being that on page 681. The abbreviation D&C is for the Doctrine and Covenants.

THE FIRST PRESIDENCY

Chapter ONE THE GODHEAD THE DIVINE NATURE

Acts 17:29 - *"Forasmuch then as we are the offspring of God, we ought not to think that the Godhead is like unto gold, or silver, or stone, graven by art and man's device."*

***Romans 1:20** - *"For God hath revealed unto them the invisible things of him, from the creation of the world, which are clearly seen; things which are not seen being understood by the things that are made, through his eternal power and Godhead."*

Colossians 2: 9 - *"For in him [Christ] dwelleth all the fulness [fullness] of the Godhead bodily."*

NOTES

The word "Godhead" occurs in the Bible only three times, as quoted above. It is not found in the Doctrine and Covenants nor in the Book of Mormon.

In the time of the preparation of the Authorized Version of the Bible (before 1611) the suffix "head" was also spelled "hed," and was synonymous with the suffix "hood." Thus the meaning of the word is "Godhood" "Divinity," or "Deity."

This meaning is illustrated in the *Emphatic Diaglott*, which translates each of the three examples quoted above as "Deity." Goodspeed, in the American Translation, gives them, in the same order, as "the divine nature," "his divine character," and "God's nature." Moffatt's translation gives them as, "the divine nature," "divine being," and "Deity."

This use of the suffix "head" is now obsolete, and survives only in a very few instances.

THE TRIUNE GODHEAD

Matthew 28:18 - *"Baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost" (19).*

***Luke 3:28, 29** - *"Jesus also . . . being baptized of him, and praying, the heaven was opened; and the Holy Ghost descended in bodily shape like a dove, and a voice came upon him from heaven, which said, Thou art my beloved Son; in thee I am well pleased" (21, 22).*

Acts 7:55, 56 - *"He, being full of the Holy Ghost, looked up steadfastly into heaven, and saw the glory of God, and Jesus standing on the right hand of God. And said, Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of Man standing on the right hand of God."*

Acts 17:29 - *"Forasmuch then as we are the offspring of God, we ought not to think that the Godhead is like unto gold, or silver, or stone, graven by art and man's device."*

Colossians 2:8, 9 - *"Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world, and not after Christ. For in him dwelleth all the fullness of the Godhead bodily."*

1 John 5:7 - *"There are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one."*

Isaiah 48:16, 17; John 14:26; *Colossians 2:2; *1 Timothy 3:16; 2 Nephi 13:32.

Alma 8:104 - *"Christ the Son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one eternal God."*

3 Nephi 13:22, 23 - *"I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one; and the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me."*

D&C 17:5 - *“Should believe in the gifts and callings of God by the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of the Father, and of the Son, which Father, Son, and Holy Ghost are one God, infinite and eternal, without end.”*

D&C 17:21 - *“I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.”*

UNITY OF THE SON WITH THE FATHER

***John 3:35** - *“The Father loveth the Son, and hath given all things into his hands.”*

John 5:19 - *“The Son can do nothing of himself, but what he seeth the Father doeth; for what things soever he doeth, those also doeth the Son likewise.”*

John 5:20 - *“For the Father loveth the Son, and showeth him all things that himself doeth; and he will show him greater works than these, that ye may marvel.”*

***John 5:23** - *“That all men should honor the son, even as they honor the Father. He who honoreth not the Son, honoreth not the Father who hath sent him.”*

John 5:26, 27 - *“For as the Father hath life in himself, so hath he given to the Son to have life in himself; and hath given him authority to execute judgment [judgment]also, because he is the Son of Man.”*

John 10:30 - *“I and my Father are one.”*

John 14:10 - *“Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself; but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works.”*

John 17:21 - 23 - *“As thou, Father, art in me, and I in thee, that they also may be one in us . . . that they may be one, even as we are one: I in them, and thou in me, - that they may be made perfect in one.”*

John 6:44; 12:44, 45; 17:11, 21 - 23; 1 John 2:23, 24; 4:15; 5:7 - 9

3 Nephi 4:45 - *“I was with the Father from the beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father in me.”*

GOD AND CHRIST TWO DISTINCT PERSONAGES

***Matthew 4:1** - *“Then Jesus was led up of the Spirit, into the wilderness, to be with God:*

John 3:17 - *“For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn world; but that the world through him might be saved.”*

John 7:17, 29 - *“Whether it be of God, or whether I speak of myself. . . . But I know him; for I am from him, and he hath sent me.*

John 12:49, 50 - *“For I have not spoken of myself; but the Father which sent me, he gave me a commandment, what I should say, and what I should speak. And I know that his commandment is life everlasting.”*

John 14:28 - *“If ye loved me, ye would rejoice, because I said, I go unto the Father: for my Father is greater than I.”*

Acts 7:55 - *“But he, being full of the Holy Ghost, looked up steadfastly into heaven, and saw the glory of God, and Jesus standing on the right hand of God.”*

Psalms 110:1 - *“The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.”*

John 5:26; 8:18, 42; 16:28; 17:5, 18 - 22; Hebrews 1:5, 6.

THE ATTRIBUTES OF DEITY CREATION

†**Genesis 2:4, 5** - *“The generations of the heaven, and of the earth, when they were created in the day that I the Lord God made the heaven and the earth, . . . For I, the Lord God, created all things of which I have spoken, spiritually, before they were naturally upon the face of the earth.”*

†**Genesis 6:46, 52** - *“The heavens he made; the earth is his footstool, and the foundation thereof is his; . . . I am God; I made the world, and men before they were in the flesh.”*

†**Genesis 7:36** - *“Were it possible that man could number the particles of the earth, and millions of earths like this, it would not be a beginning to the number of thy creations.”*

Nehemiah 9:6 - *“Thou hast made heaven, the heavens, with all their host, the earth, and all things that are therein, the seas, and all that is therein.”*

Job 26:7, 13, 14 - *“He stretcheth out the north over the empty place, and hangeth the earth upon nothing; . . . by his spirit he hath garnished the heavens; Lo, these are parts of his ways; but how little a portion is heard of him?”*

Psalms 8:3, 4 - *“When I consider thy heavens, the work of thy fingers, the moon and the stars, which thou hast ordained; what is man, that thou art mindful of him?”*

Job 26:7, 13, 14 - *“He stretcheth out the north over the empty place, and hangeth the earth upon nothing. . . . By his Spirit he hath garnished the heavens; . . . Lo, these are parts of his ways; but how little a portion is heard of him?”*

Psalms 8:3, 4 - *“When I consider thy heavens, the work of thy fingers, the moon and the stars, which thou hast ordained; what is man, that thou art mindful of him?”*

Psalms 74:16, 17 - *“The day is thine, the night also is thine; thou hast prepared the light and the sun. Thou hast set all the borders of the earth; thou hast made summer and winter.”*

Ecclesiastes 3:11 - *“He hath made every thing beautiful in his time; . . . no man can find out the work that God maketh from the beginning to the end.”*

Ecclesiastes 11:5 - *“As thou knowest not what is the way of the spirit, . . .so thou knowest not the works of God who maketh all.”*

Isaiah 45:12, 18 - *“I have made the earth, and created man upon it; I, even my hands, have stretched out the heavens, and all their hosts have I commanded . . . he created it not in vain, he formed it to be inhabited.”*

Jeremiah 32:17 - *“Ah Lord God! behold, thou hast made the heaven, and the earth by thy great power and stretched - out arm, and there is nothing too hard for thee.”*

Acts 17:24 - *“God that made the world and all things therein, seeing that he is Lord of heaven and earth, dwelleth not in temples made with hands.”*

Hebrews 1:10 - *“And, thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth; and the heavens are the works of thine hands.”*

***Genesis 1:1 - 3; Isaiah 42:5; 45:18; Hebrews 3:4.**

Alma 16:55 - *“All the planets . . . witness that there is a Supreme Creator: and yet do ye go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God?”*

1 Nephi 6:19, 20 - *“I am the first, and I am also the last. Mine hand hath also laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens.”*

2 Nephi 1:95 - *“For there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them is.”*

Jacob 3:12, 13 - *“By the power of his word, all things.”*

D&C 17:4 - *“The framer of heaven and earth and all things which are in them.”*

D&C 22:21 - *“And worlds without number have I created, and I also created them for mine own purpose; and by the Son I created them.”*

FOREKNOWLEDGE AND POWER

Isaiah 42:9 - *“Behold, the former things are come to pass, and new things do I declare; before they spring forth I tell you of them.”*

Isaiah 44:7 - *“And who, as I, shall call, and shall declare it, and set it in order for me, since I appointed the ancient people? and the things that are coming, and shall come, let them show unto them.”*

Isaiah 46:9, 10 - *“For I am God, and there is none else; I am God, and there is none like me, declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times the things that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure.”*

Isaiah 45:21; 48:3, 5; Acts 15:18.

1 Nephi 3:43 - *“Hosanna to the Lord, the most high God; for he is God over all the earth.”*

Mosiah 2:14, 15 - *“Believe that he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth; believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend.”*

HOLY AND JUST

Deuteronomy 32:4 - *“He is the Rock, his work is perfect; for all his ways are judgment; a God of truth and without iniquity, just right is he.”*

Job 34:12 - *“God will not do wickedly, neither will the Almighty pervert judgment.”*

Psalms 47: 8 - *“God sitteth upon the throne of his holiness.”*

Psalms 89:14 - *“Justice and judgment are the habitation of thy throne; mercy and truth shall go before thy face.”*

Isaiah 6:3 - *“Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory.”*

Acts 17:31 - *“He will judge the world in righteousness.”*

Romans 2:6 - *“Who will render to every man according to his deeds.”*

1 Peter 1:16, 17 - *“It is written, Be ye holy; for I am holy. And if ye call on the Father, who without respect of persons judgeth according to every man’s work, pass the time of your sojourning here in fear.”*

1 John 1:9 - *“If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.”*

Psalms 11:7; 33:5; 99:9; 119:137; Romans 2:2; 1 Peter 1:15.

Mosiah 3:21 - *“That ye may have everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him, who created all things.”*

UNCHANGABLE

* **Numbers 23:19** - *“God is not a man, that he should lie; neither the son of man, that he should repent; hath he said, and shall he not do it? or hath he spoken, and shall he not make it good?”*

Psalms 33:11 - *“The counsel of the Lord standeth forever, the thoughts of his heart to all generations.”*

Psalms 102:26, 27 - *“They shall perish, but thou shalt endure; yea, all of them shall wax old like a garment; as a vesture shalt thou change them, and they shall be changed; but thou art the same, and thy years shall have no end.”*

Malachi 3: 6 - *“For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.”*

James 1:17 - *“Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and cometh down from the Father of lights, with whom is no variableness, neither shadow of turning.”*

Psalms 102:12, 27; Lamentations 5:19; Hebrews 13:8.

Moroni 8:19 - *“God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.”*

D&C 17:2 - *“That God does inspire men and call them to his holy work in this age and generation, as well as in generations of old, thereby showing that he is the same God yesterday, today, and for ever.”*

D&C 17:4 - *“By these things we know that there is a God in heaven who is infinite and eternal, from everlasting to everlasting the same unchangeable God.”*

IMPARTIAL

Job 34:19, 23 - *“Him that accepteth not the persons of princes, nor regardeth the rich more than the poor? . . . For he will not lay upon man more than right.”*

Matthew 5:47 - *“For he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust.” (45)*

Acts 10:34, 35 - *“I perceive that God is no respecter of persons; but in every nation he that feareth him, and worketh righteousness, is accepted with him.”*

Romans 2:11 - *“For there is no respect of persons with God.”*

1 Peter 1:17 - *“And if ye call on the Father, who without respect of persons judgeth according to every man’s work, pass the time of your sojourning here in fear.”*

Acts 15:9; Romans 10:12; Ephesians 6:9.

MERCIFUL AND TRUTHFUL

***Exodus 34:7** - *“Keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, and that will by no means clear the rebellious.”*

Numbers 14:18 - *“The Lord is long - suffering, and of great mercy, forgiving iniquity and transgression, and by no means clearing the guilty.”*

Psalms 25:10 - *“All the paths of the Lord are mercy and truth unto such as keep his covenants and his testimonies.”*

***Psalms 36:5** - *“O Lord, thou art in the heavens; they are full of thy mercy.”*

Psalms 89:14 - *“Mercy and truth shall go before thy face.”*

Psalms 100:5 - *“For the Lord is good; his mercy is everlasting; and his truth endureth to all generations.”*

Psalms 107:1 - *“Oh give thanks unto the Lord, for he is good; for his mercy endureth for ever.”*

Psalms 108:4 - *“For thy mercy is great above the heavens; and thy truth reacheth unto the clouds.”*

Psalms 147:3 - *“He healeth the broken in heart, and bindeth up their wounds.”*

Helaman 2:25 - *“The Lord is merciful unto all who will in the sincerity of their hearts, call upon his holy name.”*

Jarom 1:17; Alma 14:124; Alma 19:97.

Deuteronomy 4:31; Psalms 62:12; 86:5, 15; 89:2; Hosea 14:3; Micah 7:18; Romans 11:32; Titus 3:5; James 5: 11; 1 Peter 1:3

WISDOM AND KNOWLEDGE

Job 12:13 - *"With him is wisdom and strength, he hath counsel and understanding."*

Psalms 94:9, 10 - *"He that planteth the ear, shall he not hear? he that formed the eye, shall he not see? He that chastiseth the heathen, shall not he correct? he that teacheth man knowledge, shall not he know?"*

Psalms 147:4, 5 - *"He telleth the number of the stars; he calleth them all by their names. Great is our Lord, and of great power; his understanding is infinite."*

Acts 15:18 - *"Known unto God are all his works from the beginning of the world."*

2 Nephi 1:87; 6:19; Alma 14:114

REVELATION TO PEOPLE IN EVERY AGE

***Genesis 4:4, 5** - *"They heard the voice of the Lord, . . . and gave unto them commandments" (3:8).*

THE FATHER

ETERNAL AND SELF - EXISTENT

†Genesis 1:2 - *"I am the Beginning and the End; the Almighty God."*

†Genesis 6:70 - *"Him who was without beginning of days or end of years, from all eternity to all eternity."*

†Genesis 7:35 - *"How is it that thou canst weep, seeing thou art holy, and from all eternity to all eternity?"*

†Genesis 7:42 - *"Man of Counsel is my name; and Endless and Eternal is my name also."*

Exodus 3:14 - *"And God said unto Moses, I AM THAT I AM; and he said, thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, I AM hath sent me unto you."*

Deuteronomy 32:14 - *"For I lift up my hand, to heaven, and say, I live for ever."*

Psalms 90:2 - *"Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever thou hadst formed the earth and the world, even from everlasting to everlasting, thou art God."*

Isaiah 43:10, 11 - *"That ye may know and believe me, and understand that I am he; before me there was no God formed, neither shall there be after me. I, even I, am the Lord; and beside me there is no saviour."*

Colossians 1:16, 17 - *"All things were created by him, and for him; and he is before all things, and by him all things consist."*

Job 6:26; Psalms 83:18; Isaiah 44:6; Hebrews 1:2; 10 - 12; *Revelation 1:8.

D&C 22:2 - *"And God spake unto Moses, saying, Behold, I am the Lord God Almighty, and endless is my name, for I am without beginning of days or end of years."*

†Genesis 6:4 - *"God revealed himself unto Seth, and he rebelled not."*

†Genesis 6:37 - *"The Lord spake unto Enoch, and said unto him Anoint thine eyes with clay, and wash them, and thou shalt see; and he did so."*

Numbers 11:29 - *"Would God that all the Lord's people were prophets, and that the Lord would put his Spirit upon them."*

1 Samuel 3:21 - *"The Lord revealed himself to Samuel in Shiloh by the word of the Lord."*

Isaiah 28:10 - *“For precept must be upon precept, precept upon precept; line upon line, line upon line; here a little, and there a little.”*

Isaiah 45:11 - *“Thus saith the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, and his Maker, Ask me of things to come concerning my sons, and concerning the work of my hands command ye me.”*

Amos 3:7 - *“Surely the Lord God will do nothing, until he revealeth his secret unto his servants the prophets.”*

Amos 8:11 - *“Behold, the days come, saith the Lord God, that I will send a famine in the land, not a famine of bread, nor a thirst for water, but of hearing the words of the Lord.”*

Daniel 2:47 - *“Your God is a God of gods, and a Lord of kings, and a revealer of secrets, seeing thou couldst reveal this secret.”*

John 8:32, 47 - *“And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free. . . . He that is of God receiveth God’s words; ye therefore receive them not, because ye are not of God.”*

Philemon 3:15 - *“Let us therefore, as many as be perfect, be thus minded; and if in anything ye be otherwise minded, God shall reveal even this unto you.”*

1 Kings 18:24; 19:13; John 14:21; 15:26; 16:13; 1 Corinthians 12:28; 14:6, 26, 39; Revelation 19:10.

A PERSONAL BEING

***Genesis 1:29** - *“And I, God, created man in mine own image, in the image of mine Only Begotten created I him; male and female created I them” (27).*

Exodus 19:17 - *“And Moses brought forth the people out of the camp to meet with God; and they stood at the nether part of the mount.”*

Exodus 20:21 - *“And the people stood afar off, and Moses drew near unto the thick darkness where God was.”*

Exodus 24:10 - *“And they saw the God of Israel; and there was under his feet as it were a paved work of a sapphire stone, and as it were the body of heaven in his clearness.”*

Exodus 33:11 - *“And the Lord spake unto Moses face to face, as a man speaketh unto his friend.”*

***Exodus 33:23** - *“And I will take away mine hand, and thou shalt see my back parts, but my face shall not be seen, as at other times; for I am angry with my people Israel.”*

Deuteronomy 9:10 - *“And the Lord delivered unto me two tables of stone, written with the finger of God.”*

Isaiah 6:1 - *“I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.”*

Acts 7:55 - *“But he, being full of the Holy Ghost, looked up steadfastly into heaven, and saw the glory of God, and Jesus standing on the right hand of God.”*

Philemon 2:6 - *“Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God.”*

Hebrews 1:3 - *“Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high.”*

Genesis 17:1, 29; 32: 24 - 30; 35:9, 11, 13; Numbers 11:25; 23:4, 16; 1 Kings 19:11; 2 Chronicles 6:18; Isaiah 63:1, *John 1:19; Heb 3:3; 1 John 4:12; Revelation 20:11.

1 Nephi 1:7 - *“He saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.”*

APPEARS TO MAN

***Genesis 2:18, 19** (Adam).

†Genesis 6:44, 7:26, 27 (5:22 - 24) (Enoch).

Genesis 12:7; 17:1; 18:1 (Abraham).

Genesis 26:24 (Isaac).

Genesis 28:13; 32:30; 35:1, 7, 9; 48:3 (Jacob).

Exodus 3:6; 6:3; 33:11, 23 (Moses).

Exodus 24:10 (Moses and seventy elders).

1 Kings 3:5; 9:2; 11:9 (Solomon in dream).

1 Kings 22:19 (Micah).

2 Chronicles 3:1 (David).

2 Chronicles 18:18 (Micah).

Job 42:5 (Job).

Isaiah 6:1 (Isaiah).

Jeremiah 31:3 (Jeremiah).

Amos 9:1 (Amos).

Acts 7:2 (Abraham).

Acts 7:56 (Stephen).

Revelation 5:1 (John).

D&C 67:3 - *“ . . . it is your privilege, and a promise I give unto you . . . that inasmuch as you . . . humble yourselves before me, . . . the veil shall be rent, and you shall see me and know that I am; not with the carnal, neither natural mind, but with the spiritual; for no man has seen God at any time in the flesh, except quickened by the Spirit of God; neither can any natural man abide the presence of God; neither after the carnal mind.”*

1 Nephi 1:7; Ether 1:76.

(Some students have held that some of the foregoing appearances were by the pre - existent Son rather than by the Father.)

GOD'S FORM AND PARTS

Arm - Exodus 6:6; Job 40:9; Psalms 77:15; 89:10, 21; Isaiah 30:30; 40:10; 49:22; 51:5, 9; 52:10; 53:1; 59:16; 62:8; 63:5; Jeremiah 21:5; 27:5; Luke 1:50; John 12:38; Acts 13:17.

Body - Genesis 6:9; Exodus 24:10; *33:20, 23; Hebrews 1:3.

Breath - 2 Samuel 22:16; Job 4:9; 33:4; 37:10; Psalms 18:15; 33:6; Isaiah 11:4; 30:33.

Eyes - 2 Chronicles 16:9; Proverbs 22:12; Isaiah 1:15; 1 Peter 3:12.

Face - †Genesis 7:4; 32:30; Exodus 33:11, 20, 23; Numbers 14:14; Deuteronomy 5:4; 31:17; 2 Chronicles 30:9; Psalms 27:9; Isaiah 59:2; 64:7; Jeremiah 33:5; Ezek 39:23; Micah 3:4; Matthew 18:10.

Finger - †Genesis 6:47; Exodus 8:19; 31:18; Psalms 8:3; Ether 1:69 - 71.

Form - Genesis 1:27, 29; Exodus 24:10, 11; 33:11, 23; Isaiah 6:1; Acts 7:55; Philemon 2:6; Hebrews 1:3.

Feet - Exodus 24:9, 10; Psalms 18:9; Lam. 3:34; Habakkuk 3:5.

Parts - Exodus 33:21, 23.

Hand - Genesis 49:24; Exodus 24:11; Ezra 8:22; Isaiah 62:3; Hebrews 10:12.

Lips - Job 11:5; 23:12; Psalms 89:34; Isaiah 11:4; 30:27.

Loins - Isaiah 11:5; Ezekiel 1:27; 8:2.

Mouth - †Genesis 5:2; Numbers 12:8; Deuteronomy 8:3; 32:1; 1 Kings 13:21; 1 Chronicles 16:12; Isaiah 1:20; 34:16; 45:23; 55:11.

Nostrils - Exodus 15:8; 2 Samuel 22:9, 16; Job 4:9; Isaiah 65:5.

Tongue - Isaiah 28:11; 30:27; Habakkuk 1:13.

Wings (symbolic) - Psalms 36:7; 57:1; 63:7; 91:4; Malachi 4:2.

OMNIPRESENT BY HIS SPIRIT

***Genesis 1:5** - *“And my Spirit moved upon the face of the water. for I am God” (3).*

Job 26:13 - *“By his Spirit he hath garnished the heavens; his hand hath formed the crooked serpent.”*

Psalms 139:7-10 - *“Whither shall I go from thy Spirit? or whither shall I flee from thy presence? If I ascend up into heaven, thou art there; if I make my bed in hell, behold, thou art there. If I take the wings of the morning, and dwell in the uttermost parts of the sea; even there shall thy hand lead me, and thy right hand shall hold me.”*

John 14:16 - *“And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you forever.”*

Acts 8:39 - *“The Spirit of the Lord caught away Philip, that the eunuch saw him no more.”*

Isaiah 32:15; Jeremiah 23:23, 24; 1 Corinthians 2:10; 6:19; Ephesians 4:6.

1 Nephi 3:38 - *“I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, yea, into an exceeding high mountain.”*

THE SON THE SON OF GOD

Isaiah 9:6 - *“For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder; and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor [counselor], The mighty God, The everlasting Father, the Prince of Peace.”*

Psalms 2:7 - *“I will declare the decree; the Lord hath said unto me, Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee.”*

***Matthew 3:46** - *“And lo, he heard a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased Hear ye him” (17).*

John 10:36 - *“Say ye of him, whom the Father hath sanctified, and sent into the world, Thou blasphemest; because I said, I am the Son of God?”*

Hebrews 1:8 - *“But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever; a sceptre [scepter] of righteousness is the sceptre of thy kingdom.”*

Psalms 45:6, 7; 110:1; Matthew 17:4; 22:42; *Romans 9:5; 1 Corinthians 2:8; Colossians 2:9; 1 Timothy 3:16; Revelation 17:14; 19:16

1 Nephi 3:62 - *“And the angel said unto me, Behold the Lamb of God, yea, even the Son of the eternal Father.”*

Jacob 3:5 - *“They believed in Christ, and worshiped the Father in his name.”*

Alma 3:83 - *“I know that Jesus Christ shall come, yea, the Son, the only begotten of the Father, full of grace, and mercy, and truth.”*

D&C 17: 5 - *“Wherefore the almighty God gave his only begotten Son, as it is written in those scriptures which have been given of him: he suffered temptations but gave no heed unto them; he*

was crucified, died, and rose again the third day; and ascended into heaven to sit down on the right hand of the Father, to reign with almighty power according to the will of the Father."

A CREATOR

***John 1:3** - *"All things were made by him; and without him was not anything made which was made."*

Ephesians 3:9 - *"And to make all men see what is the fellowship of the mystery, which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God, who created all things by Jesus Christ."*

Colossians 1:16 - *"For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers; all things were created by him, and for him."*

Hebrews 1:2 - *"Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds."*

Helaman 5:66 - *"That ye might know of the coming of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the father of heaven and earth, the creator of all things."*

Mosiah 1:102 - *"And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the father of heaven and earth, the creator of all things."*

3 Nephi 4:44 - *"Behold, I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are."*

D&C 22:21; 85:2; 90:1.

PRE - EXISTENCE

***Genesis 1:27** - *"And I, God, said unto mine Only Begotten, which was with me from the beginning, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness; and it was so" (26).*

Daniel 3: 25 - *"I see four men . . . and the form of the fourth is like the Son of God."*

Daniel 7:13 - *"One like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven."*

John 1:2 - *"The same was in the beginning with God."*

John 7:29 - *"But I know him; for I am from him, and he hath sent me."*

John 8:42 - *"I proceeded forth and came from God; neither came I of myself, but he sent me."*

John 16:28 - *"I came forth from the Father, and am come into the world; again, I leave the world, and go to the Father."*

John 17:5 - *"And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was."*

John 6:33.

FIRST COMING OF MESSIAH FORETOLD

Genesis 49:10 - *"The scepter shall not depart from Judah . . . until Shiloh come."*

Deuteronomy 18:18 - *"I will raise them up a prophet from among their brethren, like unto thee, and will put my words in his mouth."*

Psalms 16:10 - *"For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption."*

Psalms 22:1 - *"They pierced my hands and my feet."*

Psalms 22:18 - *"They part my garments among them, and cast lots upon my vesture."*

Psalms 34:20 - *"He keepeth all his bones; not one of them is broken."*

Psalms 69:21 - *"They gave me also gall for my meat; and in my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink."*

Isaiah 53:2, 3 - *"For he shall grow up before him as a tender Plant, and as a root out of a dry ground; he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him, there is no beauty that we should desire him. He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows and acquainted with grief; and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not."*

Isaiah 53:5 - *"But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed."*

Isaiah 53:7 - *"He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth; he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth."*

Isaiah 53:12 - *"He was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors."*

Daniel 9:25, 26 - *"Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem, unto the Messiah the Prince, shall be seven weeks, and three score and two weeks."*

Micah 5:2 - *"But thou, Beth - lehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth, have been from of old, from everlasting."*

Zechariah 9:9 - *"Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion; shout, O daughter of Jerusalem; behold, thy king cometh unto thee; he is just, and having salvation; lowly, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass."*

Zechariah 11:12 - *"So they weighed for my price thirty pieces of silver."*

Matthew 27:9; John 19:24, 29, 36.

1 Nephi 3:4 - *"Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord raise up among the Jews, even a Messiah; or, in other words, the Savior of the world."*

1 Nephi 3:71 - 73, 75, 78 - *"And I looked and beheld the Redeemer of the world. . . . And I also beheld the prophet who should prepare the way before him. And the Lamb of God went forth and was baptized of him. . . . And I beheld that he went forth ministering unto the people in power and great glory. . . . And I also beheld twelve others following him."*

THE MISSION OF CHRIST FORETOLD

***Genesis 3:21** - *"And I will put enmity between thee and the woman; between thy seed and her seed; and he shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel" (15).*

†Genesis 4:6 - *"After many days, an angel of the Lord appeared unto Adam saying, Why dost thou offer sacrifices unto the Lord And Adam said unto him, I know not, save the Lord commanded me. And then the angel spake, saying, This thing is a similitude of the sacrifice of the Only Begotten of the Father."*

†Genesis 5:2 - *"As many as believed in the Son, and repented of their sins, should be saved."*

†Genesis 5:44 - *"And thus the gospel began to be preached from the beginning, being declared by holy angels, sent forth from the presence of God; and by his own voice, and by the gift of the Holy Ghost."*

†Genesis 7:54 - *"And, behold, Enoch saw the day of the coming of the Son of Man, even in the flesh."*

†Genesis 7:62 - *“And the Lord said unto Enoch, Look; and he looked, and beheld the Son of Man lifted up on the cross, after the manner of men.”*

Genesis 22:22 - *“And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed” (18).*

Luke 24:26 - *“And beginning at Moses and all the prophets he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself” (27).*

Luke 24:45 - *“And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day” (46).*

John 1:45 - *“We have found him of whom Moses in the law, and the prophets, did write, Jesus of Nazareth.”*

John 8:56 - *“Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day; and he saw it and was glad.”*

Acts 3:18, 22 - *“Those things, which God before had showed by the mouth of all his prophets, that Christ should suffer, he hath so fulfilled. . . . A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me.*

Acts 26:22, 23 - *“Saying none other things than those which the prophets and Moses, did say should come. That Christ should suffer, and that he should be the first that should rise from the dead.”*

1 Corinthians 10:2 - 4 - *“And were all baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea; and did all eat the same spiritual meat; and did all drink the same spiritual drink; for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them; and that Rock was Christ.”*

Galatians 3:8, 29 - *“And the Scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the heathen through faith, preached before the gospel unto Abraham. . . .If ye are Christ’s then are ye Abraham’s seed, and heirs according to the promise.”*

Galatians 3:16, 17 - *“Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ. And this I say, that the covenant, that was confirmed before of God in Christ, the law, which was four hundred and thirty years after, can not disannul, that it should make the promise of none effect.”*

Galatians 4:4 - *“But when the fullness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son.”*

Hebrews 2:14 - *“That through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil.”*

***Hebrews 4:2** - *“For unto us was the rest preached, as well as unto them; but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard it.”*

Hebrews 5:6 - *“As he saith also in another place, Thou be art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.” (See also Hebrews 5:10; 6:20 7:11, 15 - 17, 21.)*

Hebrews 11:26 - *“Moses . . . Esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt; for he had respect unto the recompense of the reward.”*

***1 Peter 1:11** - *“Searching what time, and what manner of salvation the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory which should follow.”*

***Jude 1:14** - *“And Enoch also, the seventh from Adam prophesied of these, saying, Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousand of his Saints.”*

Revelation 13:8 - *“The Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.”*

Job 19:25; Luke 24:26; John 1:45; 4:44; Acts 7:37; 18:28; 28:23; 1 Corinthians 15:4; 1 John 3:8.

Mosiah 1:104, 105 - *“And even after all this, that they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall scourge him, and shall crucify him. And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth to judge the world.”*

Jacob 3:4 - *"For this intent have we written these things, that they may know that we knew of Christ and that we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming, and not only we ourselves . . . but also all holy prophets which were before us."*

Early Book of Mormon references to Jesus: **1 Nephi, chapters 3, 4; 2 Nephi 7:5 - 7; 8:3 - 14; 11 - 24, 27, 32 - 36, 39, 43, 45 - 51, 54 , 78 - 79; Mosiah 1:97 - 105, 116; 3:8 - 11; 8:11 - 18, 28 - 34; Alma 3:83; 5:18 - 22.**

SOVEREIGNTY OF CHRIST

Genesis 49:10 - *"The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be."*

†Psalms 24:10 - *"Even the king of glory shall come unto you; and shall redeem his people, and shall establish them in righteousness" (9).*

Psalms 110:1 - *"The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool."*

Isaiah 9:6 - *"For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder; and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace."*

Jeremiah 23:5, 6 - *"I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth . . . and this is his name whereby he shall be called, the Lord our Righteousness."*

Daniel 7:13, 14 - *"Behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him. And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed."*

Zechariah 9:9, 10 - *"Thy King cometh unto thee: he is just, and having salvation; lowly, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass... and his dominion shall be from sea even to sea, and from the river even to the ends of the earth."*

Matthew 25:32 - *"When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory" (31).*

Matthew 28:17 - *"And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth" (18).*

John 18:36 - *"Jesus answered, My kingdom is not of this world."*

Acts 2:30 - *"God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne."*

Romans 14:9, 10 - *"For to this end Christ both died, and rose, and revived, that he might be Lord both of the dead and living . . . for we shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ."*

1 Corinthians 15:28 - *"And when all things shall be subdued unto him then shall the Son also himself be subject unto him that put all things under him, that God may be all in all."*

Ephesians 1:21, 22 - *"Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come: and hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church."*

Philemon 2:9 - 11 - *"God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name: that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth,*

and things under the earth; and that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.”

***1 Timothy 6:15** - *“Who is the blessed and only Potentate, the King of kings, and Lord of lords, to whom be honor and power everlasting” (15, 16).*

Revelation 1:18 - *“I am he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death.”*

Revelation 11:15 - *“The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdom of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.”*

Revelation 17:14 - *“These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings.”*

***Romans 14:11.**

THE FUTURE COMING OF CHRIST

Job 19:25 - *“For I know that my Redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth.”*

Psalms 50:2, 3 - *“Out of Zion, the perfection of beauty, God hath shined. Our God shall come, and shall not keep silence; a fire shall devour before him, and it shall be very tempestuous round about him.”*

Psalms 102:16 - *“When the Lord shall build up Zion, he shall appear in his glory.”*

Zechariah 14:4 - *“And his feet shall stand in that day upon the mount of Olives, which is before Jerusalem on the east.”*

Matthew 16:30 - *“For the Son of Man shall come in the glory of his Father, with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works” (27).*

***Matthew 24:37** - *“And as I said before, after the tribulation of those days, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken, then shall appear the sign of the Son of Man in heaven; and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn” (30)*

***Luke 12:41, 42** - *“For, behold, he cometh in the first watch of the night, and he shall also come in the second watch, and again he shall come in the third watch. And verily I say unto you, he hath already come, as it is written of him; and again when he shall come in the second watch, or come in the third watch, blessed are those servants when he cometh, that he shall find so doing” (38 - 43).*

Luke 21:28 - *“And then shall they see the Son of Man coming in a cloud, with power and great glory” (27).*

***John 14:3** - *“And when I go, I will prepare a place for you, and come again, and receive you unto myself; that where I am, ye may be also.”*

Acts 1:11 - *“Which also said, Ye men of Galilee, why stand ye gazing up into heaven? this same Jesus, which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come in like manner as ye have seen him go into heaven.”*

1 Thessalonians 4:16 - *“For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God; and the dead in Christ shall rise first.”*

Titus 2:13 - *“Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ.”*

***Hebrews 9:28** - *“So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many; and he shall appear the second time, without sin unto salvation unto them that look for him.”*

***Revelation 1:7** - *“For behold, he cometh in the clouds with ten thousands of his saints in the kingdom clothed with the glory of his Father. And every eye shall see him; and they who pierced him, and all kindreds of the earth shall wail because of him.”*

***2 Peter 3:3 - 12.**

Mosiah 7:78 - *“When the Lord shall bring again Zion.”*

3 Nephi 13:18 - *“Even until all things shall be fulfilled, according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.”*

D&C 34:4 - *“And they shall be looking forth for the time of my coming, for it is nigh at hand.”*

D&C 68:1 - *“Unto you it shall be given to know the signs of the times and the signs of the coming of the Son of Man.”*

D&C 34:4; 45:2 - 9; 49:4, 5; 51:5; 56:6; 63:13; 65:1.

CHRIST IN THE MILLENNIUM

†Genesis 7:73 - *“Enoch saw the day of the coming of the Son of Man, in the last days, to dwell on the earth, in righteousness, for the space of a thousand years.”*

Isaiah 65:2 - *“In those days. . . the child shall not die, but live to be an hundred years old: but the sinner, living to be an hundred years old, shall be accursed.”*

Revelation 26:6 - 8 - *“Shall reign with him a thousand years. And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison, shall go out to deceive the nations.”*

D&C 43:7 - Saints reign in millennium with Jesus on earth during millennium.

D&C 85:25 - 28 - Saints with him on earth and also those who are Christ’s at his coming.

AFTER THE MILLENNIUM

Revelation 20:11 - 15 (Great judgment of all men).

Revelation 21:2 - 4 (Tabernacle of God with men).

D&C 76:7 (Delivers up throne after judgment).

CHRIST TO BE KING

Matthew 25:32 - *“When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then he shall sit upon the throne of his glory” (31).*

Luke 1:32, 33 - *“He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest; and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David; and he shall reign over the house of Jacob forever, and of his kingdom there shall be no end.”*

John 18:37 - *“Pilate therefore said unto him, Art thou a king then? Jesus answered, Thou sayest that I am a king.”*

***Revelation 11:15** - *“And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdom of this world are become the kingdom of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.”*

Isaiah 9:7; Daniel 7:13, 14; Zechariah 14:9; *Matthew 27:11, 12; *Mark 15:3, 4.

CHRIST THE JUDGE AND REWARDER

Psalms 9:8 - *“And he shall judge the world in righteousness, he shall minister judgment to the people in uprightness.”*

Psalms 96:13 - *“For he cometh to judge the earth; he shall judge the world with righteousness, and the people with his truth.”*

Isaiah 11:4 - *"But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth; and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his of his lips shall he slay the wicked."*

Malachi 3:5 - *"And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers."*

Matthew 16:30 - *"For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father, with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works" (27).*

***Matthew 25:33** - *"And before him shall be gathered all nations; and he shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the goats; the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on his left" (32, 33).*

John 5:22 (All judgment committed to Son).

Psalms 72:12 - 14; *Acts 17:31.

HE SHALL PURIFY AND REFINE ISRAEL

Isaiah 1:25, 26 - *"And I will turn my hand upon thee; and purely purge away thy dross, and take away all thy tin; and I will restore thy judges as at the first, and thy counselors as at the beginning; afterward thou shalt be called, The city of righteousness, the faithful city."*

Malachi 3:3, 4 - *"He shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness. Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord, as in the days of old, and as in former years."*

***Matthew 23:39, 40** - *"For I say unto you, that you shall not see me henceforth, and know that I am he of whom it is written by the prophets, until ye shall say, Blessed is he who cometh in the name of the Lord" (39).*

3 Nephi 9:29 - *"That they may be purified in me."*

TO COME WITH HIS SAINTS AND GATHER HIS PEOPLE

Genesis 49:10 - *"The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a law-giver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be."*

Psalms 50:3 - 5 - *"Our God shall come, and shall not keep silence; He shall call to the heavens from above, and to the earth, that he may judge his people. Gather my saints together unto me; those that have made a covenant with me by sacrifice."*

***Mark 13:31, 44** - *"So likewise, shall mine elect be gathered from the four quarters of the earth. . . . For the Son of Man shall come; and he shall send his angels before him with the great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other" (26, 27).*

***Luke 17:37, 38** - *"And he said unto them, Wheresoever the body is gathered; or, in other words, whithersoever the saints are gathered thither will the eagles be gathered together; or, thither will the remainder be gathered together" (37).*

Ephesians 1:10 - *"That in the dispensation of the fullness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him."*

***1 Thessalonians 4:14, 15** - *"Even so them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him. For this we say unto you by the word of the Lord, that they who are alive at the coming of the Lord, shall not prevent them who remain unto the coming of the Lord, who are asleep."*

Jude 14 - *"And Enoch also, the seventh from Adam, prophesied of these, saying, Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousand of his saints."*

***Revelation 1:7** - *“For behold, he cometh in the clouds with ten thousands of his saints in the kingdom, clothed with the glory of his Father.”*

Revelation 18:4 - *“And I heard another voice from heaven, saying, Come out of her, my people, that ye be not partakers of her sins, and that ye receive not of her plagues.”*

***Matthew 24:40; *Luke 13:29; Colossians 3:4; 1 Thessalonians 3:13; 2 Thessalonians 1:7, 10; 2:1. 3 Nephi 2:107.**

D&C 26:3 - *“Unto whom I have committed the keys of my kingdom, . . . and for the fullness of times, in the which I will gather together in one all things, both which are in heaven and which are on earth.”*

D&C 45:14 - *“And it shall come to pass that the righteous shall be gathered out from among all nations, and shall come to Zion singing, with songs of everlasting joy.”*

D&C 98:4 - *“Zion shall not be moved out of her place, notwithstanding her children are scattered, they that remain and are pure in heart shall return and come to their inheritances. . . . And, behold, there is none other place appointed, . . . neither shall there be any other place appointed than that which I have appointed for the work of the gathering of my saints.”*

D&C 98:9 - *“Let not your gathering be in haste, nor by flight; but let all things be prepared before you; and in order that all things be prepared before you, observe the commandments which I have given you concerning these things.”*

D&C 3:15; 28:1; 32:2; 36:12; 45:13; 83:1, 2; 98:4, 9.

HIS PERSONAL REIGN UPON EARTH WITH HIS PEOPLE

Numbers 14:21 - *“But as truly as I live, all the earth shall be filled with the glory of the Lord.”*

Psalms 2:8 - *“Ask of me, and I shall give thee the heathen for thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for thy possession.”*

Psalms 67:4 - *“O let the nations be glad and sing for joy; for thou shalt judge the people righteously, and govern the nations upon earth.”*

Psalms 72:7, 8 - *“In his days shall the righteous flourish; and abundance of peace so long as the moon endureth. He shall have dominion also from sea to sea, and from the river unto the ends of the earth.”*

Zechariah 9:10 - *“And his dominion shall be from sea even to sea, and from the river even to the ends of the earth.”*

Zechariah 14:9 - *“And the Lord shall be King over all the earth; in that day shall there be one Lord, and his name one.”*

Daniel 7:27 - *“And the kingdom and dominion, and the greatness of the kingdom under the whole heaven, shall be given to the people of the saints of the Most High.”*

Luke 22:29 - *“And I appoint unto you a kingdom, as my Father hath appointed unto me.”*

Revelation 5:10 - *“And hast made us unto our God kings and priests; and we shall reign on the earth.”*

Isaiah 49:6, 7; *Revelation 1:6; 20:4.

1 Nephi 7:55 - *“And the time cometh speedily that the righteous must be led up as calves of the stall, and the Holy One of Israel must reign in dominion, and might, and power and great glory.”*

JUDGMENTS UPON WICKED PRIOR TO AND AT CHRISTS SECOND COMING

***Isaiah 29:6** - *“For they shall be visited of the Lord of hosts with thunder, and with earthquake, and great noise, with storm and tempest, and the flame of devouring fire.”*

Isaiah 30:30 - *“And the Lord shall cause his glorious voice to be heard, and shall show the lighting down of his arm, with the indignation of his anger, and with the flame of a devouring fire, with scattering, and tempest, and hailstones.”*

Joel 3:12 - 14 - *“Let the heathen be wakened, and come up to the valley of Jehoshaphat; for there will I sit to judge all the heathen round about. Put ye in the sickle, for the harvest is ripe; come, get you down; for the press is full, the fats overflow; for their wickedness is great. Multitudes, multitudes in the valley of decision; for the day of the Lord is near in the valley of decision.”*

Haggai 2:22 - *“And I will overthrow the throne of kingdoms, and I will destroy the strength of the kingdoms of the heathen; and I will overthrow the chariots, and those that ride in them; and the horses and their riders shall come down, every one by the sword of his brother.”*

†Genesis 7:67 - 70; Psalms 9:17; *37:38; Proverbs 2:22; Isaiah 8:9; * 13:4, 6 66:16; *Jeremiah 30:11, 16; *Ezekiel 38:1 - 23; Zephaniah 1:14 - 18; 3:8; Malachi 4:1, 3; *Matthew 13:51; *21:55.

D&C 28:2 - *“And be prepared in all things, against the day when tribulation and desolation are sent forth upon the wicked; for the hour is nigh, and the day soon at hand, when the earth is ripe.”*

D&C 85:25 - *“And after your testimony, cometh wrath and indignation upon the people, for after your testimony cometh the testimony of earthquakes. . . . And also cometh the testimony of the voice of thunderings, and the voice of lightnings, and the voice of tempests, and the voice of the waves of the sea, heaving themselves beyond their bounds . . . for fear shall come upon all people.”*

D&C 94:5 - *“Vengeance cometh speedily upon the ungodly, as the whirlwind, and who shall escape it; the Lord’s scourge shall pass over by night and by day; and the report thereof shall vex all people; yet, it shall not be stayed till the Lord come; for the indignation of the Lord is kindled against their abominations, and all their wicked works.”*

D&C 45:4; 61:3; 76:4, 7.

2 Nephi 12:90 - *“The Lord God shall cause great division among the people; and the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his people.”*

CHRISTS SECOND COMING CALLED THE HARVEST TIME

Joel 3:13 - *“Put ye in the sickle, for the harvest is ripe; come, get you down; for the press is full, the fats overflow; for their wickedness is great.”*

***Matthew 13:39** - *“The harvest is the end of the world, or the destruction of the wicked.”*

Revelation 14:15 - *“And another angel came out of the temple, crying with a loud voice to him that sat on the cloud, Thrust in thy sickle, and reap; for the time is come for thee to reap; for the harvest of the earth is ripe.”*

Isaiah 18:5; 24:1 - 6, 13, 17; 63:3, 4, 6; *Revelation 19:15.

Alma 14:87 - *“They are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they are his.”*

IN THE LATTER DAYS

Isaiah 13:10, 11 - *“For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light; the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine. And I will punish the world for their evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; and I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay low the haughtiness of the terrible.”*

Jeremiah 23:19, 20 - *“Behold, a whirlwind of the Lord is gone forth in fury, even a grievous whirlwind; it shall fall grievously upon the head of the wicked. The anger of the Lord shall not return until he have executed, and till he have performed the thoughts of his heart; in the latter days ye shall consider it perfectly.”*

Jeremiah 30:23, 24 - *“Behold, the whirlwind of the Lord goeth forth with fury, a continuing whirlwind; it shall fall with pain upon the head of the wicked . . . in the latter days ye shall consider it.”*

***Matthew 24:4, 44, 56** - *“And what is the sign of thy coming; and of the end of the world? (or the destruction of the wicked, which is the end of the world) . . . But as it was in the days of Noah, so it shall be also at the coming of the Son of Man. . . . And thus cometh the end of the wicked according to the prophecy of Moses, saying, They shall be cut off from among the people” (3, 37).*

***Luke 21:25, 26** - *“And he answered them, and said, In the generation in which the times of the Gentiles shall be fulfilled, there shall be signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars; and upon the earth distress of nations with perplexity, like the sea and the waves roaring. The earth also shall be troubled, and the waters of the great deep; men’s hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth. For the powers of heaven shall be shaken.”*

2 Timothy 3:1 - *“This know also, that in the last days perilous times shall come.”*

Isaiah 2:2; 26:21; 28:21, 22; *Jeremiah 25:31 - 33; Mark 4:1; *Mark 13:50; 2 Peter 3:3 - 8.

2 Nephi 11:116, 117 - *“But behold, in the last days . . . all the nations of the Gentiles, and also the Jews, both those who shall come upon this land, and those who shall be upon other lands; . . . will be drunken with iniquity and with all manner of abominations, and when that day shall come they shall be visited of the Lord of hosts, with thunder and with earthquake.”*

2 Nephi 5:31 - 33; 3 Nephi 9:101 - 106; Mormon 4:34 - 44.

D&C 36:14; 39:3; 83:24; 84:2.

TIME OF SECOND COMING UNKNOWN

†Genesis 7:67, 70 - *“As I live, even so will I come in the last days, in the days of wickedness and vengeance, . . . unto a place which I shall prepare; an holy city, that my people may gird up their loins, and be looking forth for the time of my coming.”*

Malachi 3:1 - *“I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me: and the Lord, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple.”*

***Matthew 24:27, 43, 45, 49, 51** - *“For as the light of the morning cometh out of the east, and shineth even unto the west, and covereth the whole earth; so shall also the coming of the Son of Man be. . . . But of that day and hour no one knoweth; no, not the angels of God in heaven, but my Father only . . . they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, but knew not until the flood came and took them all away; so shall also the coming of the Son of Man be. . . . Watch, therefore, for ye know not at what hour your Lord doth come. . . . Therefore be ye also ready; for in such an hour as ye think not, the Son of Man cometh” (27, 36, 37, 42, 44).*

Matthew 25:13 - *“Watch therefore, for ye know neither the day nor the hour wherein the Son of Man cometh” (12).*

***Mark 13:46, 47** - *“So likewise, mine elect, when they shall see all these things, they shall know that he is near, even at the doors. But of that day and hour no one knoweth; no, not the angels of God in heaven, but my Father only” (26, 32).*

***Luke 17:34, 35** - *“In that night there shall be two in one bed; the one shall be taken, and the other left. Two shall be grinding together; the one shall be taken, and the other left. Two shall be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other left” (34 - 36).*

***Luke 21:34, 35** - *“Let my disciples therefore take heed to themselves, lest at any time their hearts be overcharged with surfeiting, and drunkenness, and cares of this life, and that day come upon them unawares. For as a snare it shall come on all them who dwell on the face of the whole earth.”*

Acts 1:7 - *“And he said unto them, It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father hath put in his own power.”*

1 Thessalonians 5:2, 3 - *“The day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night. For when they shall say, Peace and safety; then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape.”*

2 Thessalonians 3:5 - *“The Lord direct your hearts into the love of God, and into the patient waiting for Christ.”*

***Hebrews 9:28** - *“And he shall appear the second time, without sin unto salvation unto them that look for him.”*

James 5:7, 8 - *“Be patient therefore, brethren, unto the coming of the Lord. Behold, the husbandman waiteth for the precious fruit of the earth, and hath long patience for it, until he receive the early and latter rain. Be ye also patient; stablish your hearts; for the coming of the Lord draweth nigh”*

***2 Peter 3:9, 10, 12** - *“The Lord is not slack concerning his promise and coming. . . . But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night, in the which the heavens shall shake, and the earth also shall tremble, and the mountains shall melt, and pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall be filled with fervent heat; . . . Looking unto, and preparing for the day of the coming of the Lord,*

Revelation 3:11; 22:7, 12, 20 - *“Behold, I come quickly: hold that fast which thou hast, that no man take thy crown. . . . Behold, I come quickly: blessed is he that keepeth the sayings of the prophecy of this book. . . . And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be. . . . He which testifieth these things saith, Surely I come quickly. Amen.”*

Revelation 16:15 - *“Behold, I come as a thief. Blessed is he that watcheth, and keepeth his garments.”*

***Mark 13:29, 48 - 55; Philemon 3:20; *2 Thessalonians 2:1 - 3, 8, 9.**

Comment on the word “quickly.” While the meaning of “quickly,” as found in the four texts quoted together from Revelation, is derived from the Greek *tachu* and commonly translated *quickly*, Dr. Strong shows that its meaning is variable and includes “swift,” or “by surprise, suddenly.” In view of the large number of texts that foretell the coming of Christ “suddenly,” or “as a thief,” the latter meaning would appear to more closely harmonize with them. It does not seem consistent with the lapse of more than nineteen centuries to suppose that Jesus meant to say that he would come soon, nor is it indicated in his repeated statement that no one, not even himself, knew the time of his coming.

D&C 35:3 - *“I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God; wherefore gird up your loins and I will suddenly come to my temple.”*

D&C 49:2 - *“But the hour and the day no man knoweth, neither the angels in heaven, nor shall they know until he comes.”*

D&C 36:12; 85:25, 38; 103:2; 105:13; 108:1, 3.

Alma 19:34 - *“When this time cometh, no one knows; but God knoweth the time which is appointed.”*

THE ATONEMENT OF CHRIST AND EFFICACY OF HIS BLOOD

Isaiah 53:4, 5 - *“Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: . . . But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.”*

***Matthew 26:24** - *"This is in remembrance of my blood of the new testament, which is shed for as many as shall believe on my name, for the remission of their sins" (28).*

***Mark 14:23** - *"This is in remembrance of my blood which is shed for many, and the new testament which I give unto you" (24).*

John 6:51 - *"And the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world."*

John 11:51, 52 - *"Being high priest that year, he prophesied that Jesus should die for that nation; and not for that nation only."*

Jacob 3:16 - *"Be reconciled unto him, through the atonement of Christ, his only begotten Son."*

ETHICAL TEACHINGS OF JESUS

Love God and man: Matthew 19:19; 22:36 - 39; *Mark 12:34 - 36; Luke 10:27, 28; 2 Nephi 13:29; D&C 59:2.

Love and do good to enemies: Matthew 5:46; *Luke 6:27 - 29; 3 Nephi 5:90.

Love the brethren: John 13:34, 35; 15:12, 17; 1 John 3:11, 23; Mosiah 11:16; D&C 42:12; 85:38.

Forgiveness: *Matthew 6:13, 16; *18:21 - 34; *Mark 11:27, 28; Luke 6:37; *11:4; *17:3, 4; *23:35; 24:46; 3 Nephi 5:107; D&C 64:2; 95:7.

(Also see Index for Accountability, Adultery, Agency, Divorce, Duties, Faith, Fasting, Humility, Marriage, Meekness, Mercy, Obedience, Perfection, Prayer, Purity, Sabbath, Sacrifice, Sanctification, Self - denial, Sin, Stewardship, Truth, Wisdom and Works).

THE HOLY SPIRIT

THE NAMES OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

Ephesians 4:30 - Gives the full name, *"the Holy Spirit of God."*

Matthew 3:45 - Here it is called *"the Spirit of God,"* as in 27 other places in the Bible.

John 1:33 - *"The Spirit descending."* Here it is called simply *"the Spirit,"* as in numbers of other places. In such cases the reader must understand from the context whether the Holy Spirit, or some other, is meant.

Acts 8:39 - *"The Spirit of the Lord caught away Philip."* Here, as in 30 other places in the Bible, it is called *"the Spirit of the Lord."*

Various titles are also used in the Book of Mormon.

1 Nephi 1:6 - *"The Spirit."*

1 Nephi 1:11 - *"The Spirit of the Lord."*

1 Nephi 1:49 - *"His Holy Spirit."*

1 Nephi 3:147, 148 - *"The Spirit of God."*

1 Nephi 6:23 - *"His Spirit."*

2 Nephi 13:32 - *"The Holy Ghost."*

Mosiah 3:3 - *"The Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent."*

Alma 3:78 - *"The Holy Spirit of God."*

Moroni 7:14 - *"The Spirit of Christ."*

In the Doctrine and Covenants the same usage is also found.

1:8 (and many others) - *"The Spirit."*

12:4 (and many others) - *"The Holy Ghost."* 36:6 (and many others) - *"The Holy Spirit."*

John 14:26 - The Holy Spirit is also called the Comforter. *"The Comforter is . . . the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name."*

THE COMFORTER (THE HOLY GHOST) TESTIFIES OF CHRIST

John 15:26 - *"When the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me."*

John 16:7 - *"It is expedient for you that I go away: for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you."*

John 14:26 - *"The Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost."*

D&C 46:5 - *"To some it is given by the Holy Ghost to know that Jesus Christ is the Son of God, and that he was crucified for the sins of the world."*

Jacob 5:16 - 20 - Jacob tells Sherem that the Scriptures testify of Christ, and adds, *"It has been made manifest unto me, for I have heard and seen; and it also has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost."*

NOTES

Modern versions of the Bible use the term "Holy Spirit" in many places where the Authorized Version uses "Holy Ghost." The Authorized Version uses "Holy Ghost" 88 times, and "Holy Spirit" 7 times. The two terms are synonymous. For various reasons, some apparent and some not, other terms referring to the Holy Spirit are also employed.

THE HOLY SPIRIT IS DIVINE

Ephesians 4:30 - *"Grieve not the Holy Spirit of God, whereby ye are sealed unto the day of redemption."* Note the full name, *"the holy Spirit of God"*

***Matthew 12:26** - *"All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men who receive me and repent; but the blasphemy against the Holy Ghost, it shall not be forgiven unto men"* (31). The divinity of the Holy Spirit, due to its sacred and inviolable character, is indicated here.

***Luke 3:29** - *"And the Holy Ghost descended, in bodily shape like a dove, upon him; and a voice came from heaven, which said, Thou art my beloved Son, in thee I am well pleased"* (22). On this important occasion, God gave his Son the greatest gift he had to bestow, the Holy Ghost.

Romans 5: 5 - *"The love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost which is given unto us."* Thus the Holy Ghost is the vehicle of the love of God to us.

Matthew 28:18 - *"The name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost"* (19). The Holy Spirit is Divine because it is a member of the Godhead.

2 Nephi 13:32 - *"This is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God without end."*

Alma 8:104 - *"Christ the Son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one eternal God."*

3 Nephi 5:27, 38 - *"Verily I say unto you, that the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one. . .and the Father, and I, and the Holy Ghost are one."*

Mormon 3:29 - *"Sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the Father, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are one God."*

Alma 5:19 - *"She . . . shall be overshadowed, and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God."*

3 Nephi 5:25 - Baptism is administered *"in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost."*

Mosiah 11:186 - By the Spirit, men are reborn, *"I [Alma] am born of the Spirit."*

Alma 19:8 (2 Nephi 12:5, 6, 31; Moroni 8:33, 34) - *"If ye deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it. . . . this is a sin which is unpardonable."*

DIVINE ATTRIBUTES AND POWERS ARE ASCRIBED TO THE SPIRIT

2 Nephi 1: 65 - *"The Spirit is the same, yesterday, today, and forever."*

Alma 5:23 - *"The Spirit knoweth all things."*

2 Nephi 1:73, 74 - *"The Holy Messiah . . . layeth down his life according to the flesh, and taketh it again by the power of the Spirit."*

Alma 16:234 - *"The Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you. . . . This is the final state of the wicked."*

THE OBJECTIVE REALITY OF THE HOLY GHOST

1 Nephi 3:50 - *"I spake unto him as a man speaketh; for I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yet, nevertheless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord: and he spake unto me as a man speaketh with another."*

1 Nephi 3:74 - *"I beheld the heavens open, and the Holy Ghost come down out of heaven and abode upon him in the form of a dove."*

MANIFEST PERSONAL ATTRIBUTES AND POWERS

2 Nephi 1:123 - Willing. *"Choose eternal life, according to the will of his Holy Spirit."*

Alma 5:23 - Knowing. *"The Spirit knoweth all things."*

2 Nephi 11:76 - Striving. *"The Spirit of the Lord will not always strive with man."*

1 Nephi 3:41 - Saying. *"The Spirit said unto me."*

1 Nephi 1:106 - Leading. *"I was led by the Spirit."*

Alma 10:50 - Constraining. *"The Spirit constraineth me."*

Ether 1:106 - Persuading. *"Because of my Spirit, he shall know that these things are true; for it persuadeth men to do good."*

Mosiah 1:120 - Enticing. *"The enticings of the Holy Spirit."*

2 Nephi 3:40 - Transporting. *"Upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceeding high mountains."*

FUNCTIONS OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

John 14:26 - *"He shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you."*

John 15:26 - *"But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me."*

John 16:13 - *"Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth; for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak; and he will show you things to come."*

Acts 15: 28 - *"For it seemed good to the Holy Ghost, and to us, to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things."*

Acts 16:6, 7 - *"Now when they had gone throughout Phrygia and the region of Galatia, and were forbidden of the Holy Ghost to preach the word in Asia, after they were come to Mysia, they assayed to go into Bithynia; but the Spirit suffered them not."*

***Romans 8:13 - 16** - *"If ye through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, ye shall live unto Christ. For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God . . . but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God."*

1 Corinthians 2:10 - *"But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit; for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God."*

1 Corinthians 12:7, 25 - *"But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal. . . that there should be no schism in the body; but that the members should have the same care one for another."*

Galatians 4:6 - *"God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father."*

Ephesians 1:13, 14 - *"Ye were sealed with that Holy Spirit of promise, which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession."*

***Ephesians 4:12, 13** - *"For the perfecting of the Saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ; till we, in the unity of the faith, all come to the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ."*

Ephesians 4:30 - *"Grieve not the Holy Spirit of God, whereby ye are sealed unto the day of redemption."*

1 John 4:13 - *"Hereby know we that we dwell in him, and he in us, because he hath given us of his Spirit."*

Acts 1:8; 5:32; 13:1 - 4; 16:6, 7; 20:28; *1 Corinthians 2:11 - 13; 3:16; 6:19; 7:17; 2 Corinthians 1:22; Hebrews 10:15; 1 John 3:24.

1 Nephi 3:30 - *"And the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in this time as in times of old."*

Moroni 10:5 - *"If ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you."*

D&C 10:7 - *"Verily, verily, I say unto you, I will impart unto you of my Spirit, which shall enlighten your mind, which shall fill your soul with joy."*

D&C 17:5.

GIFTS OF THE HOLY SPIRIT TO WHOM THE SPIRIT IS GIVEN

Moroni 7:14 - To every man. *"The Spirit of Christ is given to every man."*

3 Nephi 9:65 - To the Gentiles. *"The pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles."* **2**

Nephi 13:15 - To the baptized believers. *"He that is baptized in my name, to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost."*

Alma 11:26 - A general blessing. *"The Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the face of the land."*

1 Nephi 1:11 - Filled with the Spirit. *"He [Lehi] was filled with the Spirit of the Lord."*

1 Nephi 1:6 - Overcome by the Spirit. *"He . . . being overcome with the Spirit of God."*

2 Nephi 13:17 - Baptized by the Spirit. *"Then cometh the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost."*

SUBJECT ALSO TO HUMAN CONDITIONS

Jacob 3:26 - Spirit working. *"I perceive the workings of the Spirit which is in me."*

2 Nephi 15:2 - Spirit may be quenched or resisted. *"There are many that harden their hearts against the Holy Spirit, that it hath no place in them."*

Helaman 2:162 - May withdraw. *"The Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts."*

Alma 14:58 - A falling away. *"After a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things."*

CONDITIONS FOR THE GIFT

3 Nephi 13:23 - Because of Christ. *"The Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me."*

3 Nephi 9:20 - To those chosen for ministry. *"Father, I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto these whom I have chosen; and it is because of their belief in me, that I have chosen them out of the world."*

Helaman 2:163 - For willingness to believe. *"The Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his word."*

3 Nephi 12:10 - For baptism. *"As many as were baptized in the name of Jesus were filled with the Holy Ghost."*

1 Nephi 3:187 - For building the kingdom. *"Blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost."*

Alma 12:5 - Prayer and Fasting. *"They had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting, therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and when they taught, they taught with power and authority, even as with the power and authority of God."*

Helaman 2:59 - Holiness. *"The Spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples."*

KINDS OF GIFTS

Mark 16:16 - 19 - *"And these signs shall follow them that believe; in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover" (17, 18).*

***Luke 11:14** - *"If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your heavenly Father give good gifts, through the Holy Spirit, to them who ask him" (13).*

1 Corinthians 12:7 - 11 - *"But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal. For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom; to another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit; to another faith by the same Spirit; to another the gifts of healing by the same Spirit; to another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another divers kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues; but all these worketh that one and the self - same Spirit, dividing to every man severally as he will."*

Ephesians 4:7, 8 - *"But unto every one of us is given grace according to the measure of the gift of Christ. Wherefore he saith, When he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men."*

Moroni 10:3 - 12.

"TO ONE IS GIVEN BY THE SPIRIT THE WORD OF WISDOM"

Proverbs 2:2, 6 - *"Incline thine ear unto wisdom, and apply thine heart to understanding.... For the Lord giveth wisdom; out of his mouth cometh knowledge and understanding."*

1 Corinthians 2:6 - *"Howbeit we speak wisdom among them that are perfect; yet not the wisdom of this world, nor of the princes of this world, that come to naught."*

James 1: 5 - *"If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him."*

James 3:13, 17 - *"Who is a wise man and endued with knowledge among you let him show out of a good conversation his works with meekness of wisdom. . . . But the wisdom that is from above is first pure then peaceable, gentle, and easy to be entreated, full of mercy and good fruits, without partiality, and without hypocrisy."*

1 Corinthians 1:21; 2:7. D&C 1:5 - *"And inasmuch as they sought wisdom they might be instructed."*

D&C 6:3 - *"Seek not for riches but for wisdom, and, behold, the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto you."*

D&C 42:18; 46:7; 76:2.

"TO ANOTHER THE WORD OF KNOWLEDGE BY THE SAME SPIRIT"

***1 Corinthians 1:5 - 7** - *"That in every thing ye are enriched by him, in all utterance, and in all knowledge; even as the testimony of Christ was confirmed in you; so that ye come behind in no gift; waiting for the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ."*

1 Corinthians 12:3 - *"And that no man can say that Jesus is the Lord, but by the Holy Ghost."*

Colossians 1:9 - *"That ye might be filled with the knowledge of his will in all wisdom and spirit in all wisdom and understanding."*

1 Corinthians 2:12; 8:7.

Moroni 10:5 - *"By the power of the Holy Ghost, ye may know the truth of all things."*

D&C 10:7.

"TO ANOTHER FAITH BY THE SAME SPIRIT"

Acts 6:5, 8 - *"They chose Stephen, a man full of faith and of the Holy Ghost. . . . And Stephen, full of faith and power, did great wonders and miracles among the people."*

Acts 11:24 - *"For he was a good man, and full of the Holy Ghost and of faith: and much people was added unto the Lord."*

Acts 15:8, 9 - *"Giving them the Holy Ghost, even as he did unto us; and put no difference between us and them, purifying their hearts by faith."*

***Romans 1:17** - *"Therein is the righteousness of God revealed through faith on his name, as it is written, The just shall live by faith."*

Romans 9:30 - *"The Gentiles, which followed not after righteousness, have attained to righteousness, even the righteousness which is of faith."*

Romans 12:3 - *"But to think soberly, according as God hath dealt to every man the measure of faith."*

1 Corinthians 12:4, 9 - *"Now there are diversities of gifts, but the same Spirit. . . . To another faith by the same Spirit."*

Hebrews 6:12 - *"That ye be not slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises."*

***Acts 3:16; 2 Corinthians 4:13.**

D&C 46:7.

“TO ANOTHER GIFTS OF HEALING BY THE SAME SPIRIT”

***Mark 6:14** - *“And they cast out many devils, and anointed with oil many that were sick, and they were healed” (13).*

Mark 16:19 - *“They shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover” (18).*

James 5:14, 15 - *“Is any sick among you? let him call for the elders of the church; and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord; and the prayer of faith shall save the sick, and the Lord shall raise him up; and if he have committed sins, they shall be forgiven him.”*

***Acts 3:16; 1 Corinthians 12:9.**

3 Nephi 3:64 - *“And as many as . . . were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed.”*

1 Nephi 3:83, - 85.

D&C 42: 13 - *“He that hath faith in me to be healed, and is not appointed unto death, shall be healed; he who hath faith to see shall see; he who hath faith to hear shall hear.”*

D&C 46:7 - *“And again, to some it is given to have faith to be healed, and to others it is given to have faith to heal.”*

D&C 34:3; 66:5; 83:11; 107:30.

GOD’S PEOPLE NOT ALWAYS HEALED

2 Corinthians 12:7 - 9 - *“And lest I should be exalted above measure through the abundance of the revelations, there was given to me a thorn in the flesh, the messenger of Satan to buffet me, lest I should be exalted above measure. For this thing I besought the Lord thrice, that it might depart from me. And he said unto me, My grace is sufficient for thee; for my strength is made perfect in weakness.”*

2 Timothy 4:20 - *“Trophimus have I left at Miletum sick.”*

Deuteronomy 29:22; Isaiah 59:1, 2; Mark 6:7; Acts 28:27; 1 Corinthians 11:29, 30.

“TO ANOTHER THE WORKING OF MIRACLES”

Luke 9:1 - *“Then he called his twelve disciples together, and he gave them power and authority over all devils, and to cure diseases.”*

Acts 8:6 - *“And the people with one accord gave heed unto those things which Philip spake, hearing and seeing the miracles which he did.”*

Galatians 3:5 - *“He therefore that ministereth to you the Spirit, and worketh miracles among you, doeth he it by the works of the law, or by the hearing of faith?”*

Hebrews 2:4 - *“God also bearing them witness, both with signs and wonders and with divers miracles, and gifts of the Holy Ghost, according to his own will?”*

***Luke 10:20; Acts 5:12; 8:13; 15:12; 1 Corinthians 12:10.**

4 Nephi 1:7 - *“And all manner of miracles did they work among the Children of men, and in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name of Jesus.”*

2 Nephi 11:79; 4 Nephi 1:6.

Ether 5: 13 - *“If there be no faith among the children of men, God can do no miracle.”*

Mormon 4:83 - *“And the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way.”*

3 Nephi 3:59 - 61; 4 Nephi 1:6, 7; Mormon 4:75 - 87; Moroni 7:27 - 30, 37 - 43; 10:11; D&C 83:11; 46:7.

D&C 34: 3 - *“And I will show miracles, signs and wonders, unto all those who believe on my name.”*

“TO ANOTHER PROPHECY”

1 Corinthians 14:1 - *“Follow after charity, and desire spiritual gifts, but rather that ye may prophesy.”*

Ephesians 1:17 - *“That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give unto you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him”*

Philemon 3:15 - *“Let us therefore, as many as be perfect, be thus minded; and if in anything ye be otherwise minded, God shall reveal even this unto you.”*

1 Thessalonians 5:20 - *“Despise not prophesyings.”*

John 16:13; Acts 11:27, 28; 13:1; 21:10, 11; 1 Corinthians 12:10.

“TO ANOTHER DISCERNING OF SPIRITS”

Acts 5:3 - *“But Peter said, Ananias, why hath Satan filled thine heart to lie to the Holy Ghost?”*

Acts 13:10 - *“And said, O full of all subtilty and all mischief, thou child of the devil, thou enemy of all righteousness, wilt thou not cease to pervert the right ways of the Lord?”*

Acts 14:9 - *“The same heard Paul speak; who steadfastly beholding him and perceiving that he had faith to be healed.”*

Acts 16:18 - *“But Paul, being grieved, turned and said to the spirit, I command thee in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her. And he came out the same hour.”*

Alma 16:51 - *“Behold, I know that thou believest, but thou art possessed with a lying spirit, and ye have put off the Spirit of God, that it may have no place in you.*

D&C 46:7 - *“And unto such as God shall appoint and ordain to watch over the church . . . are to have it given unto them to discern all those gifts, lest there shall be any among you professing and yet be not of God.”*

“TO ANOTHER DIVERS KINDS OF TONGUES”

Acts 2 4 - *“And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.”*

Acts 10:46 - *“For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God.”*

Acts 19:6 - *“And when Paul had laid his hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied.”*

1 Corinthians 14:5 - *“I would that ye all spake with tongues, but rather that ye prophesied.”*

1 Corinthians 14:39 - *“Wherefore, brethren, covet to prophesy, and forbid not to speak with tongues.”*

Moroni 10:1 - *“And again, to another, all kinds of tongues.”*

D&C 46:7 - *“It is given to some to speak in tongues.”*

2 Nephi 14:2, 3; Omni 1:44; Alma 7:3 1; Mormon 4:66.

“TO ANOTHER INTERPRETATION OF TONGUES “

***1 Corinthians 14:5, 13** - *“For greater is he that prophesieth than he that speaketh with tongues, except he interpret, that the church may receive edifying. . . . Wherefore let him that speaketh in another tongue pray that he may interpret.”*

***1 Corinthians 14:27, 28** - *"If any man speak in another tongue, let it be by two, or at the most by three, and that by course; and let one interpret. But if there be no interpreter, let him keep silence in the church."*

1 Corinthians 12:4, 6, 10, 11.

Moroni 10:11 - *"And again, to another, the interpretation of languages and of divers kinds of tongues."*

D&C 46:7 - *"To another it is given the interpretation of tongues."*

THE WORK OF THE SPIRIT

3 Nephi 13:59 - Works by it. *"The Lord worketh . . . by the power of the Holy Ghost."*

Alma 5:28 - Testimony. *"The Holy Spirit, which testifieth in me."*

3 Nephi 5:33 - Bears witness. *"The Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me."*

1 Nephi 1:83 - Inspires Scripture. *"The words which have been spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets, . . . have been delivered unto them by the Spirit and power of God."*

Alma 10:4 - Sanctifies. *"Being sanctified by the Holy Ghost."*

Jacob 5:20 - Reveals. *"It also has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost."*

1 Nephi 3:30 - Unfolds mysteries. *"The mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them by the power of the Holy Ghost."*

Moroni 10:7 - Empowers. *"Ye may know that he is, by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore I would exhort you, that ye deny not the power of God; for he worketh by power, according to the faith of the children of men, the same today, and tomorrow, and for ever."*

1 Nephi 3:36 - Commissions. *"The Holy Ghost giveth authority that I should speak these things."*

Moroni 6:9 - Directs. *"As the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach or exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done."*

Moroni 10:8, 9 - Spiritual gifts. *"The gifts of God . . . are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men."*

2 Nephi 12:39 - Gives precepts. *"Their precepts shall be given by the power of the Holy Ghost."*

Mosiah 2:5 - Gives joy. *"The Spirit of the Lord came upon them, and they were filled with joy."*

SPIRITUAL GIFT NOT DONE AWAY

Acts 2:39 - *"For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God shall call."*

1 Corinthians 13:9, 10 - *"For we know in part, and we prophesy in part. But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away."*

Isaiah 45:22; *Ephesians 4:13, 14.

Moroni 10:14 - *"These gifts of which I have spoken, which are spiritual, never will be done away, even so long as the world shall stand, only according to the unbelief of the children of men."*

Moroni 10:18 - *"And now I speak unto all the ends of the earth, that if the day cometh that the power and gifts of God shall be done away among you, it will be because of unbelief."*

Upon the subject of the continuance of the gifts, John Wesley preached as follows: "It does not appear that these extraordinary gifts of the Holy Ghost were common in the church for more than two or three centuries. We seldom hear of them after that fatal period when the Emperor Constantine called himself a Christian, and, from a vain imagination of promoting the Christian cause thereby, heaped riches, honor, and power upon the Christians in general, but in particular

upon the clergy. From this time they almost totally ceased, very few instances of the kind being found. The cause of this was not, as has been commonly supposed, because there was no more occasion for them, by reason of all the world becoming Christian. This idea is a miserable mistake, as not a twentieth part was at that time even nominally Christian. The real cause was that the love of many waxed cold, and the Christians had no more of the Spirit than the heathen." - Sermon 94.

SIGNS

SIGN SEEKERS REPROVED

***Matthew 16:1 - 4** - "The Pharisees also, with the Sadducees, came, and tempting Jesus, desired him that he would show them a sign from heaven. And he answered and said unto them. . . . O hypocrites! ye can discern the face of the sky; but ye can not tell the signs of the times. A wicked and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign! and there shall no sign be given unto it, but the sign of the prophet Jonas."

John 4:50 - "Then said Jesus unto him, Except ye see signs and wonders, ye will not believe" (48).

***Mark 8:10 - 12; *Luke 11:17, 30.**

Alma 16:53 - "Thou hast had signs enough; will ye tempt your God? Will ye say, Shew me a sign, when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren, and also all the holy prophets?"

THE GIFTS OF GOD ARE RECEIVED BY FAITH

***Matthew 21:20** - "And all things, whatsoever ye shall ask in prayer, in faith believing, ye shall receive" (22).

Mark 10:53 - "And Jesus said unto him, Go thy way; thy faith hath made thee whole" (52).

***Mark 11:25, 26** - "For verily I say unto you, That whosoever shall say unto this mountain, Be thou removed, and be thou cast into the sea; and shall not doubt in his heart, but shall believe that those things which he saith shall come to pass; he shall have whatsoever he saith fulfilled" (23).

***Acts 3:16** - "The faith which is in him hath given him this perfect soundness in the presence of you all."

Hebrews 6:12 - "That ye be not slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises."

James 1:5, 6 - "If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him. But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering; for he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed."

Matthew 17:20; *Mark 6:7, 8; Luke 4:23 - 27; *17:5, 6.

Ether 5:13, 14 - "But in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way, and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled. For if there be no faith among the children of men, God can do no miracle among them; wherefore he showed not himself until after their faith. Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth."

Moroni 10:7, 8, 14 - "I would exhort you, that ye deny not the power of God; for he worketh by power, according to the faith of the children of men, the same today, and tomorrow and forever. . . . Deny not the gifts of God, for they are many, and they come from the same God. . . . All these gifts of which I have spoken, which are spiritual, never will be done away, even so long as the world shall stand, only according to the unbelief of the children of men."

D&C 34:3 - "And whoso shall ask it in my name, in faith, they shall cast out devils; they shall heal the sick; they shall cause the blind to receive their sight, the deaf to hear, the dumb to speak, and the

lame to walk. . . . But without faith shall not anything be shown forth except desolations upon Babylon."

4 Nephi 1:6, 7; Mormon 4:75 - 88. D&C 42:13.

SIGNS NOT GIVEN FOR DISPLAY

***Matthew 9:36** - *"And their eyes were opened; and straitly he charged them, saying, Keep my commandments, and see ye tell no man in this place, that no man know it" (30).*

Matthew 12:34 - *"But he answered and said unto them, An evil and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign; and there shall no sign be given to it, but the sign of the prophet Jonas" (39).*

Matthew 13:59 - *"And he did not many mighty works there, because of their unbelief" (58).*

Matthew 16:21 - *"Then charged he his disciples that they should tell no man that he was Jesus, the Christ" (20).*

Luke 4:41 - *"And devils also came out of many, crying out, and saying, Thou art Christ, the Son of God. And he, rebuking them, suffered them not to speak; for they knew that he was Christ."*

Luke 8:53 - *"And he put them all out, and took her by the hand, and he called, saying, Maid, arise" (54).*

***Luke 16:36** - *"If they hear not Moses and the prophets, neither will they be persuaded, though one should rise from the dead" (31).*

***Matthew 4:3, 6; Luke 11:29; John 10:41.**

SIGNS AND SPIRITUAL GIFTS PROMISED

***Matthew 4:22** - *"And Jesus went about all Galilee teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom; and healing all manner of sickness, and all manner of diseases among the people which believed on his name" (23).*

***Matthew 7:12, 13** - *"Say unto them, Ask of God; ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you. For every one that asketh, receiveth; and he that seeketh, findeth; and unto him that knocketh, it shall be opened" (7, 8).*

Mark 16:16 - 19 - *"And these signs shall follow them that believe; in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover" (16 - 18).*

***Luke 17:6** - *"And the Lord said, If you had faith as a grain of mustard seed, you might say unto this sycamore tree, Be thou plucked up by the roots, and be thou planted in the sea; and it should obey you."*

John 14:12, 13 - *"Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father. And whatsoever ye shall ask in my name, that will I do."*

Acts 2:18 - *"And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy."*

1 Corinthians 14:12 - *"Even so ye, forasmuch as ye are zealous of spiritual gifts, seek that ye may excel to the edifying of the church."*

Hebrews 2:4 - *"God also bearing them witness, both with signs and wonders, and with divers miracles, and gifts of the Holy Ghost, according to his own will."*

1 Corinthians 12:1 - 11

1 Nephi 3:45 - *"This thing shall be given unto thee for a sign . . . ye shall bear record that it is the Son of God."*

2 Nephi 11:61 - *“And after the Messiah shall come, there shall be signs given unto my people of his birth, and also of his death and resurrection.”*

3 Nephi 1:12, 13 - *“The time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world.”*

FRUITS OF THE SPIRIT

John 13:35 - *“By this shall all men know that ye are my disciples, if ye have love one to another.”*

Galatians 5:22, 23 - *“But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, temperance; against such there is no law.”*

Ephesians 5:8 - 10 - *“Now are ye light in the Lord: walk as children of light: (For the fruit of the Spirit is in all goodness and righteousness and truth;) proving what is acceptable unto the Lord.”*

Philemon 4:8 - *“Finally, brethren, whatsoever things are true, whatsoever things are honest, whatsoever things are just, whatsoever things are pure, whatsoever things are lovely, whatsoever things are of good report; if there be any virtue, and if there be any praise, think on these things.”*

2 Peter 1:5 - 7 - *“And besides this, giving all diligence, add to your faith virtue; and to virtue, knowledge; and to knowledge, temperance; and to temperance, patience; and to patience, godliness; and to godliness, brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness, charity.”*

Romans 6:22; Ephesians 5:9; Colossians 1:10; 3:12 - 15; James 3:17.

Alma 5:39 - 42; 10:28; 16:239; Moroni 7:48 - 53.

D&C 4:2 - *“Remember, faith, virtue, knowledge, temperance, patience, brotherly kindness, godliness, charity, humility, diligence.”*

D&C 11:4.

THE SIN AGAINST THE HOLY GHOST

***Matthew 12:26, 27** - *“Wherefore I say unto you, All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men who receive me and repent; but the blasphemy against the Holy Ghost, it shall not be forgiven unto men. And whosoever shall speak a word against the Son of Man, it shall be forgiven him; but whosoever speaketh against the Holy Ghost, it shall not be forgiven him; neither in this world; neither in the world to come” (31, 32).*

***Mark 3:23, 24** - *“And blasphemies, wherewith soever they shall blaspheme, shall be forgiven them that come unto me, and do the works which they see me do. But there is a sin which shall not be forgiven. He that shall blaspheme against the Holy Ghost, hath never forgiveness; but is in danger of being cut down out of the world. And they shall inherit eternal damnation” (28, 29).*

***Luke 12:11, 12** - *“They reasoned among themselves, saying, He knoweth our hearts, and he speaketh to our condemnation, and we shall not be forgiven. But he answered them and said unto them, Whosoever shall speak a word against the Son of Man, and repenteth, it shall be forgiven him; but unto him who blasphemeth against the Holy Ghost, it shall not be forgiven him” (10).*

***Hebrews 6:4 - 6** - *“For he hath made it impossible for those who were once enlightened, and have tasted of the heavenly gift, and were made partakers of the Holy Ghost, and have tasted the good word of God, and the powers of the world to come, if they shall fall away, to be renewed again unto repentance; seeing they crucify unto themselves the Son of God afresh, and put him to an open shame.”*

Hebrews 10:26, 27 - *“For if we sin willfully after that we have received the knowledge of the truth, there remaineth no more sacrifice for sins, but a certain fearful looking for of judgment.”*

2 Peter 2:20, 21 - *“For if after they have escaped the pollutions of the world through the knowledge of the Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, they are again entangled therein, and overcome, the latter end is worse with them than the beginning. For it had been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness, than, after they have known it, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them.”*

1 John 5:16.

Alma 19:8 - *“If ye deny the Holy Ghost when it has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it; behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable.”*

D&C 76:4 - *“Concerning whom I have said that there is no forgiveness in this world nor in the world to come; having denied the Holy Spirit, after having received it and having denied the only begotten Son of the Father, having crucified him unto themselves, and put him to an open shame; these are they who shall go away into the lake of fire and brimstone, with the devil and his angels, and the only ones on whom the second death shall have any power.”*

HISTORICAL NOTES ON THE GIFTS OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

That others than the apostles had authority to exercise the so - called miraculous gifts is attested by Mosheim, as follows:

“To these their personal endowments, must be added the ability by these divine ambassadors of transferring the power of working miracles to their disciples. Many persons, as soon as they were baptized according to Christ’s directions and consecrated to God by prayer and the imposition of hands, were able forthwith to express their thoughts in foreign languages which they had never learned, to foretell future events, to heal the sick by pronouncing the name of Jesus, to call the dead to life, and to perform other creeds above the power of man.” - Century I, Part I, chapter IV, Section 9.

While not many records of healing the sick are found in this period, there are enough to prove the rite was observed, and Mosheim remarks:

“The early Christians, when dangerously sick, sent for the elders of the church, agreeably to James v. 14; and after the sick man had confessed his sins, the elders commended him to God in devout supplication, and anointed him with oil. . . . For though there is no reason to doubt that this rite prevailed extensively among Christians, yet it is rarely mentioned in the writings of the ancients.” - Part 11, chapter IV, Section 9.

A footnote (15) states that there is here and there an instance of this custom, and sources of information are given.

In the Second Century, the gifts of the Holy Spirit were mentioned by various writers. Irenaeus is quoted on this by Eusebius:

“Some, indeed, most certainly and truly cast out demons, so that frequently those persons themselves that were cleansed from wicked spirits, believed and were received into the church. Others have the knowledge of things to come, as also visions and prophetic communications; others heal the sick by the imposition of hands, and restore them to health. And, moreover, as we said

above, even the dead have been raised and continued with us many years. . . . As we hear many of the brethren in the church who have prophetic gifts, and who speak in all tongues through the Spirit, and who also bring to light the secret things of men for their benefit and who expound the mysteries of God.’” - Book V, chapter VII, page 175.

Hagenbach’s *History of Doctrines*, Buch translation as revised by Dr. Smith, says:

“Not only were those miracles adduced which are mentioned in Scripture, but also some which still took place. . . . At the same time the Christians did not deny the existence of miracles in the heathen world, but ascribed them to the influence of demons . . . the heathen, on the other hand, attributed the Christian miracles to magic.” - Volume 1, First Period, Section 29, pages 80, 81.

In his *Dialogue With Trypho*, Justin explains the gifts in his day (c. A.D. 150):

“He knows that some will every day become disciples unto the Name of His Christ, and leave the error of their ways, who also receive gifts each as he is worthy, being enlightened through the Name of this same Christ. One receives the spirit of wisdom, another of counsel, another of strength, another of healing, another of fore - knowledge, another of teaching, another of the fear of God. . . . For the prophetic gifts remain with us even to this time, from which you ought to understand, that those which were formerly lodged with your nation, are now transferred to us. . . . And you may see among us both women and men, with gifts from the Spirit of God.” - Paragraphs 39, 82, 88; pages 118, 176, 184.

Neander presents evidence of the Gifts, from Origen in *the Third Century*:

“Many give proofs to those who have been healed through their power, that they have attained a miraculous power through this faith, while over those who require healing, they invoke no other power than the Almighty God and Jesus Christ, together with the preaching of his Gospel.’” - Section 1, page 44.

As the church drifted farther from the original faith, the spiritual gifts also appear to have become less frequent, and not much known *in the Fourth Century*, of which Mosheim comments:

“I also grant, that many events were inconsiderately regarded as miracles, which were according to the laws of nature; not to mention likewise pious frauds. Still I cannot join with such as believe, that in this age, God did never manifest his power by any extraordinary signs among Christians.” - Part 1, Section 23.

In the Fifth and Sixth Centuries, pretensions and frauds appear to have been substituted largely for spiritual gifts, as the Spirit withdrew more and more from the worldly minded church. Of the Fifth Century Mosheim comments:

“How much influence *miracles* may have had, it is difficult to say. For I can easily believe, that God was sometimes present with those pious and good men, who endeavored to instill the principles of true religion into the minds of barbarous nations; and yet it is certain, that the greater part of the prodigies of this age are very suspicious. The greater the simplicity and credulity of the multitude, the more audacious would be the crafty in playing off their tricks: nor could the more discerning expose their cunning artifices, with safety to their own lives and worldly comfort.” - Part 1, chapter 1. Section 7.

By the close of the Sixth Century, gifts of the Holy Spirit were all but unknown. Instead, many conflicts arose in relation to the origin and relationship of the Holy Spirit in the Godhead. Hagenbach says of the result of this conflict:

“Augustine in particular, taught the procession of the Spirit from both the Father and the Son. This doctrine became so firmly established in the West, that at the third synod of Toledo (A. D. 589), the clause *filioque* was added to the confession of faith of the council of Constantinople, and so the dogmatic basis was laid for a schism between the eastern and western churches.” - Volume 1, Second Period, Section 94.

Of followers of the Patriarch of Alexandria in Century VI, Mosheim states:

“They denied that each person considered by himself, and in nature, was God; but maintained, that the three persons had a *common God or divinity*, by an undivided participation of which, each one was God. The Father, Son, and Holy Spirit, they denominated *Hypostases (or persons)*; and what was common to them, *God, substance, and nature.*” - Part II, chapter V, Section 10.

Chapter Two

METAPHYSICAL LIFE

ANGELS AND CELESTIAL PERSONAGES

THE HEAVENLY HOST

Luke 2:13 - *“And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God.”*

Revelation 5:11 - *“I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne . . . and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands.”*

1 Nephi 1:7 - *“And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open, and he thought he saw God sitting on his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.”*

D&C 76:5 - *“These are they who are come unto Mount Zion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly place, the holiest of all; these are they who have come to an innumerable company of angels.”*

THE MINISTRY OF ANGELS

***Genesis 19:1** - *“And it came to pass, that there came three angels to Sodom in the evening; and Lot sat in the door of his house, in the city of Sodom.”*

Exodus 23:20, 21 - *“Behold, I send an angel before thee, to keep thee in the way, and to bring thee into the place which I have prepared. Beware of him, and obey his voice, provoke him not; for he will not pardon your transgressions; for my name is in him.”*

1 Kings 19:7 - *“And the angel of the Lord came again the second time, and touched him, and said, Arise and eat; because the journey is too great for thee.”*

Psalms 34:7 - *“The angel of the Lord encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them.”*

Daniel 8:16 - *“And I heard a man’s voice between the banks of Ulai, which called, and said, Gabriel, make this man to understand the vision.”*

Daniel 9:21 - *"Yea, while I was speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation."*

Daniel 10:5, 6 - *"Then I lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and behold a certain man clothed in linen, whose loins were girded with fine gold of Uphaz; his body also was like the beryl, and his face as the appearance of lightning, and his eyes as lamps of fire, and his arms and his feet like in color to polished brass, and the voice of his words like the voice of a multitude."*

Matthew 26:51 - *"Thinkest thou that I can not now pray to my Father, and he shall presently give me more than twelve legions of angels?" (53).*

***Matthew 28:2, 3** - *"For two angels of the Lord descended from heaven, and came and rolled back the stone from the door, and sat upon it, And their countenance was like lightning, and their raiment white as snow."*

Mark 1:11 - *"And the angels ministered unto him" (13).*

***Luke 1:11, 19, 30** - *"And there appeared unto him an angel of the Lord, standing on the right side of the altar of incense. . . . And the angel answering, said unto him, I am Gabriel, who stand in the presence of God, and am sent to speak unto thee, and to show you these glad tidings. . . . And the angel said unto her, Fear not, Mary, for thou hast found favour with God."*

Luke 2:9, 13 - *"And lo, an angel of the Lord appeared unto them, and the glory of the Lord shone round about them; and they were sore afraid. . . . And suddenly there was with the angel, a multitude of the heavenly host."*

Luke 22:43 - *"And there appeared an angel unto him from heaven, strengthening him."*

Acts 1:10 - *"And while they looked steadfastly toward heaven as he went up, behold, two men stood by them in white apparel."*

***Acts 12:7, 8** - *"And, behold, the angel of the Lord came unto him, and a light shined in the prison; and he smote Peter on the side, and raised him up, saying, Arise up quickly. And his chains fell off from his hands. And the angel said unto him, Gird thyself, and bind on thy sandals; and so he did."*

Acts 18:9, 10 - *"Then spake the Lord to Paul in the night by a vision, Be not afraid, but speak, and hold not thy peace; for I am with thee, and no man shall set on thee to hurt thee; for I have much people in this city."*

Acts 23:11 - *"And the night following the Lord stood by him, and said, Be of good cheer, Paul; for as thou hast testified of me in Jerusalem, so must thou bear witness also at Rome."*

Acts 27:23, 24 - *"For there stood by me this night the angel of God, whose I am, and whom I serve, saying, Fear not, Paul; thou must be brought before Caesar; and, lo, God hath given thee all them that sail with thee."*

***Hebrews 1:7, 14** - *"And of the angels he saith, Angels are ministering spirits. . . . Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation?"*

Hebrews 13:2 - *"Be not forgetful to entertain strangers; for thereby some have entertained angels unawares."*

Revelation 10:1 - *"And I saw another mighty angel come down from heaven, clothed with a cloud; and a rainbow was upon his head, and his face was as it were the sun, and his feet as pillars of fire."*

***Genesis 18:1, 2; Numbers 22:22 - 27, 31 - 35; Daniel 6:22; Matthew 13:42; 24:40; *Luke 24:2; Revelation 10:5; 14:6; *16:1 - 12, 17; 18:21.**

Helaman 2:113 - *"When they heard this, they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and behold, they saw the heavens open: and angels came down out of heaven, and ministered unto them."*

3 Nephi 8:25, 26 - *“They saw the heavens open, and they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were, in the midst of fire; and they came down and encircled those little ones about . . . and the angels did minister unto them, and the multitude did see and hear, and bear record.”*

D&C 104:10 - *“The power and authority of the lesser, of Aaronic, priesthood is, to hold the keys of the ministering of angels.”*

ANGELS SENT FROM GOD

†**Genesis 4:6**. To Adam.

†**Genesis 5:44**. Declare gospel.

***Genesis 16:8**. To Hagar.

***Genesis 19:1**. To Sodom.

Numbers 22:23. To Balaam.

***2 Samuel 24:16**. To Jerusalem.

1 Kings 19:5. To Elijah.

***1 Chronicles 21:15**. To Jerusalem.

2 Chronicles 32:21. Against Assyrians.

***Matthew 2:3 (1:20)**. To Joseph

Luke 1:11. To Zacharias.

***Luke 2:9**. To shepherds.

Luke 22:43. To Jesus.

Acts 12:23. To Herod.

Acts 27:23. To Paul.

***Revelation 1:1**. To John.

Revelation 7:1; *8:5 - 13; 14:15 - 19. Executing judgments.

Revelation 14:6 - 8; 16; 18; 19:17. Messengers of judgments.

D&C 83:4. Key of ministering of angels.

D&C 85:25 - 35. Announcing final judgment.

D&C 100:3 - *“ . . . for I say not unto you as I said unto your fathers, Mine angels shall go up before you, but not my presence; but I say unto you, Mine angels shall go before you, and also my presence, and in time ye shall possess the goodly land.”*

D&C 38:3; 43:6; 45:6.

1 Nephi 1:93 - To the defense of Nephi.

1 Nephi 3:192 - 197 - Nephi’s vision, instructions by an angel.

SATAN AND THE PRINCIPLE OF EVIL

THE ORIGIN OF EVIL

†**Genesis 3:4, 5** - *“Because that Satan rebelled against me, and sought to destroy the agency of man, which I, the Lord God, had given him; and also that I should give unto him mine own power; by the power of mine Only Begotten I caused that he should be cast down; and he became Satan. Yea, even the devil, the father of all lies, to deceive, and to blind men, and to lead them captive at his will, even as many as would not hearken to my voice.”*

Psalms 78:49 - *“He cast upon them the fierceness of his anger, wrath, and indignation, and trouble, by sending evil angels among them.”*

***Luke 10:19** - *“And he said unto them, As lightning falleth from heaven, I beheld Satan also falling” (18).*

2 Corinthians 11:14 - *“And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light.”*

Jude 6 - “The angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains.”

D&C 28:10 - *“ . . . behold, the Devil was before Adam, for he rebelled against me, saying, Give me thine honor, which is my power; and also a third part of the hosts of heaven turned he away from me because of their agency; and they were thrust down, and thus became the Devil and his angels.”*

D&C 76:4 - *“ . . . for they are vessels of wrath, doomed to suffer the wrath of God, with the Devil and his angels, in eternity.*

Matthew 25:42; 2 Peter 2:4; *Revelation 12:6, 8; D&C 28:7, 8; 36:5; Jacob 2:65; 3 Nephi 4:22; 2 Nephi 6:20, 21, 39; 11:93, 95; Mosiah 8:75, 78, 81, 84, 85, 88.

2 Nephi 1:81, 101, 102 - *“For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things. . . . An angel of God, according to that which is written, had fallen from heaven; wherefore he became a devil, having sought that which was evil before God.”*

2 Nephi 1:117, 118; D&C 28:10.

SATANIC POWER USED TO DECEIVE

†Genesis 3:7 - *“And Satan put it into the heart of the serpent, for he had drawn away many after him; and he sought also to beguile Eve.”*

***Mark 13:25** - *“For in those days there shall also arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall show great signs and wonders; insomuch, that if possible, they shall deceive the very elect, who are the elect according to the covenant” (22).*

Acts 8:9 - 11, 23 - *“But there was a certain man, called Simon, which beforetime in the same city used sorcery, and bewitched the people of Samaria, giving out that himself was some great one; to whom they all gave heed, from the least to the greatest, saying, This man is the great power of God. And to him they had regard, because that of long time he had bewitched them with sorceries. . . . For I perceive that thou art in the gall of bitterness, and in the bond of iniquity.”*

2 Corinthians 11:3 - *“But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtilty, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.”*

***2 Thessalonians 2:9** - *“Yea, the Lord, even Jesus, whose coming is not until after there cometh a falling away, by the working of Satan with all power, and signs and lying wonders.”*

Revelation 13:13, 14 - *“And he doeth great wonders, so that he maketh fire come down from heaven on the earth in the sight of men, and deceiveth them that dwell on the earth by the means of those miracles which he had power to do.”*

Revelation 16:13, 14 - *“And I saw three unclean spirits like frogs come out of the mouth of the dragon, and out of the mouth of the beast, and out of the mouth of the false prophet. For they are the spirits of devils, working miracles, which go forth unto the kings of the earth and of the whole world, to gather them to the battle of that great day of God Almighty.”*

3 Nephi 1:39 - *“The power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts of the people.”*

Revelation 19:20 - *“And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast.”*

SATAN’S POWER TO TEMPT AND AFFLICT

***Job 1:6, 7** - *“Now there was a day when the children of God came to present themselves before the Lord, and Satan came also among them. And the Lord said unto Satan, Whence comest thou? Then*

Satan answered the Lord, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it."

Job 2:6, 7 - *"And the Lord said unto Satan, Behold, he is in thine hand: but save his life. So went Satan forth from the presence of the Lord, and smote Job with sore boils from the sole of his foot unto his crown."*

Zechariah 3:1, 2 - *"And he showed me Joshua the high priest standing before the angel of the Lord, and Satan standing at his right hand to resist him. And the Lord said unto Satan, The Lord rebuke thee, O Satan."*

***Matthew 4:3, 6, 9** - *"And when the tempter came to him, he said, If thou be the Son of God, command that these stones be made bread. . . . Then the devil came unto him and said, If thou be the Son of God, cast thyself down. . . . And the devil came unto him again, and said, All these things will I give unto thee, if thou wilt fall down and worship me."*

Luke 13 - 16 - *"And ought not this woman, being a daughter of Abraham, whom Satan hath bound, lo, these eighteen years, be loosed from this bond on the Sabbath day?"*

EVIL WORK OF WIZARDS, MAGICIANS, AND FAMILIAR SPIRITS

Exodus 7:11, 12 - *"Then Pharaoh also called the wise men and the sorcerers; now the magicians of Egypt, they also did in like manner with their enchantments. For they cast down every man his rod, and they became serpents; but Aaron's rod swallowed up their rods."*

Exodus 8:7, 18 - *"And the magicians did so with their enchantments, and brought up frogs upon the land of Egypt. . . . And the magicians did so with their enchantments to bring forth lice, but they could not; so there were lice upon man, and upon beast."*

Leviticus 19:31 - *"Regard not them that have familiar spirits, neither seek after wizards, to be defiled by them; I am the Lord your God."*

1 Samuel 28:15, 16 - *"Saul, why hast thou disquieted me, to bring me up? And Saul answered, I am sore distressed; for the Philistines make war against me, and God has departed from me, and answereth me no more, neither by prophets, nor by dreams; therefore I have called thee, that thou mayest make known unto me what I shall do. Then said Samuel, Wherefore then dost thou ask of me, seeing the Lord is departed from thee, and is become thine enemy?"*

***Isaiah 8:19, 20** - *"And when they shall say unto you, Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep and that mutter; should not a people seek unto their God? for the living to hear from the dead? To the law and to the testimony; and if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them."*

Isaiah 19:3 - *"And the spirit of Egypt shall fail in the midst thereof; and I will destroy the counsel thereof; and they shall seek to the idols, and to the charmers, and to them that have familiar spirits, and to the wizards."*

Leviticus 20:6, 7; 1 Kings 22:2 - 23; 2 Chronicles 18:4 - 6, 12, 13, 16, 18 - 22.

2 Nephi 9:57, 58 - *"And when they shall say unto you, Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep, and mutter: should not a people seek unto their God? for the living to hear from the dead? To the law and to the testimony: and if they speak not according to the word, it is because there is no light in them."*

Helaman 5:23, 24, 41, 45, 46, 49 - *"And it shall come to pass saith the Lord of hosts, yea, our great and true God, that whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth, shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land, save he be a righteous man, and shall hide it up hide up unto the Lord, For I will, saith the Lord, that they shall hide up their treasures unto me save it be the*

righteous; . . . behold, he hath cursed the land, because of your iniquity; and behold, the time cometh that he curseth your riches, that it becometh slippery, that ye can not hold them; . . . O that we had remembered the Lord our God, in the day that he gave us our riches, and then they would not have become slippery, that we should lose them; for behold, our riches are gone from us. Behold, we lay a tool here, and on the morrow it is gone; . . . Behold we are surrounded by demons, yea, we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls.”

Mormon 1:19, 20 - “The inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them nor retain them again. And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the face of the land.”

WARNINGS

Deuteronomy 13:1 - 3 - “If there arise among you a prophet, or a dreamer of dreams, and giveth thee a sign or a wonder, and the sign or the wonder come to pass, whereof he spake unto thee, saying, Let us go after other gods, which thou hast not known, and let us serve them; thou shalt not hearken unto the words of that prophet, or that dreamer of dreams; for the Lord your God proveth you, to know whether ye love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul.”

Acts 13:8, 10 - “But Elymas the sorcerer . . . withstood them, seeking to turn away the deputy from the faith. Then Saul . . . said, O full of all subtilty and all mischief, thou child of the devil, thou enemy of all righteousness, wilt thou not cease to pervert the right ways of the Lord?”

2 Thessalonians 2:10 - 12 - “And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved. And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie; that they all might be damned who believed not the truth.”

1 Timothy 4:1 - “Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils.”

Numbers 22:12 - 38; Deuteronomy 18:9 - 14; 2 Kings 17:17; 21:6; Isaiah 66:4.

THEY ENTER INTO MEN AND BEASTS

Mark 1:30 - “And cast out many devils; and suffered not the devils to speak, because they knew him” (34).

***Mark 5:9, 15** - “And all the devils besought him, saying, Send us into the swine. . . . And when he was come into the ship, he that had been possessed with the devil, spoke to Jesus, and prayed that he might be with him” (12, 18).

Acts 16:16 - “And it came to pass, as we went to prayer, a certain damsel possessed with a spirit of divination met us, which brought her masters much gain by soothsaying.”

Acts 19:15, 16 - “And the evil spirit answered and said, Jesus I know, and Paul I know; but who are ye? And the man in whom the evil spirit was leaped on them, and overcame them and prevailed against them, so that they fled out of that house naked and wounded.”

Genesis 41:8; 2 Kings 23:24; Daniel 2:2; 11:12; *Matthew 8:29 - 33.

SATANIC POWERS TO BE RESISTED AND OVERCOME

Isaiah 59:19 - “When the enemy shall come in like a flood, the Spirit of the Lord shall lift up a standard against him.”

Malachi 3:5 - *“And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages.”*

John 12:31 - *“Now is the judgment of this world; now shall the prince of this world be cast out.”*

***John 14:30** - *“Hereafter I will not talk much with you; for the prince of darkness, who is of this world, cometh, but hath no power over me, but he hath power over you.”*

John 16:11 - *“Of judgment, because the prince of this world is judged.”*

Ephesians 2:2 - *“Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience.”*

Ephesians 6:11 - *“Put on the whole armor of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil.”*

***2 Thessalonians 2:3 - 10; Revelation 19:20; 20:10.**

SATAN’S POWER IS LIMITED

D&C6: 7 - *“There is none else save God, that knowest thy thoughts and the intents of thy heart.”*

SATAN CANNOT TEMPT LITTLE CHILDREN

D&C 28:13 - *“Little children are redeemed from the foundation of the world . . . wherefore they can not sin, for power is not given unto Satan to tempt little children, until they begin to become accountable.”*

Mosiah 8:11 - 20.

OUR DEFENSE AGAINST SATAN

Matthew 4:10, 11 - *“Then said Jesus unto him, Get thee hence, Satan. . . . Then the devil leaveth him.”*

Matthew 17:18 - 21 - *“Jesus rebuked the devil; and he departed out of him: and the child was cured from that very hour. Then came the disciples to Jesus apart, and said, Why could not we cast him out? And Jesus said unto them, Because of your unbelief. . . . Howbeit, this kind goeth not out but by prayer and fasting.”*

Mark 16:17 - *“In my name shall they cast out devils.”*

John 14:13, 14 - *“ whatsoever ye shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. If ye shall ask any thing in my name, I will do it.”*

Anything that is in the name of Jesus must be harmonious with his will, his wisdom, his love, and his purpose.

Acts 4:12 - *“There is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.”*

Acts 16:18 - *“Paul, being grieved, turned and said to the spirit, I command thee in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her. And he came out the same hour.”*

D&C 6:16 - *“Fear not, little flock, do good, let earth and hell combine against you, for if ye are built upon my Rock, they can not prevail.”*

Church History, Volume 1, page 9, the testimony of Joseph Smith:

I kneeled down and began to offer up the desires of my heart to God. I had scarcely done so when immediately I was seized upon by some power which entirely overcame me, and had such astonishing influence over my tongue so that I could not speak. Thick darkness gathered around me, and it seemed to me for a time as if I were doomed to sudden destruction. But exerting all my powers to call upon God to deliver me out of the power of this enemy which had seized upon me,

and at the very moment when I was ready to sink into despair and abandon myself to destruction, (not to an imaginary ruin, but to the power of some actual being from the unseen world who had such marvelous power as I had never before felt in my being,) just at this moment of great alarm, I saw a pillar of light exactly over my head, above the brightness of the sun; which descended gradually until it fell upon me. It no sooner appeared than I found myself delivered from the enemy which held me bound.

This example shows us how we should call upon God for help and deliverance when we are assailed by evil powers of a spiritual character.

SPIRIT OF CONTENTION CONDEMNED

Proverbs 13:10 - *“Only by pride cometh contention; but with the well - advised is wisdom.”*

Titus 3:9 - *“But avoid foolish questions, and genealogies, and contentions, and strivings about the law; for they are unprofitable and vain.”*

Proverbs 22:10; Jeremiah 15:10; Habakkuk 1:3; Romans 13:13; 1 Corinthians 11:16; Galatians 5:20, 21; Philemon 1:15, 16; James 3:14.

D&C 98:3 - *“... there were jarrings, and contentions, and envyings, and strifes, and lustful and covetous desires among them; therefore by these things they polluted their inheritances.”*

D&C 117:13 - *“Let contentions and quarrelings among you cease. Sustain each other in peace, and ye shall be blessed with my Spirit, in comforting and strengthening you for my work.”*

D&C 119:5 - *“Contention is unseemly; therefore, cease to contend respecting the sacrament and the time of administering it.”*

D&C 133:2; 134; 135; 136.

STRIFE AND DIVISIONS CONDEMNED

Romans 16:17, 18 - *“Now I beseech you, brethren, mark them which cause divisions and offences contrary to the doctrine which ye have learned; and avoid them. For they that are such serve not our Lord Jesus Christ, but their own belly; and by good words and fair speeches deceive the hearts of the simple.”*

1 Corinthians 3:3 - *“For ye are yet carnal; for whereas there is among you envying, and strife, and divisions, are ye not carnal, and walk as men?”*

1 Corinthians 13: 4 - *“Charity suffereth long, and is kind; charity envieth not; charity vaunteth not itself, is not puffed up.*

2 Corinthians 12:20 - *“For I fear, lest, when I come, I shall not find you such as I would, and that I shall be found unto you such as ye would not; lest there be debates, envyings, wraths, strifes, backbitings, whisperings, swellings, tumults.”*

WARNINGS AGAINST JEALOUSY AND ENVY

Job 5:2 - *“For wrath killeth the foolish man, and envy slayeth the silly one.”*

Psalms 37:1 - *“Fret not thyself because of evildoers, neither be thou envious against the workers of iniquity.”*

Proverbs 3:31 - *“Envy thou not the oppressor, and choose none of his ways.”*

Proverbs 6:34 - *“For jealousy is the rage of a man: therefore he will not spare in the day of vengeance.”*

Proverbs 14:30 - *“A sound heart is the life of the flesh: but envy the rottenness of the bones.”*

Proverbs 27:4 - *“Wrath is cruel, and anger is outrageous; but who is able to stand before envy?”*

Ecclesiastes 4:4 - *"I consider all travail, and every right work, that for this a man is envied of his neighbor. This is also vanity and vexation of spirit."*

Romans 13:13 - *"Let us walk honestly, as in the day; not in rioting and drunkenness, . . . not in strife and envying."*

1 Corinthians 3:3 - *"For whereas there is among you envying, and strife, and divisions, are ye not carnal?"*

1 Corinthians 13:4 - *"Charity suffereth long, and is kind; charity envieth not."*

Galatians 5:26 - *"Let us not be desirous of vain glory, provoking one another, envying one another."*

James 3:16 - *"For where envying and strife is, there is confusion and every evil work."*

1 Peter 2:1 - *"Laying aside all malice, and all guile, and hypocrisies, and envies, and all evil speakings."*

D&C 67:3 - *" . . . inasmuch as you strip yourselves from jealousies and fears, and humble yourselves before me, for ye are not sufficiently humble, the veil shall be rent, and you shall see me and know that I am."*

D&C 120:3 - *"There should be no conflict or jealousy of authority between the quorums of the church; all are necessary and equally honorable, each in its place."*

Chapter Three

THE NATURE AND LIFE OF MAN

THE SPIRIT OF MAN

ITS PRE-EXISTENCE

Numbers 16:22 - *"And they fell upon their faces, and said, O God, the God of the spirits of all flesh, shall one man sin, and wilt thou be wroth with all the congregation?"*

Jeremiah 1:5 - *"Before I formed thee in the belly I knew thee; . . . and I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations."*

***John 1:6, 7** - *"There was a man sent from God, whose name was John. The same came into the world for a witness."*

Hebrews 2:11, 14 - *"For both he that sanctifieth and they who are sanctified are all of one; for which cause he is not ashamed to call them brethren. . . Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same."*

Hebrews 10:5 - *"Wherefore, when he cometh into the world, he saith, Sacrifice and offering thou wouldest not, but a body hast thou prepared me."*

Hebrews 12:9 - *"Furthermore, we have had fathers of our flesh which corrected us, and we gave them reverence; shall we not much rather be in subjection unto the Father of spirits, and live?"*

***Genesis 1:27; *2:4 - 6; †5:10; †6:38; Job. 38:4, 7; Ecclesiastes 12:7; John 9:2; 17:24; *Romans 8:29; Ephesians 1:4, 5.**

D&C 49:3 - *"That it [the earth] might be filled with the measure of man, according to his creation before the world was made."*

D&C 90:4.

D&C 90:5 - *"Man was also in the beginning with God. Intelligence . . . was not created or made, neither indeed can be."*

Alma 12:112 - *"Man in the beginning, was created after the image of God."*

John 16:28 - *"I came forth from the Father, and am come into the world; again, I leave the world, and go to the Father."*

THE SPIRIT THE CONSCIOUS PERSONALITY OF MAN

***Genesis 2:8** - *“And I, the Lord God, formed man from the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul; the first flesh upon the earth, the first man also” (7).*

Job 32:8 - *“But there is a spirit in man; and the inspiration of the Almighty giveth them understanding.”*

Ecclesiastes 8:8 - *“There is no man that hath power over the spirit to retain the spirit; neither hath he power in the day of death.”*

Ecclesiastes 12:7 - *“Then shall the dust return to the earth as it was; and the spirit shall return unto God who gave it.”*

Isaiah 26:9 - *“With my soul have I desired thee in the night; yea, with my spirit within me will I seek thee early.”*

Zechariah 12:1 - *“The Lord . . . formeth the spirit of man within him.”*

Luke 8:54 - *“And her spirit came again, and she arose straightway; and he commanded to give her meat” (55).*

Luke 23:47 - *“And when Jesus had cried with a loud voice, he said, Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit.”*

***Acts 7:59** - *“And he, calling upon God, said, Lord Jesus, receive my spirit.”*

1 Corinthians 9:27 - *“But I keep under my body, and bring it into subjection; lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway.”*

James 2:25 - *“The body without the spirit is dead.”*

***Romans 7:23; *1 Corinthians 2:11; Ephesians 3:16.**

SPIRIT MAY EXIST INDEPENDENT OF THE BODY

Daniel 3:25 - *“He answered and said, Lo, I see four men loose, walking in the midst of the fire, and they have no hurt; and the form of the fourth is like the Son of God.”*

Matthew 17:2 - *“And behold, there appeared unto them Moses and Elias, talking with him” (3).*

***Luke 24:36, 38** - *“But they were terrified and affrighted, and supposed that they had seen a spirit. . . Handle me, and see; for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as you see me have” (37, 39).*

2 Corinthians 4:16 - *“But though our outward man perish, yet the inward man is renewed day by day.”*

2 Corinthians 5:1 - *“For we know that, if our earthly house of this tabernacle were dissolved, we have a building of God, a house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens.”*

2 Corinthians 12:2 - *“I knew a man in Christ above fourteen years ago, whether in the body, I can not tell; or whether out of the body, I can not tell; God knoweth; such a one caught up to the third heaven.”*

***Philemon 1:23, 24** - *“Now I am in a strait betwixt two, having a desire to depart, and to be with Christ; which is far better; nevertheless to abide in the flesh is more needful for you.”*

Ecclesiastes 3:21; 12:7; Matthew 14:22; Mark 6:51.

Mosiah 1:66 - *“That I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God.”*

2 Nephi 6:28 - 32; Alma 19:40 - 47.

CONSCIOUS EXISTENCE OF SPIRIT HEREAFTER

Job 14:14, 15 - *"If a man die, shall he live again? all the days of my appointed time will I wait, till my change come. Thou shalt call and I will answer thee; thou wilt have a desire to the work of thine hands"*

***Matthew 5:27** - *"Agree with thine adversary quickly, while thou art in the way with him; lest at any time thine adversary deliver thee to the judge, and the judge deliver thee to the officer, and thou be cast into prison" (25).*

***John 5:25** - *"Verily, verily, I say unto you, The hour is coming, and now is, when the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of God; and they who hear shall live."*

1 Corinthians 5:5 - *"To deliver such a one unto Satan for the destruction of the flesh, that the spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord Jesus."*

2 Corinthians 5:2 - *"For in this we groan, earnestly desiring to be clothed upon with our house which is from heaven."*

2 Corinthians 5:6 - *"Therefore we are always confident, knowing that, whilst we are at home in the body, we are absent from the Lord."*

Revelation 6:9, 10 - *"I saw under the altar the souls of them that were slain for the word of God, and for the testimony which they held; and they cried with a loud voice, saying, How long, O Lord, holy and true, dost thou not judge and avenge our blood on them that dwell on the earth?"*

Proverbs 5:11, 12; Matthew 17:1 - 4; 27:57; 2 Corinthians 5:8; *1 Peter 3:18, 19; *4:6; Revelation 20:4; *22:8, 9.

Alma 19:43 - *"It has been made known unto me, by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body; . . . whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life."*

Alma 19:56 - *"There is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery, until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth."*

THE AGENCY OF MAN FREEDOM TO CHOOSE

***Genesis 2:19 - 21** - *"And I, the Lord God, commanded the man, saying, Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat: but of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: nevertheless, thou mayest choose for thyself, for it is given unto thee; but remember that I forbid it" (16, 17).*

†Genesis 3:4 - *"Wherefore, because that Satan rebelled against me, and sought to destroy the agency of man, which I, the Lord God, had given him: and also that I should give unto him mine own power; by the power of mine Only Begotten I caused that he should be cast down, and he became Satan."*

†Genesis 6:57, 58 - *"And the Lord spake unto Adam saying, Inasmuch as thy children are conceived in sin, even so, when they begin to grow up sin conceiveth in their hearts, and they taste the bitter, that they may know to prize the good. And it is given unto them to know good from evil; wherefore, they are agents unto themselves."*

†Genesis 7:39, 40 - *"I gave unto them their intelligence in the day that I created them. And in the garden of Eden gave I unto man his agency."*

Deuteronomy 30:19 - *"I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live."*

Joshua 24:15, 22 - *“And if it seem evil unto you to serve the Lord, choose you this day whom ye will serve; . . . Ye are witnesses against yourselves that ye have chosen you the Lord, to serve him. And they said, We are witnesses.”*

Job 34:4, 33 - *“Let us choose to us judgment: let us know among ourselves what is good. . . . Should it be according to thy mind? he will recompense it, whether thou refuse, or whether thou choose.”*

Isaiah 66:3, 4 - *“Yea, they have chosen their own ways, and their soul delighteth in their abominations. . . . but they did evil before mine eyes, and chose that in which I delighted not.”*

Luke 10:43 - *“But one thing is needful: and Mary hath chosen that good part which shall not be taken away from her” (42).*

1 Chronicles 21:11, 12; Psalms 119:173; Proverbs 1:29; Isaiah 7:15; 56:4; 65:12.

2 Nephi 1:97 - 99 - *“It must needs be that there was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter; wherefore the Lord God gave unto man, that he should act for himself.”*

2 Nephi 1:117, 118 - *“And because they are redeemed from the fall they have become free forever, knowing good from evil; to act for themselves, and not to be acted upon, save it be by the punishment of the Lord at the great and last day.”*

Alma 9:65, 66 - *“In the first place being left to choose good or evil; therefore they having chosen good, and exercising exceeding great faith, are called with a holy calling.”*

D&C 28:10 - *“It must needs be that the Devil should tempt the children of men, or they could not be agents unto themselves, for if they never should have bitter, they could not know the sweet.”*

D&C 58:6 - *“Verily I say, Men should be anxiously engaged in a good cause, and do many things of their own free will, and bring to pass much righteousness; for the power is in them, wherein they are agents unto themselves.”*

D&C 90:5 - *“All truth is independent in that sphere in which God has placed it, to act for itself, as all intelligence also. . . . Behold, here is the agency of man.”*

D&C 98:10 - *“That every man may act in doctrine, and principle pertaining to futurity, according to the moral agency which I have given unto them, that every man may be accountable for his own sins in the day of judgment.”*

D&C 28:9; 101:2.

THE ACCOUNTABILITY OF MAN

†Genesis 17:11 - *“That thou mayest know for ever that children are not accountable before me until they are eight years old.”*

Deuteronomy 18:19 - *“And it shall come to pass, that whosoever will not hearken unto my words which he shall speak in my name, I will require it of him.”*

Ezekiel 18:26, 30 - *“When a righteous man turneth away from his righteousness, and committeth iniquity, and dieth in them; for his iniquity that he hath done shall he die. . . . Therefore I will judge you, O house of Israel, every one according to his ways, saith the Lord God.”*

Daniel 7:22 - *“Judgment was given to the saints of the most High.”*

***Matthew 12:31** - *“And again I say unto you, That every idle word which men shall speak, they shall give account thereof in the day of judgment” (36).*

Matthew 18:18 - *“Whatsoever ye shall bind on earth, shall be bound in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth, shall be loosed in heaven.”*

John 9:41 - *“Jesus said unto them, If ye were blind, ye should have no sin; but now ye say, We see; therefore your sin remaineth.”*

John 12:48 - *“He that rejecteth me, and receiveth not my words, hath one that judgeth him; the word that I have spoken, the same shall judge him in the last day.”*

1 Corinthians 6:2, 3 - *“Do ye not know that the saints shall judge the world? and if the world shall be judged by you, are ye unworthy to judge the smallest matters? Know ye not that we shall judge angels? how much more things that pertain to this life?”*

***1 Corinthians 6:12** - *“All these things are not lawful unto me, and all these things are not expedient. All things are not lawful for me, therefore I will not be brought under the power of any.”*

1 Peter 4:5 - *“Who shall give account to him that is ready to judge the quick and the dead.”*

†Genesis 2:21; Matthew 10:13; 11:20 - 24; 12:31, 32; 18:23 seq.; 25:19 - 31 ; Mark 6:11; Luke 16:2, 11, 12; 23:31 - 54; Acts 17:30; Romans 14:12; 1 Corinthians 4:2; 3:8, 13 - 15; 1 Timothy 6:20; Hebrews 13:17.

Revelation 3:21 - *“To him that overcometh . . . to sit . . . in my throne.”*

***Matthew 19:28; *Luke 12:33, 34.**

D&C 28:3 (Twelve shall judge the world).

D&C 43:4 (Sent to teach and not to be taught).

D&C 125:16 (Free speech, liberty of conscience, does not justify to frustrate commands of the body).

1 Nephi 3:1 (Twelve at Jerusalem shall judge the world).

3 Nephi 13:4; Mormon 1:84 (Twelve disciples judge Nephi).

Moroni 8:11 - *“This thing shall ye teach . . . unto those who are accountable.”*

PREDESTINATION AND FOREORDINATION BASED ON FOREKNOWLEDGE OF CHARACTER

Genesis 18:18, 19 - *“Abraham shall surely become a great and mighty nation, and all the nations of the earth shall be blessed in him? For I know him, that he will command his children and his household after him, and they shall keep the way of the Lord, to do justice and judgment.”*

Deuteronomy 30:19 - *“I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live.”*

***Psalms 33:12, 13, 15** - *“Blessed are the nations and the people whom the Lord God hath chosen for his own inheritance. The Lord looketh from heaven; he beholdeth all the sons of men . . . he considereth all their works.”*

***Isaiah 6:9** - *“And he said, Go, and tell this people, Hear ye indeed but they understood not; and see ye indeed, but they perceived not.*

Isaiah 45:11 - *“Thus saith the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, and his Maker, Ask me of things to come concerning my sons.”*

Jeremiah 1:5 - *“Before I formed thee in the belly I knew thee; and before thou camest forth out of the womb I sanctified thee, and I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations.”*

***Matthew 13:13, 14** - *“And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias concerning them, which saith, By hearing, ye shall hear and shall not understand; and seeing, ye shall see and shall not perceive. For this people’s heart is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed” (14, 15).*

***Matthew 20:15** - *“So the last shall be first, and the first last; and many are called, but few chosen” (16).*

Matthew 25:35 - *“Then shall the king say unto them on his right hand, Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world” (34).*

Acts 2:23 - *“Him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, ye have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain.”*

***Acts 13:48** - *"They were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord; and as many as believed were ordained unto eternal life."*

Acts 15:18 - *"Known unto God are all his works from the beginning of the world."*

***Acts 17:26, 27** - *"And hath determined the times before appointed, and the bounds of their habitation; that they should seek the Lord, if they are willing to find him."*

***Romans 8:29, 30** - *"For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to his own image, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren. Moreover, him whom he did predestinate, him he also called; and him whom he called, him he also sanctified; and him whom he sanctified, him he also glorified."*

Ephesians 1:4, 5 - *"He hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love; having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself."*

Ephesians 2:10 - *"We are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them."*

2 Thessalonians 2:13 - *"God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth."*

1 Peter 1:2 - *"Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ."*

2 Peter 1:10 - *"Give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall."*

Deuteronomy 10:15; John 15:19; Romans 9:18; 1 Thessalonians 1:4; Revelation 3:4.

PREDESTINATION OF CHRIST

†Genesis 6:53, 60 - *"Jesus Christ, the only name which shall be given under heaven, whereby salvation shall come unto the children of men; . . . the name of his Only Begotten is the Son of Man, even Jesus Christ, a righteous judge, who shall come in the meridian of time."*

†Genesis 6:65 - *"This is the plan of salvation unto all men, through the blood of mine Only Begotten, who shall come in the meridian of time."*

†Genesis 7:54, 62 - *"Enoch saw the day of the coming of the Son of Man, even in the flesh; . . . and he looked, and beheld the Son of Man lifted up on the cross."*

†Genesis 7: 73 - *"Enoch saw the day of the coming of the Son of Man, in the last days, to dwell on the earth, in righteousness, for the space of a thousand years."*

Luke 24:25, 26 - *"O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken! Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?"*

John 8:56 - *"Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad."*

Acts 10:42, 43 - *"It is he which was ordained of God to be the judge of quick and dead. To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins."*

***Romans 8:29, 30** - *"For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to his own image, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren. Moreover, him whom he did predestinate, him he also called; and him whom he called him he also sanctified; and him whom he sanctified him he also glorified."*

Luke 24:43 - 45; *John 1:13; Acts 2:23; Hebrews 1:2.

OF HIS DISCIPLES

Jeremiah 1:5 - *"Before I formed thee in the belly I knew thee; and before thou camest forth out of the womb I sanctified thee, and I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations."*

John 1:6 - *"There was a man sent from God, whose name was John."*

Ephesians 1:4, 5 - *"According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love; having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will."*

Alma 9:65 - *"Being called and prepared from the foundation of the world, according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works; in the first place being left to choose good or evil."*

(See The Agency of Man. Pre - existence.)

PENALTIES OF PERVERSITY

1 Samuel 2:30 - *"I said indeed that thy house, and the house of thy father, should walk before me forever; but now the Lord saith, Be it far from me; for them that honor me I will honor, and they that despise me shall be lightly esteemed."*

Psalms 81:11, 12 - *"But my people would not hearken to my voice; and Israel would none of me. So I gave them up unto their own hearts' lust; and they walked in their own counsels."*

Isaiah 66:4 - *"I also will choose their delusions, and will bring their fears upon them; because when I called, none did answer; when I spake, they did not hear."*

Ezekiel 20:24 - *"Because they had not executed my judgments, but had despised my statutes, and had polluted my sabbaths, and their eyes were after their fathers' idols."*

2 Thessalonians 2:10, 11, 12 - *"Because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved. And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie."*

Deuteronomy 11:26 - 28.

PHARAOH'S CASE

***Exodus 4:21** - *"And the Lord said unto Moses, When thou goest to return into Egypt, see that thou do all those wonders before Pharaoh, which I have put in thine hand, and I will prosper thee; but Pharaoh will harden his heart, and he will not let the people go."*

***Exodus 7:3, 4** - *"And Pharaoh will harden his heart, as I said unto thee; and thou shalt multiply my signs, and my wonders, in the land of Egypt."*

Exodus 8:15 - *"But when Pharaoh saw that there was respite, he hardened his heart, and hearkened not unto them."*

Exodus 9:12, 13, 16, 17, 34, and 35 - *"And Pharaoh hardened his heart, and he hearkened not unto them. . . . And the Lord said unto Moses. . . . And in very deed for this cause have I raised thee up, for to show in thee my power; and that my name may be declared throughout all the earth. Therefore speak unto Pharaoh the thing which I command thee, who as yet exalteth himself that he will not let them go. . . . And when Pharaoh saw that the rain and the hail and the thunders were ceased, he sinned yet more, and hardened his heart, he and his servants. And the heart of Pharaoh was hardened, neither would he let the children of Israel go; as the Lord had spoken by Moses."*

***Exodus 10:1, 1,6, 17, 20** - *"And the Lord said unto Moses, Go in unto Pharaoh; for he hath hardened his heart, and the hearts of his servants, therefore I will show these my signs before him. . . . Then Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron in haste; and he said, I have sinned against the Lord your God, and against you. Now therefore forgive, I pray thee, my sin only this once, and entreat the*

Lord your God, that he may take away from me this death only. . . .But Pharaoh hardened his heart, so that he would not let the children of Israel go.”

***Exodus 11:9, 10** - *“And the Lord said unto Moses, Pharaoh will not hearken unto you; therefore my wonders shall be multiplied in the land of Egypt. And Moses and Aaron did all these wonders before Pharaoh. . . . And Pharaoh hardened his heart.”*

***Exodus 14:4, 8** - *“And Pharaoh will harden his heart, that he shall follow after them. . . . And Pharaoh hardened his heart, and he pursued after the children of Israel.”*

1 Samuel 6:6.

ESAU’S CASE

Malachi 1:2, 3 - *“Was not Esau Jacob’s brother? saith the Lord; yet I loved Jacob. And I hated Esau.”*

Hebrews 12:16, 17 - *“Lest there be any fornicator, or profane person, as Esau, who for one morsel of meat sold his birthright. For ye know how that afterward, when he would have inherited the blessing, he was rejected.”*

GOSPEL CALL AND SANCTIFICATION

Isaiah 45:22 - *“Look unto me, and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth; for I am God and there is none else.”*

Isaiah 55:1 - *“Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money; come ye, buy, and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price.”*

Mark 16:15 - *“He that believeth and is baptized, shall be saved; but he that believeth not, shall be damned” (16).*

Acts 10:34, 35 - *“Of a truth I perceive that God is no respecter of persons; but in every nation he that feareth him, and worketh righteousness, is accepted with him.”*

Romans 9:23, 24 - *“That he might make known the riches of his glory on the vessels of mercy, which he had before prepared unto glory. Even us, whom he hath called, not of the Jews only, but also of the Gentiles.”*

2 Thessalonians 2:13, 14 - *“Because God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth; whereunto he called you by our gospel, to the obtaining of the glory of our Lord Jesus Christ.”*

***1 Timothy 2:4** - *“Who is willing to have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth which is in Christ.”*

***Titus 2:11** - *“For the grace of God which bringeth salvation to all men, hath appeared.”*

1 Peter 1:2 - *“Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience.”*

2 Peter 1:10 - *“Give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall.”*

Revelation 22:17 - *“And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.”*

John 15:16; 17:2; Acts 17:26, 27; Romans 9:23 - 26; 2 Thessalonians 2:13; 1 Timothy 4:10.

JUDGMENT OF THOSE IGNORANT OF LAW

Numbers 15:27 - 29 - *“If any soul sin through ignorance. . . . the priest shall make an atonement for the soul that sinneth ignorantly, when he sinneth by ignorance before the Lord, to make an atonement for him; and it shall be forgiven him. Ye shall have one law for him that sinneth through*

ignorance, both for him that is born among the children of Israel, and for the stranger that sojourneth among them."

Romans 2:11, 12, 14 - *"For there is no respect of persons with God. For as many as have sinned without law shall also perish without law; and as many as have sinned in the law shall be judged by the law. . . . For when the Gentiles, which have not the law, do by nature the things contained in the law, these having not the law, are a law unto themselves."*

Romans 4:15 - *"For where no law is, there is no transgression."*

***Romans 5:13** - *"For before the law, sin was in the world; yet sin is not imputed to those who have no law."*

Romans 7:8 - *"But sin, taking occasion by the commandment, wrought in me all manner of concupiscence. For without the law sin was dead."*

1 Corinthians 9:21 - *"To them that are without law, as without law, (being not without law to God, but under the law to Christ,) that I might gain them that are without law."*

D&C 45:10 - *"Then shall the heathen nations be redeemed, and they that knew no law shall have part in the first resurrection, and it shall be tolerable for them."*

2 Nephi 6:51, 53 - *"Wherefore he hath given a law; and where there is no law given there is no punishment; and where there is no punishment, there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation, the mercies of the Holy One of Israel have claim upon them, because of the atonement."*

Mosiah 1:107 - *"For behold, and also his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died, not knowing the will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned."*

Mosiah 8:58 - *"And these are those who have part in the first resurrection; and these are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not having salvation declared unto them."*

Alma 19:103 - *"And if there was no law given if men sinned, what could justice do, or mercy either: for they would have no claim upon the creature."*

Moroni 8:25 - 27 - *"For behold that all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are without law. For the power of redemption cometh on all they that have no law; wherefore, he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation, can not repent; and unto such baptism availeth nothing. But it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works."*

Alma 15:56.

FALL OF MAN AND HIS PROBATION

†Genesis 4:9 - *"That, as thou hast fallen, thou mayest be redeemed, and all mankind, as will."*

†Genesis 6:49 - *"And by his fall came death, and we are made partakers of misery and woe."*

†Genesis 6:61 - *"Therefore I give unto you a commandment to teach these things freely unto your children, saying, that by reason of transgression cometh the fall, which fall bringeth death."*

Alma 19:84, 85 - *"And thus we see, that there was a time granted unto man, to repent, yea, a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God. For behold, if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partook of the tree of life, he would have lived for ever . . . having no space for repentance."*

Alma 19:90, 91 - *"As the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal; . . . it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death."*

2 Nephi 1:108.

D&C 28:11 - *"Wherefore, it came to pass that the Devil tempted Adam and he partook of the forbidden fruit. . . . wherein he became subject to the will of the Devil, because he yielded unto*

temptation; wherefore, I the Lord God, caused that he should be cast out from the garden of Eden, from my presence."

D&C 28:12 - *"But, behold, I say unto you, that I, the Lord God, gave unto Adam and unto his seed that they should not die as to the temporal death until I, the Lord God, should send forth angels to declare unto them repentance and redemption."*

Acts 20:28 - *"The Holy Ghost hath made you overseers, to feed the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood."*

Romans 5:8, 9 - *"God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us. Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him."*

Ephesians 1:7 - *"In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins."*

1 Timothy 2:5, 6 - *"There is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus; who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time."*

Hebrews 9:12, 28 - *"Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us. . . . So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many."*

Hebrews 10:12 - *"But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God."*

Hebrews 13:12 - *"Wherefore Jesus also, that he might sanctify the people with his own blood, suffered without the gate."*

1 Peter 1:18, 19 - *"Ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, . . . but with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot."*

1 Peter 2:24 - *"Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed."*

1 John 1:7 - *"If we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin."*

1 John 2:2 - *"And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world."*

***Revelation 1:6** - *"Unto him who loved us, be glory; who washed us from our sins in his own blood" (5).*

Revelation 7:14 - *"These are they which came out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and made them white in the blood of the Lamb."*

†Genesis 3:2, 3; †6:56, 62, 63, 65; †7:52, 54, 62; Luke 24:45; John 3:14, 15; 12: 32; *Romans 3:24, 25; 1 Corinthians 1:18; 15:3; Ephesians 2:13; Colossians 1:14; *Revelation 12:11.

Alma 5:23 - *"The Son of God suffereth according to the flesh, that he might take upon him the sins of his people, that he might blot out their transgressions, according to the power of his deliverance."*

Jacob 3:16 - *"Be reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ, his only begotten Son."*

2 Nephi 6:15, 16 - *"It must needs be an infinite atonement; save it should be an infinite atonement, this corruption could not put on incorruption."*

2 Nephi 1:73 - 78, 116; 6:44 - 47, 54; Jacob 3:18; Mosiah 1:107, 115, 116; 2:10; 8:5; Alma 19:97.

D&C 17:5 - *"Wherefore the almighty God gave his only begotten Son, . . . he suffered temptations, but gave no heed unto them; he was crucified, died, and rose again the third day."*

MAN RECONCILED BY CHRIST

Romans 3:25 - *“Whom God has set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God.”*

Romans 5:10 - *“For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son; much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.”*

***2 Corinthians 5:18 - 20** - *“And receiveth all the things of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation: To wit, that God is in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word or reconciliation. Now then we are ambassadors for Christ, as though God did beseech you by us; we pray you in Christ’s stead, be ye reconciled to God.”*

***Ephesians 2:13, 14, 16** - *“Ye who sometimes were far off are made nigh by the blood of Christ . . . who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us; . . . that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby.”*

Colossians 1:19 - 22 - *“For it pleased the Father that in him should all fullness dwell; and having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; by him, I say, whether they be things in earth, or things in heaven. And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in your mind by wicked works, yet now hath he reconciled, in the body of his flesh through death, to present you holy and unblamable and unreprouvable in his sight.”*

Hebrews 2:17 - *“Wherefore in all things it behooved him to be made like unto his brethren, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God, to make reconciliation for the sins of the people.”*

Exodus 30:10 - 16; Lev. 16:2 - 27; 23 27, 28; 25:9; Matthew 20:28; Ephesians 1:7; I Thessalonians 5:9, 10; Titus 2:14; Hebrews 1:3; 9:22 - 26; 10:10, 19; 13:12; 1 Peter 1:11 - 20; 2:24; 3:8; John 1:7; Revelation 5:9.

D&C 74:3 - *“Little children are holy, being sanctified through the atonement of Jesus Christ.”*

Jacob 3:16 - *“Wherefore, beloved brethren, be reconciled unto him, through the atonement of Christ, his only begotten Son.”*

Mosiah 2:11; 9:29; Alma 9:69; 13:13, 46; 16:207 - 214; 19:97; Moroni 4:72.

VICARIOUSNESS

John 10:11 - *“I am the good shepherd; the good shepherd giveth his life for his sheep.”*

John 10:15 - *“As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father; and I lay down my life for the sheep.”*

John 15:13 - *“Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends.”*

Romans 5:1 - *“Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.”*

Romans 5:8 - *“But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.”*

2 Corinthians 5:18 - *“And receiveth all the things of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation.”*

2 Corinthians 5:21 - *“For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.”*

1 John 3:16 - *“Hereby perceive we the love of Christ, because he laid down his life for us; and we ought to lay down our lives for the brethren.”*

SACRIFICE OF CHRIST

Hebrews 10:5 - 7, 14 - *"Sacrifice and offering thou wouldest not, but a body hast thou prepared me; in burnt offerings and sacrifices for sin thou hast had no pleasure. Then said I, Lo, I come (in the volume of the book it is written of me) to do thy will, O God. . . For by one offering he hath perfected forever them that are sanctified."*

Psalms 40:6, 8; 1 Corinthians 5:7; Ephesians 5:2; *Hebrews 7:26; 8; 9:24 - 28; 11:4; 5:7.

JESUS THE MEDIATOR

1 Timothy 2:5 - *"For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus."*

Hebrews 7:24 - *"Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them" (25).*

***Hebrews 9:12 - 15; D&C 74:3; 76:5.**

D&C 104: 9 - *"The power and authority of the higher, or Melchisedec, priesthood, . . . enjoy the communion and presence of God the Father, and Jesus the Mediator of the new covenant."*

2 Nephi 6:81 - *"Behold, the way for man is narrow, but it lieth in a straight course before him, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel: and he employeth no servant there."*

AUTHORITY OF CHRIST

***Matthew 7:37** - *"For he taught them as one having authority from God, and not as having authority from the scribes" (29).*

***Matthew 17:4** - *"While he yet spake, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them; and, behold, a voice out of the cloud, which said, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; hear ye him" (5).*

***Matthew 28:17 - 19** - *"And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth. Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost; teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you; and, lo, I am with you always, unto the end of the world. Amen." (18 - 20).*

John 5:26, 27 - *"For as the Father hath life in himself, so hath he given to the Son to have life in himself; and hath given him authority to execute judgment also, because he is the Son of Man."*

†Genesis 7:54, 59; †14:27; *Matthew 3:46; Mark 1:20; Luke 4:36; John 8:42; 14:10; 17:5; Acts 19:15; Hebrews 4:14; 15; 5:5 - 10;

D&C 17:2 1.

THE NATURE OF CONSCIENCE

AN INSUFFICIENT GUIDE

Acts 23:1 - *"And Paul, earnestly beholding the council, said, Men and brethren, I have lived in all good conscience before God until this day."*

Acts 26:9 - *"I verily thought with myself, that I ought to do many things contrary to the name of Jesus of Nazareth."*

1 Timothy 1:19 - *"Holding faith, and a good conscience which some having put away, concerning faith have made shipwreck."*

Hebrews 9:14 - *"How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?"*

Hebrews 10:22 - *"Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water."*

***Matthew 15:3, 8, 13; *Mark 7:7, 9; Acts 22:3, 4; Romans 9:1; 10 2, 18; Galatians 1:13, 23; Philemon 3:6; 1 Timothy 1:13; 1 Peter 3:16, 21.**

PROMPTINGS OF CONSCIENCE

Matthew 27: 3 - *"Judas . . . repented himself."*

***John 8:9** - *"And they which heard it, being convicted by their own conscience, went out one by one, beginning at the eldest, even unto the last; and Jesus was left alone, and the woman standing in the midst of the temple."*

Romans 2:15 - *"Which show the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the meanwhile accusing or else excusing one another."*

Romans 14:22 - *"Happy is he that condemneth not himself in that thing which he alloweth."*

Alma 19:100 - *"A just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man."*

Romans 13:5; 1 Corinthians 10:25, 28, 29; 2 Corinthians 4:2; 5:11; 1 Peter 2:19

EVIL CONSCIENCE

1 Corinthians 8:12 - *"But when ye sin so against the brethren, and wound their weak conscience, ye sin against Christ."*

***1 Timothy 4:2** - *"Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared as with a hot iron."*

***Titus 1:15** - *"Unbelieving, nothing is pure; but even their mind and conscience is defiled."*

1 Corinthians 8:7; Hebrews 10:22.

GOOD CONSCIENCE

Hebrews 13:18 - *"Pray for us; for we trust we have a good conscience, in all things willing to live honestly."*

Acts 23:1; 24:16; 26:9; Romans 9:1; 2 Corinthians 1:12; 1 Timothy 1:5; 3: 9.

Mosiah 1:47 - *"I can answer a clear conscience before God this day."*

THE BODY OF MAN

TEMPLE OF GOD

***Romans 8:13** - *"For if ye live after the flesh, unto sin, ye shall die; but if ye through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, ye shall live unto Christ."*

1 Corinthians 3:16, 17 - *"Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you? If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy; for the temple of God is holy, which temple ye are."*

2 Corinthians 6:16 - *"And what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? for ye are the temple of the living God."*

Ephesians 2:21 - *"In whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto an holy temple in the Lord."*

Revelation 3:12 - *"Him that overcometh will I make a pillar in the temple of my God, and he shall go no more out."*

2 Nephi 6:7 - *"In our bodies we shall see God."*

SUBJECTION OF THE BODY

Romans 14:21 - *"It is good neither to eat flesh, nor to drink wine, nor anything whereby thy brother stumbleth, or is offended, or is made weak."*

1 Corinthians 9:25 - *"And every man that striveth for the mastery is temperate in all things."*

1 Corinthians 9:27 - *"I keep under my body, and bring it into subjection; lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway."*

1 Peter 2:11 - *"Dearly beloved, I beseech you as strangers and pilgrims, abstain from fleshly lusts, which war against the soul."*

***Romans 13:14.**

BODY KEPT PURE

Romans 12:1 - *"I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service."*

1 Thessalonians 5:23 - *"And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ."*

Romans 6:12; *1 Corinthians 6:18 - 20; 2 Corinthians 5:16; Galatians 5:16; James 3:17.

AVOID FLESHLY LUSTS

1 Peter 2:11 - *"Dearly beloved, I beseech you as strangers and pilgrims, abstain from fleshly lusts, which war against the soul."*

***1 John 2:16, 17** - *"For all in the world that is of the lusts of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world. And the world passeth away, and the lust thereof; but he that doeth the will of God abideth for ever."*

***Romans 7:21 - 27; 1 Timothy 6:9; 2 Timothy 2:22.**

TEMPLE - BODY OF JESUS

John 2:19 - 21 - *"Jesus answered and said unto them, Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up."*

***Matthew 26:60** - *"At the last came two false witnesses, and said, This man said, I am able to destroy the temple of God, and to build it in three days" (60, 61).*

***Matthew 27:44** - *"And they that passed by reviled him, wagging their heads, and saying, Thou that destroyest the temple, and buildest it again in three days, save thyself. If thou be the Son of God come down from the cross" (39, 40).*

***Mark 14:62; 15:34.**

WOMEN

THE WIFE

Jacob 2:36 - *"There shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none."*

Jacob 2:46 - *"Ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before them; and the sobbings of their hearts ascend up to God against you."*

Alma 20:70 - *"The sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children."*

CHASTITY

Jacob 2:36 - *"The Lord God delighteth in the chastity of women."*

IN MARRIAGE

1 Corinthians 7:11, 15 - *"But if she depart, let her remain unmarried, of be reconciled to her husband; but let not the husband put away his wife. . . . But if the unbelieving depart, let him depart. A brother or a sister is not under bondage in such cases."*

CHILDREN ARE SINLESS

†Genesis 6:56 - *"Hence came the saying abroad among the people, that the Son of God hath atoned for original guilt, wherein the sins of the parents can not be answered upon the heads of the children, for they are whole from the foundation of the world."*

***Matthew 18:10, 11** - *"Take heed that ye despise not one of these little ones; for I say unto you, that in heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father who is in heaven. For the Son of Man is come to save that which was lost, and to call sinners to repentance; but these little ones have no need of repentance, and I will save them."*

***Matthew 19:13, 14** - *"Then were there brought unto him little children, that he should put his hands on them and pray. And the disciples rebuked them, saying, There is no need, for Jesus hath said, Such shall be saved. But Jesus said, Suffer little children to come unto me, and forbid them not, for of such is the kingdom of heaven."*

Mosiah 1:122 - *"None shall be found blameless before God except it be little children, only through repentance and faith."*

Moroni 8:9, 10, 12, 13, 20 - *"Little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them. . . . It is a solemn mockery before God that ye should baptize little children. . . . Baptism is unto repentance, to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission of sins; but little children are alive in Christ, even from the foundation of the world. . . . Little children can not repent; wherefore it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them."*

Mosiah 8:60 - *"And little children also have eternal life."*

D. and C 28:13 - *"Little children are redeemed from the foundation of the world, through mine Only Begotten; wherefore they can not sin, for power is not given unto Satan to tempt little children, until they begin to become accountable before me."*

D&C 90:6 - *"Every spirit of man was innocent in the beginning, and God having redeemed man from the fall, men became again in their infant state, innocent before God."*

ARE HOLY

D&C 74:3 - *" . . . little children are holy, being sanctified through the atonement of Jesus Christ; and this is what the scriptures mean."*

D&C 45:10 - *"Their children shall grow up without sin unto salvation, for the Lord shall be in their midst."*

Moroni 8:25 - *"For behold that all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are without the law."*

Mosiah 1:114, 115 - *"And even if it were possible that little children could sin, they could not be saved; but I say unto you, they are blessed; for behold as in Adam, or by nature they fall, even so the blood of Christ atoneth for their sins."*

Moroni 8:5 - 25.

AGE OF ACCOUNTABILITY

†**Genesis 17:11** - *“That thou mayest know for ever that children are not accountable before me until they are eight years old.”*

†**Genesis 6:56 - 61.**

D&C 16:6 - *“All men must repent and be baptized, and not only men, but women; and children who have arrived to the years of accountability.”*

D&C 17:20 - *“No one can be received into the church of Christ unless he has arrived unto the years of accountability before God, and is capable of repentance.”*

D&C 28:13 - *“For power is not given unto Satan to tempt little children, until they begin to become accountable before me.”*

D&C 68:4 - *“And their children shall be baptized for the remission of their sins when eight years old, and receive the laying on of the hands.”*

Moroni 8:10, 11 - *“It is solemn mockery before God, that ye should baptize little children. Behold I say unto you, that this thing shall ye teach, repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of committing sin.”*

TAUGHT BY PARENTS AND THE CHURCH

The early Christians were admonished to teach their children the doctrines of the church, as a means of knowing Christ. Neander's history quotes Tertullian as saying:

“Let them come, while they are growing up; let them come, while they are learning, while they are being taught whither it is they come; let them become Christians, after they have had an opportunity of knowing Christ.” - Section 3, page 199.

Mosheim's history shows that children were diligently taught the faith:

“There can be no doubt, but that the children of Christians were carefully trained up from their infancy, and were early put to reading the sacred books and learning the principles of religion. For this purpose schools were erected everywhere from the beginning.” Century 1, Part 2, chapter 3, section 7.

Cave's *Primitive Christianity* quotes the views of Origen (A. D. 185 - 254) on teaching children:

“That we desire that all man may be trained up in the Word of God, and that servants and children may have such instructions given them, as are suitable and convenient to them, the ministers of our religion professing themselves to be debtors both to the Greeks and barbarians, both to the wise and to the unwise, that, as much as may be, they may outgrow their ignorance, and attain to the best kind of wisdom . . . we are most willing and ready to instruct our youth, being well assured we shall find them favorable judges; but if they be enemies to goodness and virtue, and opposers of sound wholesome doctrine, then, if we hold our peace, no fault can be justly laid upon us.” Volume 1, chapter 3, pages 26, 27, 28 (1839 edition).

Hagenbach's *History of Doctrines* summarizes the points made against infant baptism by Tertullian (Latin terms used are omitted below) including need of instruction:

“1. The importance of baptism - not even earthly goods are intrusted to those under age; 2. The consequent responsibility of the sponsors; 3. The innocence of children; . . . 4. The necessity of being previously instructed in religion; . . . 5. The great responsibility which the Subject of baptism

takes upon him.” - Volume 1, First Period, Fifth Division, Section 72, page 201 (Smith revision, 1861).

In the *Epistles of the Apostolic Fathers*, previously mentioned edition 1834 Barnabas exhorts: “Thou shalt not destroy thy conceptions before they are brought forth; nor kill them after they are born Thou shalt not withdraw thy hand from thy son, or from thy daughter; but shalt teach them from their youth the fear of the Lord.” - “General Epistle of Barnabas,” chapter 14, verses 11, 12. The above is conclusive evidence that prior instruction of candidates was observed.

YOUTH

Job 32:6 - 8 - *“And Elihu the son of Barachel the Buzite answered and said, I am young, and ye are very old; wherefore I was afraid, and durst not show you mine opinion. I said, Days should speak, and multitude of years should teach wisdom. But there is a spirit in man, and the inspiration of the Almighty giveth them understanding.”*

Psalms 71:5, 17 - *“For thou art my hope, O Lord God; thou art my trust from my youth . . . O God, thou hast taught me from my youth; and hitherto have I declared thy wondrous works.”*

Psalms 119:9 - *“Wherewithal shall a man cleanse his way? be taking heed thereto according to thy word.”*

Proverbs 7:6, 7 - *“I looked through my casement, and beheld among the simple ones, I discerned among the youths a young man void of understanding.”*

Proverbs 20:29 - *“The glory of young men is their strength.”*

Ecclesiastes 12:1 - *“Remember now thy Creator in the days of thy youth, while the evil days come not, nor the years draw nigh, when thou shalt say, I have no pleasure in them.”*

Isaiah 54:13 - *“And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children.”*

Joel 2:28 - *“And it shall come to pass afterward that I will pour out my Spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions.”*

Mal. 2:15 - *“Wherefore one? That he might seek a godly seed. Therefore take heed to your spirit, and let none deal treacherously against the wife of his youth.”*

1 Timothy 4:12 - *“Let no man despise thy youth; but be thou an example of the believers, in word, in conversation, in charity, in spirit, in faith, in purity.”*

Titus 2:4 - 6 - *“Teach the young women to be sober, to love their husbands, to love their children, . . . Young men likewise exhort to be sober minded.”*

***1 John 2:14, 15** - *“I have written unto you, young men, because ye are strong, and the word of God abideth in you, and ye have overcome the wicked one. Love not the world, neither the things that are of the world.”*

D&C 119: 6 - *“Let the young men and the maidens cultivate the gifts of music and of song.”*

Alma 24:76, 77 - *“And they were all young men and they were exceeding valiant for courage, and also for strength and activity; but behold, this was not all: they were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted; yea, they were men of truth and soberness, for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God, and to walk uprightly before him.”*

Alma 24:70 - 78 (Helaman’s little sons).

Alma 26:66, 95, 100 - 102 (Not one was killed though stood firm in the front of the battle).

Chapter Four

THE HEBREW PEOPLE

ORIGIN AND HISTORY

Genesis 12:1, 2 - *“Now, the Lord had said unto Abram, Get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father’s house, unto a land that I will show thee; and I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and make thy name great.”*

Genesis 17:13 - *“And I will give unto thee and thy seed after thee, a land wherein thou art a stranger; all the land of Canaan, for an everlasting possession; and I will be their God” (8).*

Genesis 26:31, 34 - *“Sojourn in this land, and I will be with thee, and will bless thee; for unto thee, and unto thy seed, I will give all these countries, and I will perform the oath which I swore unto Abraham thy father, and I will make thy seed to multiply as the stars of heaven. . . . and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed.”*

Genesis 28:3 - *“And God Almighty bless thee, and make thee fruitful, and multiply thee, that thou mayest be a multitude of people.”*

***Genesis 13:13 - 15 (14 - 17).**

WHY CHOSEN

Genesis 18:17, 18 - *“Abraham shall surely become a great and mighty nation, and all the nations of the earth shall be blessed in him? For I know him, that he will command his children and his household after him.” (18, 19).*

Deuteronomy 7:8 - *“Because he would keep the oath which he had sworn unto your fathers, hath the Lord brought you out with a mighty hand, and redeemed you out of the house of bond men, from the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt.”*

Deuteronomy 10:15 - *“Only the Lord had a delight in thy fathers to love them, and he chose their seed after them, even you above all people, as it is this day.”*

Deuteronomy 32:8, 9 - *“When the Most High divided to the nations their inheritance, when he separated the sons of Adam, he set the bounds of the people according to the number of the children of Israel. For the Lord’s portion is his people; Jacob is the lot of his inheritance.”*

BLESSINGS OF ISRAEL AND JUDAH TOGETHER

Psalms 114:1, 2 - *“When Israel went out of Egypt, the house of Jacob from a people of a strange language; Judah was his sanctuary, and Israel his dominion.”*

Judah. 23:6 - *“In his days Judah shall be saved, and Israel shall dwell safely; and this is his name whereby he shall be called, The Lord Our Righteousness.”*

Judah. 33:7, 8 - *“And I will cause the captivity of Judah and the captivity of Israel to return, and will build them, as at the first. And I will cleanse them from all their iniquity whereby they have sinned against me; and I will pardon all their iniquities.”*

Jeremiah 51:5 - *“For Israel hath not been forsaken, nor Judah of his God, of the Lord of hosts.”*

Ezekiel 37:19, 22 - *“Say unto them, Thus saith the Lord God; Behold I will take the stick of Joseph, which is in the hand of Ephraim and the tribes of Israel his fellows, and will put them with him, even with the stick of Judah, and make them one stick, and they shall be one in mine hand. . . . And I will make them one nation in the land upon the mountains of Israel; and one king shall be king to them all; and they shall be no more two nations, neither shall they be divided into two kingdoms any more at all.”*

THE BLESSINGS OF JUDAH

JACOB'S BLESSING

Genesis 49:8, 10 - *"Judah, thou art he whom thy brethren shall praise: thy hand shall be in the neck of thine enemies; thy father's children shall bow down before thee. . . . The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be."*

MOSES' BLESSING

Deuteronomy 33:7 - *"Hear, Lord, the voice of Judah, and bring him unto his people: let his hands be sufficient for him; and be thou an help to him from his enemies."*

A BLESSING THROUGH DAVID

1 Kings 8:19 - *"Yet the Lord would not destroy Judah for David his servant's sake, as he promised him to give him always a light, and to his children."*

TO INHERIT THE LAND

Isaiah 65:9 - *"And I will bring forth a seed out of Jacob, and out of Judah an inheritor of my mountains; and mine elect shall inherit it, and my servants shall dwell there."*

EPHRAIM AND ISRAEL COMPARED WITH JUDAH

Hosea 11:12 - *"Ephraim compasseth me about with lies, and the house of Israel with deceit; but Judah yet ruleth with God, and is faithful with the saints."*

PUNISHMENT OF THOSE WHO INJURED JUDAH

Joel 3:19, 20 - *"Egypt shall be a desolation, and Edom shall be a desolate wilderness, for the violence against the children of Judah, because they have shed innocent blood in their land. But Judah shall dwell forever, and Jerusalem from generation to generation."*

JUDAH AND JERUSALEM TO ENDURE

Zechariah 2:12 - *"And the Lord shall inherit Judah his portion in the holy land, and shall choose Jerusalem again."*

THE BLESSINGS OF ISRAEL

Genesis 35:10, 11 - *"And God said unto him . . . thy name shall not be called any more Jacob, but Israel shall be thy name . . . be fruitful and multiply; a nation and a company of nations shall be of thee, and kings shall come of thy loins."*

Numbers 24:17 - *"There shall come a Star out of Jacob, and a Sceptre shall rise out of Israel."*

Isaiah 49:1, 3, 6, 19, 22, 23 - *"The Lord hath called me and said unto me, Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified."*

"It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the ends of the earth."

"Thy waste and thy desolate places and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants, and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away."

“Thus saith the Lord God, Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people: and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

“And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers: they shall bow down to thee with their face toward the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.”

***Romans 9:3** - *“My kinsmen according to the flesh; who are Israelites; to whom are the adoption, and the glory, and the covenants, and the giving of the law, and the service of God, and the promises.”*

Romans 11:26, 27 - *“All Israel shall be saved: as it is written, There shall come out of Sion the Deliverer, and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob; for this is my covenant unto them, when I shall take away their sins.”*

THE GENERAL COVENANTS WITH ABRAHAM, MOSES, AND ISRAEL

***Genesis 15:21** - *“The Lord made a covenant with Abram saying, Unto thy seed have I given this land, from the river of Egypt unto the great river Euphrates” (18).*

***Genesis 17:2, 15** - *“I will make my covenant between me and thee, and I will multiply thee exceedingly. . . . This shall be my covenant, which ye shall keep between me and thee and thy seed after thee; every man child among you shall be circumcised” (2, 10).*

Exodus 2:24 - *“God heard their groaning, and God remembered his covenant with Abram, with Isaac, and with Jacob.”*

***Exodus 6:4, 8** - *“Yea, and I have also established my covenant with them, which I made with them, to give them the land of Canaan, the land of their pilgrimage, wherein they were strangers. . . . And I will bring you in unto the land, concerning the which I did swear to give it to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob; and I will give it you for a heritage; I the Lord will do it.”*

Exodus 19:6 - *“And ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel.”*

Exodus 24:7 - *“And he took the book of the covenant, and read in the audience of the people: and they said, All that the Lord hath said will we do, and be obedient.”*

Exodus 34:27, 28 - *“And the Lord said unto Moses, Write thou these words: for after the tenor of these words I have made a covenant with thee and with Israel. . . . And he wrote upon the tables the words of the covenant, the ten commandments.”*

Deuteronomy 4:13, 14 - *“And he declared unto you his covenant, which he commanded you to perform, even ten commandments; and he wrote them upon two tables of stone. And the Lord commanded me at that time to teach you statutes and judgments, that ye might do them in the land whither ye go over to possess it.”*

Deuteronomy 5:2, 3 - *“The Lord our God made a covenant with us in Horeb. The Lord made not this covenant with our fathers, but with us, even us, who are all of us here alive this day.”*

Deuteronomy 9:11 - *“And it came to pass at the end of forty days and forty nights, that the Lord gave me the two tables of stone, even the tables of the covenant.”*

Deuteronomy 29:1 - *“These are the words of the covenant, which the Lord commanded Moses to make with the children of Israel in the land of Moab, besides the covenant which he made with them in Horeb.”*

BLESSINGS IN OBEDIENCE TO COVENANTS

Exodus 19:5, 6 - *“Now therefore, if ye will obey my voice indeed, and keep my covenant, then ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto me above all people; for all the earth is mine; and ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”*

Psalms 50:5 - *“Gather my saints together unto me; those that have made a covenant with me by sacrifice.”*

Acts 3:25 - *“Ye are the children of the prophets, and of the covenant which God made with our fathers, saying unto Abraham, And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.”*

Hebrews 13:20 - *“Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great Shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant.”*

1 Nephi 4:29 - *“Which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham, saying, In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.”*

D&C 83:6 - *“Therefore, all that my Father hath shall be given unto him; and this is according to the oath and covenant which belongeth to the priesthood. Therefore, all those who receive the priesthood receive this oath and covenant of my Father, which he can not break, neither can it be moved; but whoso breaketh this covenant, after he hath received it, and altogether turneth therefrom, shall not have forgiveness of sins in this world nor in the world to come.”*

†Genesis 5:35; †7:58; 17:8; 31:44; *Exodus 6:4; 24:8; Leviticus 26:15, 25; Acts 7:8; *Romans 9:4.

D&C 81:4; 49:2; 77:2; 85:40, 41; 98:5; 76:5; 95:1; 101:1.

Mosiah 3:6; 4:1.

MOSAIC COVENANT CONDITIONAL

Leviticus 26:15, 16, 19, 25, 33, 38, 40, 41, 42 - *“And if ye shall despise my statutes, . . . so that ye will not do all my commandments, but that ye break my covenant; I also will do this unto you; I will even appoint over you terror, consumption, and the burning ague. . . and I will make your heaven as iron, and your earth as brass; . . . I will send the pestilence among you; and ye shall be delivered into the hand of the enemy . . . and I will scatter you among the heathen, . . . and your land shall be desolate, and your cities waste. . . . And ye shall perish among the heathen, and the land of your enemies shall eat you up. . . . If they shall confess their iniquity. . . . and they then accept of the punishment of their iniquity; then will I remember my covenant with Jacob, and also my covenant with Isaac, and also my covenant with Abraham will I remember; and I will remember the land.”*

Deuteronomy 4:23, 25, 27 - *“Take heed unto yourselves, lest ye forget the covenant of the Lord your God. . . . and shall do evil in the sight of the Lord thy God, . . . And the Lord shall scatter you among the nations, and ye shall be left few in number among the heathen, whither the Lord shall lead you.”*

Deuteronomy 8:18 - *“But thou shalt remember the Lord thy God; for it is he that giveth thee power to get wealth, that he may establish his covenant which he sware unto thy fathers, as it is this day.”*

Deuteronomy 26:17, 18 - *“Thou hast avouched the Lord this day to be thy God, and to walk in his ways, and keep his statutes, and his commandments, and his judgments, and to hearken unto his voice; and the Lord hath avouched thee this day to be his peculiar people, as he hath promised thee, and that thou shouldest keep all his commandments.”*

Deuteronomy 28:9, 10 - *“The Lord shall establish thee a holy people unto himself, as he hath sworn unto thee, if thou shalt keep the commandments of the Lord thy God, and walk in his ways. And all people of the earth shall see that thou art called by the name of the Lord; and they shall be afraid of thee.”*

Deuteronomy 31:16, 17 - *“The Lord said unto Moses, Behold, thou shalt sleep with thy fathers; and this people will rise up, . . . and will forsake me, and break my covenant which I have made with*

them. . . and I will forsake them, and I will hide my face from them, and they shall be devoured, and many evils and troubles shall befall them.”

1 Chronicles 28:8 - *“Keep and seek for all the commandments of the Lord your God; that you may possess this good land.”*

Jeremiah 7:5 - 7 - *“For if ye thoroughly amend your ways and your doings; if ye thoroughly execute judgment between a man and his neighbour; if ye oppress not the stranger, the fatherless, and the widow, and shed not innocent blood in this place, neither walk after other gods to your hurt; then will I cause you to dwell in this place, in the land that I gave to your fathers, for ever and ever.”*

ISRAEL’S MEMORIAL OF DELIVERANCE

Deuteronomy 6:20 - 22 - *“And when thy son asketh thee in time to come, saying, What mean the testimonies, and the statutes, and the judgments, which the Lord our God hath commanded you? Then thou shalt say unto thy son, We were Pharaoh’s bond men in Egypt; and the Lord brought us out of Egypt with a mighty hand; and the Lord showed signs and wonders, great and sore, upon Egypt, upon Pharaoh, and upon all his household, before our eyes.”*

Joshua 4:2, 5, 6, 7 - *“Take you twelve men out of the people, out of every tribe a man. . . . And Joshua said unto them, Pass over before the ark of the Lord your God into the midst of Jordan, and take you up every man of you a stone upon his shoulder, according unto the number of the tribes of the children of Israel; that this may be a sign among you, that when your children ask their fathers in time to come, saying, What mean ye by these stones? Then ye shall answer them, That the waters of Jordan were cut off before the ark of the covenant of the Lord; when it passed over Jordan, the waters of Jordan were cut off; and these stones shall be for a memorial unto the children of Israel for ever.”*

WARNINGS AGAINST CANAANITE ABOMINATIONS

Leviticus 18:24, 25, 27 - *“Defile not ye yourselves in any of these things; for in all these the nations are defiled which I cast out before you; and the land is defiled; therefore I do visit the iniquity thereof upon it, and the land itself vomiteth out her inhabitants. . . . For all these abominations have the men of the land done, which were before you, and the land is defiled.”*

Deuteronomy 12:30, 31 - *“Take heed to thyself that thou be not snared by following them, after that they be destroyed from before thee; and that thou inquire not after their gods, saying, How did these nations serve their gods? even so will I do likewise. Thou shalt not do so unto the Lord thy God; for every abomination to the Lord which he hateth have they done unto their gods; for even their sons and their daughters they have burnt in the fire to their gods.”*

Deuteronomy 18:14 - *“These nations . . . hearkened unto . . . diviners; but as for thee, the Lord thy God hath not suffered thee so to do.”*

Deuteronomy 29:17 - *“Ye have seen their abominations, and their idols.”*

THE FIVE SPECIAL COVENANTS WITH ISRAEL

1. THE COVENANT WITH ABRAHAM THE GREATNESS OF THE PEOPLE

***Genesis 12:1 - 2** - *“Now, the Lord had said unto Abram, Get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father’s house, unto a land that I will show thee; And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and make thy name great; and thou shalt be a blessing: And I will*

bless them that bless thee, and curse them that curse thee; and in thee shall the families of the earth be blessed."

THE GIFT OF THE LAND

†Genesis 13:12 - 15 - *"And the Lord said unto Abram, after that Lot was separated from him, Lift up now thine eyes, and look from the place where thou art, northward, and southward, and eastward, and westward; And remember the covenant which I make with thee; for it shall be an everlasting covenant; and thou shalt remember the days of Enoch thy father; For all the land which thou seest, will I give thee, and to thy seed for ever; and I will make thy seed as the dust of the earth; so that if a man can number the dust of the earth, thy seed shall also be numbered. Arise, walk through the land in the length of it, and in the breadth of it, for I will give it unto thee."*

THE PROMISE OF AN HEIR

†Genesis 15:6 - *"He that shall come forth out of thine own bowels shall be thine heir."*

A NEW NAME, THE FATHER OF NATIONS

†Genesis 17: 8, 9 - *"I will make my covenant with thee, and thou shalt be a father of many nations. And this covenant I make that thy children may be known among all nations. Neither shall thy name any more be Abram, but thy name shall be called Abraham."*

2. THE COVENANT WITH MOSES

THE WILL OF GOD

Exodus 20:1 - 26 - *The Ten Commandments, the foundation of the law, are given in verses 1 - 17, with additional requirements in the remaining verses. The material is too long to quote here and may be read directly in the Bible.*

LAWS AND JUDGMENTS

Exodus 21; 22; 23.

ORDINANCES AND WORSHIP

Exodus 24:1 - 18 - *Details of sacrifices, the tabernacle, and rules of worship.*

3. THE COVENANT OF PALESTINE

A REMINDER TO A NATION DISPERSED

Deuteronomy 30:1 - *"And it shall come to pass, when all these things are come upon thee ... thou shalt call them to mind among all the nations, whither the Lord thy God hath driven thee."*

FUTURE REPENTANCE

Verse 2 - *"And shalt return unto the Lord thy God, and shalt obey his voice."*

RENEWAL OF GOD'S MERCY

Verse 3 - *"Then the Lord thy God will . . . have compassion upon thee, and will return and gather thee."*

RESTORATION OF THE LAND

Verse 5 - *"The Lord thy God will bring thee into the land which thy fathers possessed, and thou shalt possess it."*

NATIONAL CONVERSION

Verse 6 - *"The Lord thy God will circumcise thine heart . . . to love the Lord thy God."*

JUDGMENT OF THE OPPRESSORS

Verse 7 - *"The Lord thy God will put all these curses upon thine enemies."*

NATIONAL PROSPERITY

Verse 9 - *"The Lord thy God will make thee plenteous in every work of thine hand, in the fruit of thy body, and in the fruit of thy cattle, and in the fruit of thy land, for good."*

4. THE COVENANT WITH DAVID

2 Samuel 7:10, 16 - *"I will appoint a place for my people Israel . . . that they may dwell in a place of their own, and move no more. . . . And thine house and thy kingdom shall be established for ever before thee; thy throne shall be established forever."*

5. THE NEW COVENANT

Jeremiah 31:31 - 34 - *"I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah; Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers. . . . But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the Lord, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people. And they shall teach no more every man his neighbor, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord; for they shall all know me, from the least of them unto the greatest of them, saith the Lord; for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more."*

Hebrews 8:6, 7 - *"He is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises. For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second."*

ISRAEL CHOSEN AND GIVEN THE PRIESTHOOD AND ORACLES

***Genesis 12:2** - *"And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee. . . . and in thee shall the families of the earth be blessed"* (2, 3).

***Genesis 17:8, 9** - *"But as for thee, behold, I will make my covenant with thee, and thou shalt be a father of many nations. And this covenant I make, that thy children may be known among all nations. Neither shall thy name any more be called Abram, but thy name shall be called Abraham; for, a father of many nations have I made thee"* (5 - 7).

Deuteronomy 7:6 - *"For thou art a holy people unto the Lord thy God; the Lord thy God hath chosen thee to be a special people unto himself, above all people that are upon the face of the earth."*

Acts 7:38 - *"This is he that was in the church in the wilderness with the angel which spake to him in the mount Sinai, and with our fathers; who received the lively oracles to give unto us."*

***Romans 3:2** - *"He who is a Jew from the heart, I say hath much every way; chiefly because that unto them were committed the oracles of God."*

Genesis 26:4; Isaiah 44:1 - 8; *John 4:24; Romans 1:16; Galatians 3:8, 9, 16, 18, 29.

THE BREAKING OF THE COVENANTS MOSAIC COVENANT BROKEN

Joshua 7:11 - *"Israel hath sinned, and they have also transgressed my covenant which I commanded them."*

Judges 2:20, 21 - *"And the anger of the Lord was hot against Israel; and he said, Because that this people hath transgressed my covenant which I commanded their fathers, and have not hearkened unto my voice; I also will not henceforth drive out any from before them of the nations which Joshua left when he died."*

1 Kings 19:10 - *"The children of Israel have forsaken thy covenant, thrown down thine altars, and slain thy prophets with the sword."*

2 Kings 17:15, 19, 20 - *"And they rejected his statutes, and his covenant that he made with their fathers, and his testimonies which he testified against them; . . . Also Judah kept not the commandments of the Lord their God. . . . And the Lord rejected all the seed of Israel, and afflicted them, and delivered them into the hand of spoilers, until he had cast them out of his sight."*

Hosea 8:1 - *"He shall come as an eagle against the house of the Lord, because they have transgressed my covenant, and trespassed against my law."*

Zechariah 11:10 - *"And I took my staff, even Beauty, and cut it asunder, that I might break my covenant which I had made with all the people."*

1 Kings 19:14; 2 Kings 18:12; Isaiah 24:5; 33:8; Jeremiah 22:9; 31:32; Ezekiel 16:59; 44:7; Hebrews 8:13.

D&C 20:1 - *"Behold, I say unto you, that all old covenants have I caused to be done away in this thing, and this is a new and an everlasting covenant."*

THE OLD COVENANT ABOLISHED AND FAULTY

2 Corinthians 3:7, 8, 11, 13 - *"But if the ministration of death, written and engraven in stones, was glorious. . . how shall not the ministration of the spirit be rather glorious? For if that which is done away was glorious, much more that which remaineth is glorious. . . And not as Moses, which put a veil over his face, that the children of Israel could not steadfastly look to the end of that which is abolished."*

***Galatians 3:24, 25** - *"The law was our schoolmaster until Christ, that we might be justified by faith. But after that faith is come, we are no longer under a schoolmaster."*

Galatians 4:22, 24, 30, 31 - *"For it is written, that Abraham had two sons, the one by a bondmaid, the other by a freewoman. . . Which things are an allegory: for these are the two covenants; the one from the mount Sinai, which gendereth to bondage, which is Agar. . . Nevertheless what saith the scripture? Cast out the bondwoman and her son: for the son of the bondwoman shall not be heir with the son of the freewoman. So then, brethren, we are not children of the bondwoman, but of the free."*

Ephesians 2:13 - 15 - *"But now in Christ Jesus ye who sometimes were far off are made nigh by the blood of Christ. For he is our peace, who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us; having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances; for to make in himself of twain one new man, so making peace."*

Hebrews 8:6 - 9, 13 - *"He is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises. For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second. For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will*

make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah; not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not, saith the Lord. . . . In that he saith, A new covenant, he hath made the first old. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old is ready to vanish away."

Jeremiah 31:31, 32; Zechariah 11:10; Colossians 2:14; Hebrews 6:12; 10:1, 9, 2 Corinthians 3:6 - 11; *Galatians 3; 4:21 - 31; 5:1 - 6; Ephesians 2:15; *Hebrews 8:1 - 11.

MOSAIC SABBATH COVENANT FOR ISRAEL ONLY

Exodus 34:27, 28 - *"After the tenor of these words I have made a covenant with thee and with Israel. . . . And he wrote upon the tables the words of the covenant, the ten commandments."*

Deuteronomy 5:3, 15 - *"The Lord made not this covenant with our fathers, but with us, even us, who are all of us here alive this day. . . . And remember that thou wast a servant in the land of Egypt, and that the Lord thy God brought thee out thence through a mighty hand and by a stretched - out arm; therefore the Lord thy God commanded thee to keep the sabbath day."*

LAW OF MOSES LIMITED INSUFFICIENT TO SAVE MAN

***John 1:17, 18** - *"The law was given through Moses, but life and truth came through Jesus Christ. For the law, was after a carnal commandment, to the administration of death; but the gospel was after the power of an endless life."*

Acts 13:39 - *"And by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses."*

***Acts 15:5, 24** - *"There rose up certain of the sect of the Pharisees which believed, saying, That it was needful to circumcise them and to command them to keep the law of Moses. . . . Forasmuch as we have heard, that certain men which went out from us have troubled you with words, subverting your souls, saying, Ye must be circumcised, and keep the law; to whom we gave no such commandment."*

***Romans 3:20, 21** - *"For by the law is the knowledge of sin; therefore by the deeds of the law shall no flesh be justified in his sight. But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets."*

***Romans 6:13 - 15** - *"Yield yourselves unto God, . . . For in so doing sin shall not have dominion over you; for ye are not under the law, but under grace. What then? shall we sin, because we are not under the law, but under grace? God forbid."*

***Romans 7:6** - *"But now we are delivered from the law wherein we were held, being dead to the law, that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not in the oldness of the letter."*

2 Corinthians 3:7, 8 - *"But if the ministration of death, written and engraven in stones, was glorious, so that the children of Israel could not steadfastly behold the face of Moses for the glory of his countenance; which glory was to be done away; how shall not the ministration of the Spirit be rather glorious? For if the ministration of condemnation be glory, much more doth the ministration of righteousness exceed in glory" (7 - 9).*

Galatians 2:16 - *"Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified."*

***Galatians 3:11 - 13, 17, 18, 24, 25** - *“But that no man is justified by the law in the sight of God, it is evident; for, The just shall live by faith. And the law is not of faith; but, The man that doeth them shall live in them. Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us; for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree. . . . And this I say, that the covenant that was confirmed before of God in Christ, the law, which was four hundred and thirty years after, cannot disannul, that it should make the promise of none effect. For if the inheritance is of the law, then it is no more of promise; but God gave it to Abraham by promise. . . . Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster until Christ, that we might be justified by faith. But after that faith is come, we are no longer under a schoolmaster.”*

***Hebrews 7:16, 18, 19** - *“Who is made, not after the law of a carnal commandment, but after the power of an endless life. . . . For there is verily a disannulling of the commandment going before, for the weakness and unprofitableness thereof. For the law was administered without an oath and made nothing perfect, but was only the bringing forth in of a better hope; by the which we draw nigh unto God.”*

Hebrews 8:6, 7 - *“He is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises. For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second.”*

***Hebrews 10:1** - *“For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices, which they offered continually, make the comers thereunto perfect.”*

Romans 8:1 - 4; Galatians 4:21 - 24, 28, 31.

Mosiah 8:6, 7 - *“It was expedient that there should be a law given to the children of Israel, yea, even a very strict law; for they were a stiff - necked people; quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember the Lord their God. Therefore there was a law given them, a law of performances, and of ordinances, a law that they were to observe strictly; from day to day, to keep them in remembrance of God, and their duty towards him.”*

Mosiah 8:90 - *“If ye teach the law of Moses, also teach that it is a shadow of those things which are to come.”*

2 Nephi 11:45 - 51; 3 Nephi 7:3 - 12; D&C 74:2, 3.

D&C 20:1 - *“All old covenants have I caused to be done away in this thing, and this is a new and an everlasting covenant; even that which was from the beginning. . . . for you can not enter in at the straight gate by the law of Moses.”*

THE LAW EXPLAINED

(Bible term “the law” usually refers to Mosaic Law. “Law of liberty” is Christ’s law.)

***Exodus 34:1, 2** - *“And the Lord said unto Moses, Hew thee two other tables of stone, like unto the first, and I will write upon them also, the words of the law, . . . but it shall not be according to the first, for I will take away the priesthood out of their midst; therefore my holy order, and the ordinances thereof, shall not go before them; for my presence shall not go up in their midst, lest I destroy them. But I will give unto them the law as at the first, but it shall be after the law of a carnal commandment.”*

Psalms 19:7, 8 - *“The law of the Lord is perfect, converting the soul; the testimony of the Lord is sure, making wise the simple. The statutes of the Lord are right, rejoicing the heart; the commandment of the Lord is pure, enlightening the eyes.”*

***Matthew 7:21** - *“Therefore, all things whatsoever ye would that men should do unto you, do ye even so to them; for this is the law and the prophets” (12).*

***Romans 7:12** - *"Nevertheless, I found the law to be holy, and the commandment to be holy, and just, and good."*

Romans 13:10 - *"Love worketh no ill to his neighbor; therefore love is the fulfilling of the law."*

James 1:25 - *"But whoso looketh into the perfect law of liberty, and continueth therein, he being not a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work, this man shall be blessed in his deed."*

1 John 3:4 - *"Whosoever committeth sin transgresseth also the law; for sin is the transgression of the law."*

Exodus 24:12; *Deuteronomy 10:1, 2; Isaiah 2:3; Matthew 22:35 - 39; Romans 7:8; *13:8 - 10; Galatians 2:16; *3:20; 5:14; 6:2; James 1:25.

2 Nephi 11:45 - 51 (Law of Moses fulfilled; words of Christ law).

Jacob 3:6 (Law of Moses pointed to Christ).

Jarom 1:24, 25 (By law of Moses they looked forward to Messiah).

Alma 14:74 - 76 (Kept law of Moses till fulfilled - a type of Christ's coming).

Alma 16:4 (Taught to keep law until fulfilled).

Alma 16:8 - 10, 12 (No law against a man's belief).

D&C 28:9 (All laws of God are spiritual).

D&C 42:16 (The Scriptures a law to govern the church).

D&C 85:9 (All kingdoms have a law given).

D&C 122:16 (If unable to agree on law, be patient).

D&C 125:14 (Branches and districts conducted by rules in the law; law to govern the church).

D&C 126:10 (Regard to law of tithing; application of law as stated by bishopric; three quorums provided for in the law).

LAW OF MOSES TEMPORARY - WAS ABOLISHED

***Matthew 5:19** - *"Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets; I am not come to destroy, but to fulfill" (17).*

†Luke 16:20 - *"And why teach ye the law, and deny that which is written; and condemn him whom the Father hath sent to fulfill the law, that ye might all be redeemed?"*

***John 1:17, 18** - *"For the law was given through Moses, but life and truth came through Jesus Christ. For the law was after a carnal commandment, to the administration of death; but the gospel was after the power of an endless life, through Jesus Christ, the Only Begotten Son; who is in the bosom of the Father."*

Galatians 2:16 - *"A man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not, by the works of the law; for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified."*

Ephesians 2:15 - *"Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances; for to make in himself of twain one new man, so making peace."*

Colossians 2:14 - *"Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross."*

Hebrews 8:6 - 9 - *"But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises. For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second. For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah; Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers"*

Acts 15:1 - 29; Galatians 2:3 - 9; Hebrews 7:12, 18 - 20; *9:8 - 24.

THE COVENANT OF CHRIST AN EVERLASTING COVENANT

†Genesis 9:22, 23 - *“And this is mine everlasting covenant, that when thy posterity shall embrace the truth, and look upward, then shall Zion look downward, and all the heavens shall shake with gladness, and the earth shall tremble with joy; and the general assembly of the church of the first-born shall come down out of heaven, and possess the earth, and shall have place until the end come. And this is mine everlasting covenant, which I made with thy father Enoch.”*

Jeremiah 31:33 - *“But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the Lord, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people.”*

D&C 76:5 - *“Christ the mediator of the new covenant.”*

†Genesis 50:25 - 28; Ezekiel 37:26; Zechariah 9:11; Malachi 3:1; Romans 11:27; Ephesians 2:12;

***Hebrews 9:1, 15 - 17; 10:16; 12:24; 13:20.**

A NEW COVENANT

Isaiah 42:6 - *“I the Lord have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles.”*

Isaiah 55:3 - 5 - *“I will make an everlasting covenant with you, even the sure mercies of David. Behold, I have given him for a witness to the people, a leader and commander to the people. Behold, thou shalt call a nation that thou knowest not, and nations that knew not thee shall run unto thee because of the Lord thy God.”*

Isaiah 59:20, 21 - *“And the Redeemer shall come to Zion, and unto them that turn from transgression in Jacob, saith the Lord. As for me, this is my covenant with them, saith the Lord; My Spirit that is upon thee, and my words which I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed’s seed, saith the Lord, from henceforth and forever.”*

Jeremiah 31:31, 32, 33 - *“Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah: not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day that I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; . . . but this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the Lord, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts.”*

Ezekiel 16:59, 60 - *“I will even deal with thee as thou hast done, which hast despised the oath in breaking the covenant. Nevertheless I will remember my covenant with thee in the days of thy youth, and I will establish unto thee an everlasting covenant.”*

Daniel 9:26, 27 - *“After threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: . . . And he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease.”*

Zechariah 9:10, 11 - *“And he shall speak peace unto the heathen: and his dominion shall be from sea even to sea, and from the river even to the ends of the earth. As for thee also, by the blood of thy covenant I have sent forth thy prisoners out of the pit wherein is no water.”*

Galatians 3:17 - *“And this I say, that the covenant, that was confirmed before of God in Christ, the law, which was four hundred and thirty years after, cannot disannul, that it should make the promise of none effect.”*

Hebrews 8:6, 7 - *“He is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises. For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second.”*

***Hebrews 10:1, 9** - *“For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices, which they offered continually year by year make the comers thereunto perfect. . . . Then said he, Lo, I come to do thy will, O God. He taketh away the first, that he may establish this second.”*

Hebrews 10:16, 19, 20, 22 - *“This is the covenant that I will make with them after those days, saith the Lord, I will put my laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them; . . . Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus, by a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh; . . . having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water.”*

Hebrews 12:24 - *“And to Jesus the mediator of the new covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaketh better things than that of Abel.”*

Hebrews 13:20 - *“Brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant.”*

†Genesis 5:45; Deuteronomy 18:18, 19; Isaiah 49:6; Ezekiel 16:62; 37:26; Malachi 3:1; Hebrews 9:13 - 15; 10:29.

SABBATH DAY FOR CHRISTIANS

ISRAEL’S SOJOURN IN EGYPT FORETOLD

***Genesis 15:17** - *“Thy seed shall be a stranger in a land which shall not be theirs, and shall serve strangers; and they shall be afflicted, and serve them four hundred years” (13).*

Genesis 46:2 - 4 - *“And God spake unto Israel in the visions of the night and said, Jacob, Jacob. And he said, Here am I. And he said. I am God, the God of thy father; fear not to go down into Egypt; for I will there make of thee a great nation. I will go down with thee unto Egypt; and I will also surely bring thee up again; and Joseph shall put his hand upon thine eyes.”*

Acts 7:6, 7.

CAPTIVITY OF THE TEN TRIBES

2 Kings 17:6, 18 - 20 - *“In the ninth year of Hoshea the king of Assyria took Samaria, and carried Israel away into Assyria, and placed them in Halah and in Habor by the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes. There was none left but the tribe of Judah only. Also Judah kept not the commandments of the Lord their God, but walked in the statutes of Israel which they made. And the Lord rejected all the seed of Israel, and afflicted them, and delivered them into the hand of spoilers.”*

2 Kings 18:11, 12 - *“And the king of Assyria did carry away Israel unto Assyria, and put them in Halah and in Habor by the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes; because they obeyed not the voice of the Lord their God, but transgressed his covenant, and all that Moses the servant of the Lord commanded.”*

CAPTIVITY OF JUDAH IN BABYLON

2 Kings 24:11, 13, 14 - *“Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came against the city He carried thence all the treasures of the house of the Lord, and the treasures of the king’s house And he carried away all Jerusalem, and all the princes, and all the mighty men of valour, even ten thousand captives, and all the craftsmen and smiths; none remained, save the poorest sort of the people of the land.”*

2 Kings 25:1 - 3, 9, 12 - *“And it came to pass in the ninth year of his reign, in the tenth month, in the tenth day of the month, that Nebuchanezzar king of Babylon came, he, and all his hosts, against Jerusalem, and pitched against it; and they built forts against it round about. And the city was besieged unto the eleventh year of king Zedekiah. And on the ninth day of the fourth month the famine prevailed in the city, and there was no bread for the people of the land. . . . And he burnt the house of the Lord, and the king’s house, and all the houses of Jerusalem, and every great man’s house burnt he with fire. . . . But the captain of the guard left of the poor of the land to be vinedressers and husbandmen.”*

Jeremiah 25:11 - *“And this whole land shall be a desolation, and an astonishment; and these nations shall serve the king of Babylon seventy years.”*

Jeremiah 29:10 - *“After seventy years be accomplished at Babylon I will visit you. . . . Causing you to return to this place.”* (Return fulfilled under Cyrus.)

Jeremiah 34:2, 3 (Prophecy of Babylonian captivity.)

Ezekiel 12:13 - *“And I will bring him to Babylon to the land of the Chaldeans; yet shall he not see it, though he shall die there.”*

2 Chronicles 36:22, 23; Ezra 1:1, 2; Isaiah 44:28; 45:1 - 3.

SCATTERING OF ISRAEL FORETOLD

Deuteronomy 28:25 - *“The Lord shall cause thee to be smitten before thine enemies; thou shalt go out one way against them, and flee seven ways before them; and shalt be removed into all the kingdoms of the earth.”*

Deuteronomy 28:64, 65 - *“And the Lord shall scatter thee among all people, from the one end of the earth even unto the other; and there thou shalt serve other gods, which neither thou nor thy fathers have known, even wood and stone. And among these nations shalt thou find no ease, neither shall the sole of thy foot have rest; but the Lord shall give thee there a trembling heart; and failing of eyes, and sorrow of mind.”*

Jeremiah 24:9, 10 - *“And I will deliver them to be removed into all the kingdoms of the earth for their hurt, to be a reproach and a proverb, a taunt and a curse, in all places whither I shall drive them. And I will send the sword, the famine and the pestilence, among them, till they be consumed from off the land that I gave unto them and to their fathers.”*

Amos 9:9 - *“For, lo, I will command, and I will sift the house of Israel among all nations, like as corn is sifted in a sieve, yet shall not the least grain fall upon the earth.”*

Micah 3:12 - *“Therefore shall Zion for your sake be ploughed as a field, and Jerusalem shall become heaps, and the mountain of the house as the high place of the forest.”*

Luke 21:23 - *“And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations; and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled” (24).*

Jeremiah 13:19, 24; Ezekiel 22:15.

1 Nephi 5:251, 252 - *“And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel.”*

1 Nephi 7:6, 7 - *“It appears that the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth, . . . there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem.”*

2 Nephi 7:11, 12 - *“They who shall not be destroyed, shall be scattered among all nations. But behold, thus saith the Lord God: When the day cometh that they believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored.”*

2 Nephi 11:25 - 27.

DESTRUCTION OF JERUSALEM AND DISPERSION OF THE JEWS

***Matthew 23:36 - 38** - *“Then Jesus began to weep over Jerusalem, saying, O Jerusalem! Jerusalem! You who will kill the prophets, and will stone them who are sent unto you; how often would I have gathered your children together, even as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, and ye would not” (37).*

***Matthew 24:4, 12, 13, 18** - *“Tell us, when shall these things be which thou hast said concerning the destruction of the temple, and the Jews. . . When you, therefore, shall see the abominations of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, concerning the destruction of Jerusalem, then you shall stand in the holy place. . . . For then, in those days, shall be great tribulations on the Jews, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem: such as was not before sent upon Israel, of God, since the beginning of their kingdom until this time; no, nor ever shall be sent again upon Israel” (3, 15, 21).*

Luke 21:19, 23 - *“And when ye shall see Jerusalem compassed with armies, then know that the desolation thereof is nigh. . . . And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations; and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the time of the Gentiles be fulfilled” (20, 24).*

Deuteronomy 28:52 - 57; Ezekiel 12:15; Daniel 9:26; Micah 3:12; *Mark 13:20; Luke 19:40 - 43; *23:27 - 29, 1 Nephi 5:245, 251 - 254; 7:6 - 15; 2 Nephi 7:9 - 11; 11:24, 25.

RESTORATION OF ISRAEL AND JUDAH IN THE LATTER DAYS THE SECOND EFFORT

Isaiah 11:11 - *“And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people.”*

2 Nephi 11:28 - *“And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state.”*

2 Nephi 12:42 - *“I shall proceed to do a marvelous work among them, that I may remember my covenants which I have made unto the children of men, that I may set my hand again the second time to recover my people . . . Israel.”*

2 Nephi 5:33 - 51.

FROM THE NORTH

Jeremiah 3:12, 18 - *“Go and proclaim these words toward the north, and say, Return, thou backsliding Israel, saith the Lord; and I will not cause mine anger to fall upon you; . . . They shall come together out of the land of the north to the land that I have given for an inheritance unto your fathers.”*

Jeremiah 23:8 - *“But, The Lord liveth, which brought up and which led the seed of the house of Israel out of the north country, and from all countries whither I had driven them; and they shall dwell in their own land.”*

Jeremiah 31:8 - *“Behold, I will bring them from the north country, and gather them from the coasts of the earth.”*

Jeremiah 16:14, 15. 3 Nephi 7:24 - 27. D&C 108:6.

FROM THE EAST AND WEST

***Zechariah 8:7** - *“Thus saith the Lord of hosts; Behold, I will gather my people from the east country, and from the west country.”*

1 Nephi 6:42 - "Behold, these shall come from afar; and lo, these from the north and from the west."

FROM ALL NATIONS

Isaiah 11:12 - "And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth."

Isaiah 49:22, 23 - "Thus saith the Lord God, Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders. And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers."

Jeremiah 30:3 - "For, lo, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will bring again the captivity of my people Israel and Judah, saith the Lord; and I will cause them to return to the land that I gave to their fathers, and they shall possess it."

Jeremiah 31:10 - "He that scattered Israel will gather him, and keep him, as a shepherd doth his flock."

Jeremiah 33:7, 8 - "And I will cause the captivity of Judah and the captivity of Israel to return, and will build them as at the first. And I will cleanse them from all their iniquity, whereby they have sinned against me; and I will pardon all their iniquities, whereby they have sinned, and whereby they have transgressed against me."

Ezekiel 20:41, 42 - "I will accept you with your sweet savor, when I bring you out from the people, and gather you out of the countries wherein ye have been scattered; and I will be sanctified in you before the heathen. And ye shall know that I am the Lord, when I shall bring you into the land of Israel."

***Romans 11:25, 26** - "Blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fullness of the Gentiles be come in. And then all Israel shall be saved; as it is written, There shall come out of Sion the Deliverer, and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob."

Isaiah 60:9 - 15; 65:18, 19; 66:20; Jeremiah 16:14 - 16; 30:12; 31:31 - 34; 32:37 - 41; Ezekiel 20:34; 34:12, 13.

2 Nephi 12:73 - "And it shall come to pass that my people which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered in one."

3 Nephi 2:107, 109 - "As surely as the Lord liveth will he gather in from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob And then shall they know their Redeemer, who is Jesus Christ the Son of God."

1 Nephi 3:18, 19; 4:31 - 33; 5:245 - 256; 6:48 - 56; 7:18 - 25; 2 Nephi 2:10 - 24; 7:12 - 17, 33 - 44; 3 Nephi 7:28 - 45; 9:48 - 50; 10:2; Ether 6:4 - 12.

D&C 39:3 - "Thou shalt preach the fullness of my gospel which I have sent forth in these last days; the covenant which I have sent forth to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel."

D&C 45:2; 49:5.

REUNITED

Jeremiah 3:17, 18 - "At that time they shall call Jerusalem the throne of the Lord. . . . In those days the house of Judah shall walk with the house of Israel."

Ezekiel 37:22 - "I will make them one nation in the land upon the mountains of Israel; and one king shall be king to them all; and they shall be no more two nations, neither shall they be divided into two kingdoms any more at all."

1 Nephi 4:33 - "And after they were restored, they should no more be confounded, neither should they be scattered again."

JERUSALEM TO BE REBUILT

Isaiah 60:10, 13 - *“And the sons of strangers shall build up thy walls, and their kings shall minister unto thee; for in my, wrath I smote thee, but in my favor have I had mercy on thee. . . .The glory of Lebanon shall come unto thee, the fir tree, the pine tree, and the box together, to beautify the place of my sanctuary; and I will make the place of my feet glorious.”*

Isaiah 61:4 - *“And they shall build the old wastes, they shall raise up the former desolations, and they shall repair the waste cities, the desolations of many generations.”*

Jeremiah 30:18 - *“Thus saith the Lord: Behold, I will bring again the captivity of Jacob's tents, and have mercy on his dwelling - places; and the city shall be builded upon her own heap, and the palace shall remain after the manner thereof.”*

Joel 3:16, 17 - *“The Lord also shall roar out of Zion, and utter his voice from Jerusalem; . . . but the Lord will be the hope of his people, and the strength of the children of Israel. So shall ye know that I am the Lord your God dwelling in Zion, my holy mountain; then shall Jerusalem be holy, and there shall no strangers pass through her any more.”*

Zechariah 1:17 - *“My cities through prosperity shall yet be spread abroad; and the Lord shall yet comfort Zion, and shall yet choose Jerusalem.”*

Isaiah 62:1, 4, 7; Jeremiah 3:17; 33:12 - 14.

CHRIST SHALL BE THEIR KING

(See Future Coming)

Isaiah 9:7 - *“Of the increase of his government and peace there is no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever.”*

Daniel 7:13, 14 - *“I saw . . . one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven. . . . And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him.”*

***Mark 15:3, 4** - *“And Pilate asked him, Art thou the King of the Jews? And Jesus answering, said unto him, I am, even as thou sayest” (2).*

Ezekiel 34:24; Joel 3:17; Zechariah 14:9; *Matthew 27:11, 12; John 18:37.

THE LAND TO BE FRUITFUL AGAIN

Psalms 85:12 - *“Yea, the Lord shall give that which is good; and our land shall yield her increase.”*

***Isaiah 29:29** - *“But behold, saith the Lord of hosts, I will show into the children of men, that it is not yet a very little while, and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field; and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest” (17).*

Isaiah 32:15 - *“Until the Spirit be poured upon us from on high, and the wilderness be a fruitful field, and the fruitful field be counted for a forest.”*

Isaiah 61:5 - *“And strangers shall stand and feed your flocks, and the sons of the alien shall be your ploughmen and your vinedressers.”*

Ezekiel 36:35 - *“And they shall say, This land that was desolate is become like the garden of Eden; and the waste and desolate and ruined cities are become fenced, and are inhabited.”*

Amos 9:14 - *“And I bring again the captivity of my people of Israel, and they shall build the waste cities, and inhabit them; and they shall plant vineyards, and drink the wine thereof; they shall also make gardens, and eat the fruit of them.”*

Ezekiel 34:26, 27; 36:30, 34.

Chapter Five
DIVINE REVELATION
THE PROPHETS
INSPIRATION

Job 32:8 - *“There is a spirit in man: and the inspiration of the Almighty giveth them understanding.”*

THE OFFICE OF PROPHET

D&C 104:42 - *“And again, the duty of the president of the office of the high priesthood is to preside over the whole church, and to be like unto Moses. Behold, here is wisdom, yea, to be a seer, a revelator, a translator, and a prophet; having all the gifts of God which he bestows upon the head of the church.”*

D&C 107:39 - *“I give unto you my servant Joseph, to be a presiding elder over all my church, to be a translator, a revelator, a seer, and prophet. I give unto him for counselors my servant Sidney Rigdon and my servant William Law, that these may constitute a quorum and first presidency, to receive the oracles for the whole church.”*

D&C 19:1; 43:1.

PROPHETS AND REVELATION

1 Corinthians 12:28 - *“And God hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues.”*

James 1:5 - *“If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him.”*

D&C 8:1, 2.

D&C 9:1 - 3. Oliver Cowdery a translator.

D&C 27:2. Oliver Cowdery to speak by way of revelation.

D&C 68:1 - *“Lo, this is an ensample unto all those who were ordained unto this priesthood, whose mission is appointed unto them to go forth; and this is the ensample unto them, that they shall speak as they are moved upon by the Holy Ghost; and whatsoever they shall speak when moved upon by the Holy Ghost, shall be scripture; shall be the will of the Lord; shall be the mind of the Lord; shall be the word of the Lord; shall be the voice of the Lord, and the power of God unto salvation.”*

D&C 128:3. The Bishopric to have spirit of wisdom and revelation.

Alma 12:5. Sons of Mosiah to speak revelations.

†**Genesis 50:30 - 33; Exodus 3:14; 4:12; 6:13; 19:3; 24:16; *25:22; 33:9, 11; Mark 16:17; John 7:17;**

1 Corinthians 14; Galatians 1:12; Ephesians 1:17; 4:11.

D&C 22:1, 20, 22, 24; 67:3; 83:4.

Moroni 10:4, 5.

(Also see Gifts of Holy Spirit and Revelation)

SEERS

1 Samuel 9:9 - *“For he that is now called a Prophet was beforetime called a Seer.”*

Mosiah 12:21 - *“And whosoever has these things [interpreters], is called seer, after the manner of old times.”*

1 Samuel 9:19; 2 Samuel 15:27; 24:11; 2 Kings 17:13; 1 Chronicles 29:29; 2 Chronicles 9:29; 12:15; 29:30; Isaiah 30:10; Micah 3:7.

ADMONITIONS CONCERNING PROPHETS

Deuteronomy 13:1 - 3 - *“If there arise among you a prophet . . . and giveth thee a sign or a wonder, and the sign or the wonder come to pass, whereof he spake unto thee, saying, Let us go after other gods, which thou hast not known, and let us serve them; thou shalt not hearken unto the words of that prophet.”*

Deuteronomy 18:22 - *“When a prophet speaketh in the name of the Lord, if the thing follow not, nor come to pass, that is the thing which the Lord hath not spoken, but the prophet hath spoken it presumptuously”*

***Matthew 7:24** - *“And, again beware of false prophets, that come to you in sheep’s clothing; but inwardly they are ravening wolves” (15).*

***Matthew 24:23** - *“For in those days there shall also arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall show great signs and wonders; insomuch that, if possible, they shall deceive the very elect” (24).*

*** 2 Peter 2:1** - *“But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in abominable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them.”*

Jeremiah 28:8, 9; Micah 3:5; Matthew 24:9; *Luke 6:22, 23; *John 3:34; *5:37; 10:25; 14:29; 1 John 4:1.

PROPHETS ARE OFFICIAL CHANNELS OF INFORMATION

Hosea 12:10 - *“I have also spoken by the prophets, and I have multiplied visions, and used similitudes, by the ministry of the prophets.”*

Amos 3:7 - *“Surely the Lord God will do nothing, but he revealeth his secret unto his servants the prophets.”*

1 Nephi 7:4 - *“For by the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets, which shall come upon the children of men according to the flesh.”*

REVELATION AND PROPHETS IN THE LAST DAYS

SOME ONE TO SPEAK TO JERUSALEM

Isaiah 40:2 - *“Speak ye comfortably to Jerusalem, and cry unto her, that her warfare is accomplished, that her iniquity is pardoned.”*

A STANDARD TO BE SET UP

Isaiah 11:12 - *“And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.”*

Isaiah 18:3 - *“All ye inhabitants of the world, and dwellers on the earth, see ye, when he lifteth up an ensign on the mountains; and when he bloweth a trumpet, hear ye.”*

Isaiah 5:26; 49:22; 66:19.

MESSENGER OF THE COVENANT

Malachi 3:1 - 5 - *“Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me; and the Lord whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in; behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of hosts. But who may abide the day of his coming? and who shall stand when he appeareth? for he is like a refiner’s fire, and like fuller’s soap.*

ELIJAH BE SENT

Malachi 4:5 - *"Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord."*

A YOUNG MAN TO RECEIVE THE TIDINGS

Zechariah 2:4 - *"And he said unto him, Run, speak to this young man, saying, Jerusalem shall be inhabited as towns without walls for the multitude of men and cattle therein."*

MANY NATIONS TURN TO THE LORD

Micah 4:2 - *"He will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths; for the law shall go forth of Zion, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem."*

Zephaniah 3:9 - *"For then will I turn to the people a pure language, that they may all call upon the name of the Lord, to serve him with one consent."*

Zechariah 2:11 - *"And many nations shall be joined to the Lord in that day, and shall be my people."*

Zechariah 8:22 - *"Yea, many people and strong nations shall come to seek the Lord of hosts in Jerusalem, and to pray before the Lord."*

Zechariah 14:20 - *"In that day shall there be upon the bells of the horses, Holiness unto the Lord; and the pots in the Lord's house shall be like the bowls before the altar."*

Zechariah 14:16, 17, 18.

PROPHECY GIVEN BY SPIRIT OF GOD

1 Corinthians 12:10 - *"To another prophecy."*

2 Peter 1:21 - *"The prophecy came not in old time by the will of man; but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost."*

THE SURE WORD OF PROPHECY

2 Peter 1:19 - *"We have also a more sure knowledge of the word of prophecy; to which word of prophecy ye do well that ye take heed, as unto a light that shineth in a dark place, until the day - dawn, and the day - star arise in your hearts."*

THE SPIRIT OF PROPHECY

Revelation 19:10 - *"The testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy."*

NO PRIVATE INTERPRETATION

***2 Peter 1:20** - *"No prophecy of the scriptures is given of any private will of man."*

NO DENIAL OF PROPHECY

D&C 10:11 - *"Deny not the spirit of revelation, nor the spirit of prophecy."*

THE PROMISE OF CONTINUED REVELATION

***Joel 2:28, 29** - *"And it shall come to pass afterward that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions; and also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit."*

Malachi 3:6 - *"I am the Lord, I change not."*

Hebrews 13:8 - *"Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and today, and forever."*

PROPHECY WILL NOT CEASE UNTIL "THAT WHICH IS PERFECT" IS COME

1 Corinthians 13:8 - 10 - *"Whether there be prophecies, they shall fail; whether there be tongues, they shall cease; whether there be knowledge, it shall vanish away. For we know in part, and we prophesy in part. But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away."*

Chapter Six

THE BIBLE

THE USE OF SCRIPTURE

2 Timothy 3:16, 17 - *"All Scripture given by inspiration of God, is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness; That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works."*

John 5:40 - *"Search the Scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life; and they are they which testify of me" (39).*

THE WORD OF GOD IMMUTABLE; TO BE OBEYED

Deuteronomy, 4:2 - *"Ye shall not add unto the word which I command you, neither shall ye diminish aught from it, that ye may keep the commandments of the Lord your God."*

Deuteronomy 8:3 - *"That he might make thee known that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live."*

Psalms 33:11 - *"The counsel of the Lord standeth for ever, the thoughts of his heart to all generations."*

Psalms 119:9, 88, 89 - *"Wherewithal shall a young man cleanse his way? by taking heed thereto according to thy word. . . . So shall I keep the testimony of thy mouth. For ever, O Lord, thy word is settled in heaven."*

Proverbs 30:5, 6 - *"Every word of God is pure: . . . Add thou not unto his words, lest he reprove thee, and thou be found a liar."*

Ecclesiastes 3:14 - *"Whatsoever God doeth, it shall be for ever; nothing can be put to it, nor anything taken from it."*

John 12:48 - *"He that rejecteth me, and receiveth not my words, hath one that judgeth him; the word that I have spoken, the same shall judge him in the last day."*

***Galatians 3:15** - *"Though it be but a man's covenant, yet when it be confirmed, no man disannulleth, or addeth thereto."*

Revelation 22:18, 19 - *"For I testify unto every man that heareth the words of the prophecy of this book, if any man shall add unto these things, God shall add unto him the plagues that are written in this book; and if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the book of life, and out of the holy city."*

Deuteronomy 12:32; Psalms 89:34; *Matthew 4:4; Luke 4:4; James 1:17.

ON THE PURITY OF THE SCRIPTURES

The Epitome of Faith - *"We believe the Bible to be the word of God as far as it is translated correctly."*

SOME WREST THE SCRIPTURES

***2 Peter 3:16** - "Some things hard to be understood, which they who are unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also the other scriptures, unto their own destruction."

CHANGES IN THE SCRIPTURES

1 Nephi 3:168 - "*For behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious.*"

Verse 175 - "*Because of these things which are taken away out of the gospel of the Lamb, an exceeding great many do stumble, yea, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them.*"

GENERAL INFORMATION

THE CANONICAL BOOKS

The Jewish canon contains the same thirty - nine books of the Old Testament that will be found in the Protestant versions of the Bible, but their grouping is different. They are, (1) The Law, Torah, or Pentateuch, (2) The Prophets, and (3) The Hagiographa, or Holy Writings, and they are usually arranged in that order in the Hebrew canon.

Certain books called the Apocrypha by Protestants, however, are included in the Old Testament canon by Roman Catholics, and are called by them Deuteronomyerocanonical books, being accepted by them as inspired writings. The Reorganized Church does not accept the Apocrypha as of equal authority with the canonical books, pursuant to a revelation given in 1833, which states in part: "*There are many things contained therein that are true, and it is mostly translated correctly; there are many things contained therein that are not true, which are interpolations by the hands of men. Verily I say unto you, that it is not needful that the Apocrypha should be translated.*" - D&C 88:1.

The church also rejects as uninspired the book known as The Song of Solomon, hence the Inspired Version of the Holy Scriptures omits it and contains but thirty - eight books in the Old Testament, instead of thirty - nine above mentioned.

Both the Protestant and Roman Catholic canon of the New Testament contain twenty - seven books, and these are also found in the Inspired Version accepted by the Reorganized Church, the only differences therefore being those of translation in the various texts.

BIBLE MANUSCRIPTS AND VERSIONS

The most important and by far the greater portion of Bible manuscripts were written in Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Syriac, Aramaic, and Coptic. From the time of Ezra, the Aramaic was increasingly used, hence some traces of it are found in the Old Testament, notably in certain parts of Daniel and Ezra. Most of the New Testament manuscripts of chief importance are in Greek, Latin, and Syriac. But other manuscripts of interest include two Coptic dialects, the Bohairic and the Sahidic, and Aramaic, Gothic, and Slavonic texts or fragments. Some of these, however, are translations of still older manuscripts, mostly Greek, it is believed. The value of the oldest translations is largely due to the fact that they were derived from manuscripts, either originals or copies, that were older than any now known to be in existence.

What are known as the four Great Uncials, considered generally to be the most important and the most nearly complete of the old Greek manuscripts, include Codex Vaticanus and Codex Sinaiticus, both believed to be of the fourth century, and Codex Alexandrinus and Codex Ephraemi Rescriptus, said to be of the fifth century. Codex Sinaiticus is the only Uncial that contains all books of the New Testament, though it does not contain the concluding verses of Mark that some reject. But it contains the Epistle of Barnabas and part of the Shepherd of Hermas, which were read in some of the ancient churches.

For a more extensive study of the canonical books and of Bible manuscripts and versions, material may be found in *Helps to Bible Study*, pages 47 to 71. Examination of the "Bibliography" on pages 575 - 577 is also suggested for further research in that and allied fields of religious study. Of modern versions we note the *Twentieth Century New Testament*, by Julia Smith; a translation of the *Old Testament*, by Mrs. Helen Spurrell; *The Centenary Translation; New Testament*, by James Moffatt, 1901. A new translation of the whole Bible in 1926 by R. G. Moulton, began in 1885, issued in twenty - one volumes. Weymouth, modern - speech version, 1903, The Riverdale New Testament of 1901; Goodspeed, 1923.

The Inspired Version was begun in July, 1830, by Joseph Smith. He did not have access to the earlier manuscripts but used a King James Bible and claimed corrections by the Holy Spirit. After beginning at Genesis, he was directed to take up the New Testament, March, 1831 (D&C 45:11), which was completed February 2, 1833, and the Old Testament, July 2, 1833. This manuscript was preserved by Emma Smith and published by the Reorganized Church in 1867.

MISSING BOOKS OF THE BIBLE

The following books are mentioned, but are not found in the King James' translation:

Prophecy of Enoch	Jude 14
Book of the Wars of the Lord	Numbers 21:14
Book of Jasher	Joshua 10:13; 2 Samuel 1:18
Book of the Manner of the Kingdom	1 Samuel 10:25
Solomon's Three Thousand Proverbs	1 Kings 4:32, 33
Book of the Acts of Solomon	1 Kings 11:41
Book of Gad, the Seer	1 Chronicles 29:29
Book of Nathan the Prophet	1 Chronicles 29:29; 2 Chronicles 9:29
Prophecy of Ahijah	2 Chronicles 9:29
Visions and Story of Iddo, the Seer	2 Chronicles 9:29; 13:22
Book of Shemaiah the Prophet	2 Chronicles 12:15
Genealogies of Iddo the Seer	2 Chronicles 12:15
Book of Jehu	2 Chronicles 20:34
Isaiah's History of Uzziah	2 Chronicles 26:22
Book of the Sayings of the Seers	2 Chronicles 33:19
Book written by Jeremiah	Jeremiah 36:2, 32
Daniel's Sealed Book	Daniel 12:4, 9
Book of Ephraim	Hosea 8:12
A previous Epistle to the Corinthians	1 Corinthians 5:9
Epistle to the Laodiceans	Colossians 4:16

Jude's previous Epistle	Jude 3
-------------------------	--------

Twenty - one books in all. Then there were many testimonies of Christ (Luke 1:1). There are other texts that are believed by some to refer to still other books, such as:

Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel	1 Kings 14: 19
Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Judah	1 Kings 15:7
Book of the Kings	2 Chronicles 24:27
Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah	2 Chronicles 28:26; 35:27 2 Chronicles 36:8
Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah	2 Chronicles 33:18

It is possible that these books are the ones known to us as the First and Second Book of Kings and the First and Second Book of Chronicles, though some scholars say that they must have been different books from these.

INSCRIPTIONS, ANCIENT MATERIALS USED

Some have supposed that ancient inscriptions were never engraved on metals. But South Arabian inscriptions on bronze have been found ascribed to 900 B.C. or before. In the Old Testament, from Genesis 4:22 onward, brass is mentioned about 100 times. Some think it may refer to copper, the word *nachshown* being from another Hebrew term that conveys the sense of ringing, as of bell - metal, says Strong. But *Brown's Antiquities of The Jews states:*

"It is generally thought that engraving on brass and lead and on a rock or tablet of stone, was the form in which the public laws were written." - Volume 2, page 90.

Aramaic inscriptions on bronze, weights found at Nineveh are ascribed to about the 8th century B.C. by the *Encyclopaedia Britannica* (Vol. 14, pages 619 - 627, on "Inscriptions"). It also states that public documents of the Romans were largely engraved on bronze, also some Greek inscribed bronze tablets have been found.

The Pocket Dictionary of the Bible, by Dr. Alexander, for American Sunday School Union, 5th edition, 1830, explains that:

"Hesiod's works (c. 776 B. C.) were written on tables of lead; the Roman laws on twelve tables of brass; Solon's (c. 639 - 559 B. C.) on wood; and those of God on stone, probably marble." - Article "Book," page 118.

The People's Dictionary of the Bible, Second edition, says:

"Books in the form we have them were unknown to the ancients. The materials employed by them to write upon, and sometimes now called books, were of various kinds. Plates of lead or copper or of wood, coated with wax, were in common use, the inscriptions being made with a stylus." - Article "Book," page 47.

The Encyclopaedia of Religious Knowledge (page 257) states of books of the ancients:

"Those books which were inscribed on tablets of wood, lead, brass, or ivory, were connected together by rings at the back, through which a rod was passed to carry them by. The Orientals

appear to have taken pleasure in giving tropical or enigmatical titles to their books. The titles prefixed to the fifty - sixth, sixtieth, and eightieth psalms appear to of this description.” - *The Truth Defended*, page 136.

Nivens’ *Biblical Antiquities* (pages 158, 159) remarks:

“Some refer the origin of writing to the time of Moses; others, to that of Abraham; while a still different opinion throws it back to the age of Adam himself. . . . One of the earliest methods was to cut out the letters on a tablet of stone. Another, was to trace them on unbaked tiles, or bricks, which were afterwards thoroughly burned with fire. Tablets (that is, small, level surfaces or plates) of lead or brass were sometimes employed. When the writing was wanted to be most durable, the last was chosen.” - *Ibid.*, page 137,

Dr. Bissell's *Biblical Antiquities*, Eleventh edition, has this to say:

“Doubtless engraving on wood, stone and the metals was well understood by the Hebrews. . . . There are still to be found mines on the Sinaitic peninsula which, as it is admitted, were worked by the Egyptians before the days of Moses. The remains of smelting - furnaces, hammers of porphyry, reservoirs for water, and even the piers and wharves on the adjacent coast where the ore was shipped, are still visible. There is abundant evidence that the process of separating metals from their alloys was to some degree early understood. . . . Those employed with metals who are specially referred to in the Bible are gold and silversmiths and workers in brass and iron.” - Chapter VI, pages 151, 157.

These facts clearly show that the ancient Hebrews were familiar with the art of engraving upon metals; and that this included language inscriptions on gold plates seems beyond reasonable question, for Exodus 28:36 states that God commanded:

“And thou shalt make a plate of pure gold, and grave upon it, like the engravings of a signet, HOLINESS TO THE LORD.”

Chapter Seven

THE BOOK OF MORMON

A PEOPLE BROUGHT FORTH

BLESSINGS OF EPHRAIM AND MANASSEH, SONS OF JOSEPH

***Genesis 48:5, 9, 20 - 22** - *“And now, of thy two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh, which were born unto thee in the land of Egypt, before I came unto thee into Egypt; behold, they are mine, and the God of my fathers shall bless them; even as Reuben and Simeon they shall be blessed, for they are mine; wherefore they shall be called after my name. (Therefore they were called Israel.) . . . Wherefore the God of thy fathers shall bless thee, and the fruit of thy loins, that they shall be blessed above thy brethren and thy father’s house. . . . And Israel stretched out his right hand, and laid it upon Ephraim’s head, who was the younger, and his left hand upon Manasseh’s head, guiding his hands wittingly; for Manasseh was the first - born. And he blessed Joseph, and said, God, before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac did walk, the God which fed me all my life long until this day, the Angel which redeemed me from all evil, bless the lads; and let my name be named on them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; and let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth” (5, 14 - 16).*

**THE SPECIAL BLESSING OF JOSEPH
HIS DESCENDANTS TO "RUN OVER THE WALL" OR THE SEA**

Genesis 49:1, 22, 26 - *"And Jacob called unto his sons, and said, Gather yourselves together, that I may tell you that which shall befall you in the last days. . . . Joseph is a fruitful bough, even a fruitful bough by a well; whose branches run over the wall; . . . the blessings of thy father have prevailed above the blessings of my progenitors unto the utmost bound of the everlasting hills; they shall be on the head of Joseph, and on the crown of the head of him that was separate from his brethren."*

Isaiah 16:8 - *"They wandered through the wilderness: her branches are stretched out, they are gone over the sea."*

Isaiah 18:1, 2 - *"Woe to the land shadowing with wings, which is beyond the rivers of Ethiopia; that sendeth ambassadors by the sea, even in vessels of bulrushes upon the waters, saying, Go, ye swift messengers, to a nation scattered and peeled, to a people terrible from their beginning hitherto; a nation meted out and trodden down, whose land the rivers have spoiled!"*

A BLESSING UPON "JOSEPHS LAND"

Deuteronomy 33:13 - 17 - *"And of Joseph he said, Blessed of the Lord be his land, for the precious things of heaven, for the dew, and for the deep that coucheth beneath, and for the precious fruits brought forth by the sun, and for the precious things put forth by the moon, and for the chief things of the ancient mountains, and for the precious things of the lasting hills, and for the precious things of the earth and fullness thereof, and for the good will of him that dwelt in the bush; let the blessing come upon the head of Joseph, and upon the top of the head of him that was separated from his brethren, His glory is like the firstling of his bullock, and his horns are like the horns of unicorns; with them he shall push the people together to the ends of the earth; and they are the ten thousands of Ephraim, and they are the thousands of Manasseh."*

JOSEPH PRESERVED FOR A SPECIAL PURPOSE

Psalms 80:1, 2, 8 - 11, 14, 15, 17 - *"Give ear, O Shepherd of Israel, thou that leadest Joseph like a flock; thou that dwellest between the cherubim, shine forth: Before Ephraim and Benjamin and Manasseh stir up thy strength, and come and save us. . . Thou hast brought a vine out of Egypt; thou hast cast out the heathen, and planted it. Thou preparedst room before it, and didst cause it to take deep root, and it filled the land. The hills were covered with the shadow of it, and the boughs thereof were like the goodly cedars. She sent out her boughs unto the sea, and her branches unto the river. . . Return, we beseech thee, O God of hosts; look down from heaven, and behold, and visit this vine; and the vineyard which thy right hand hath planted, and the branch that thou madest strong for thyself. . . . Let thy hand be upon the man of thy right hand, upon the son of man whom thou madest strong for thyself."*

**THE SCATTERING OF THE PEOPLE
ISRAEL THE NORTHERN KINGDOM**

1 Kings 22:17 - *"I saw all Israel scattered upon the hills, as sheep that have not a shepherd."* - The Prophet Micah.

JERUSALEM (CAPITAL OF JUDAH, THE SOUTHERN KINGDOM) TO BE DESTROYED

Jeremiah 19:37 - *"Hear ye the word of the Lord, O kings of Judah, and inhabitants of Jerusalem: Thus saith the Lord of hosts, the God of Israel; Behold I will bring evil upon this place . . . and I will cause them to fall by the sword before their enemies."*

A WARNING TO ESCAPE FROM JERUSALEM

Jeremiah 6:1 - *"O ye children of Benjamin, gather yourselves to flee out of the midst of Jerusalem."*

"REMNANT" PRESERVED

2 Kings 19:30, 31; Isaiah 37:31, 32 - *"And the remnant that is escaped of the house of Judah shall take root downward, and bear fruit upward: For out of Jerusalem shall go forth a remnant, and they that escape out of mount Zion."*

PEOPLE OF JERUSALEM INTO CAPTIVITY

2 Kings 24:10 - 14 - *"The servants of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up against Jerusalem, and the city was besieged. . . . And he carried out thence all the treasure of the house of the Lord, and the treasures of the kings house. . . . And he carried away all Jerusalem, and all the princes, and all the mighty men of valor, even ten thousand captives and all the craftsmen and smiths: none remained save the poorest sort of the people of the land."*

A VOICE FROM THE DUST RECORDS OUT OF THE GROUND

***Isaiah 29:4** - *"And she shalt be brought down, and shall speak out of the ground, and her speech shall be low out of the dust, and her voice shall be as of one that hath a familiar spirit, out of the ground, and her speech shall whisper out of the dust."*

A PART SELECTED AND TRANSPLANTED TO GROW AND FLOURISH IN A DISTANT PLACE

Ezekiel 17:22, 23 - *"Thus saith the Lord God; I will also take of the highest branch of the high cedar, and will set it; I will crop off from the top of his young twigs a tender one, and will plant it upon a high mountain and eminent; in the mountain of the height of Israel will I plant it; and it shall bring forth boughs, and bear fruit, and be a goodly cedar; and under it shall dwell all fowl of every wing; in the shadow of the branches thereof shall they dwell."*

THE TWO RECORDS: THE STICK OF JOSEPH, AND THE STICK OF JUDAH (THE BIBLE), EVENTUALLY TO BE PUT TOGETHER

Ezekiel 37:19, 20 - *"Thus said the Lord God; Behold, I will take the stick of Joseph, which is in the hand of Ephraim, and the tribe of Israel his fellows, and will put them with him, even with the stick of Judah, and make them one stick and they shall be one in mine hand. And the sticks whereon thou writest shall be in thine hand before their eyes."*

A PERIOD OF SILENCE FOR THE PROPHETS

***Isaiah 29:10** - *"For the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep. For, behold, ye have closed your eyes and ye have rejected the prophets, and your rulers; and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquities."*

**EVENTS OF THE RESTORATION
AN EXTRAORDINARY EVENT TO TAKE PLACE**

Isaiah 29:26 - *"I will proceed to do a marvelous work among this people; yea, a marvelous work and a wonder" (14).*

TRUTH TO COME OUT OF THE EARTH: THE SEALED BOOK

Psalms 85:10, 11 - *"Mercy and truth are met together; righteousness and peace have kissed each other. Truth shall spring out of the earth; and righteousness shall look down from heaven."*

***Isaiah 29:4, 11, 12, 14, 32** - *"And she shall be brought down, and shall speak out of the ground, and her speech shall be low out of the dust; and her voice shall be as of one that hath a familiar spirit, out of the ground, and her speech shall whisper out of the dust. . . . And it shall come to pass, that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you the words of a book; and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered. And behold, the book shall be sealed; and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof. . . . But the book shall be delivered unto a man, and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust. . . . They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine" (4, 11, 12, 24).*

THE BOOK TO COME TO THE PEOPLE

Isaiah 29:30 - *"And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity, and out of darkness" (18).*

THE PROBLEM OF TRANSLATION OF THE BOOK

***Isaiah 29:11, 12, A. V.** - *"And the vision of all is become unto you as the words of a book that is sealed, which men deliver to one that is learned, saying, Read this, I pray thee; and he saith, I cannot; for it is sealed. And the book is delivered to him that is not learned, saying, Read this, I pray thee: and he saith, I am not learned."*

***Isaiah 29:13, 14, A. V.** - *"Wherefore the Lord said, Forasmuch as this people draw near me with their mouth, and with their lips do honour me, but have removed their heart far from me, and their fear toward me is taught by the precept of men: Therefore, behold, I will proceed to do a marvellous work among this people, even a marvellous work and a wonder: for the wisdom of their wise men shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent men shall be hid." See - I. V. Isaiah 29:20 - 26 for these passages.*

**THE WORLD - WIDE MISSION OF CHRIST
TO ISRAEL**

***Matthew 15:23** - *"He answered, I am not sent but unto the lost sheep of the house of Israel" (24).*

"OTHER SHEEP" TO BE VISITED

John 10:16 - *"And other sheep I have, which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd."*

JERUSALEM TO BE RESTORED

MODERN JERUSALEM HAS EXPANDED FAR BEYOND ITS WALLS

Zechariah 2:4 - *“Run, speak to this young man, saying, Jerusalem shall be inhabited as towns without walls for the multitude of men and cattle therein.”*

1 Nephi 3:192, 193 - *“These last records . . . shall establish the truth of the first, which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Saviour of the world.”*

2 Nephi 12:58 - 60, 62, 67 - 70 - *“Wherefore murmur ye, because that ye shall receive more of my word? Know ye not that the testimony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am God, that I remember one nation like unto another? Wherefore, I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another. . . . And I do this that I may prove unto many, that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever. . . . For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews, and they shall write it: and I shall also speak unto the Nephites, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth, and they shall write it.”*

2 Nephi 2:12 - 22; 11:125 - 160.

D&C 2:6 - *“For this very purpose are these plates preserved which contain these records, that the promises of the Lord might be fulfilled, which he made to his people; and that the Lamanites might come to the knowledge of their fathers*

D&C 17:2.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

BOOK OF MORMON OPPOSES POLYGAMY

In the *International Review*, the Book of Mormon is declared to oppose polygamy:

“Fabulous as we know it to be, it does not contain a single immoral sentiment. It would add to the value of our canonical Scriptures if an abridgement of it could be made to take the place of Solomon’s Song. So far from inculcating polygamy, it directly opposes it. ‘Hearken to the word of the Lord for there shall not any man among you have, save it be one wife’ (Jacob 2:27). Nor, until several years after its adoption as conjointly with the Bible a rule of faith, was polygamy even tolerated.”* - Volume 11, page 223, published in 1881.

*Jacob 2:36 in Reorganized edition.

COMPASS (MAGNETIC) AND DIRECTORS

Objection that the Book of Mormon story of the compass or directors in use before the Christian Era is impossible or improbable (see 1 Nephi 5:12, 190; Alma 17:56, 71), arouses interest in the following historical data.

The work of A. F. Tytler, Professor of History, University of Edinburgh, says:

“The polarity of the magnet had been known in Europe as early as the thirteenth century; but the compass was not used in sailing till the middle of the fourteenth; and another century had elapsed from that period, while yet the European mariners scarcely ventured out of the sight of their coasts.” - *General History*, page 165, published 1824.

The Student's Cyclopaedia of 1901 shows that Europeans were far behind time: "The compass was not known in Europe until the 12th century, but was used in China in very early times, and is said to have been invented by the Emperor Hoang - ti in 2634 B.C." - Volume 1, page 243.

Henry Pemberton, of the Academy of Natural Sciences, remarks:

"The phenomena of Magnetism - undoubtedly one of the forms of Electricity and of the ethereal medium - are yet very imperfectly understood. The natural Magnet, the Lodestone, early attracted attention. Plato thus speaks of it: 'A divine power, which moves you, like that in the stone which Euripides calls - the Magnesian, but the common people Heracleon.' . . . The Chinese noticed the phenomenon, and used the Magnet in navigation many centuries before the Europeans invented the Mariner's Compass." - ' *The Path of Evolution*, pages 184, 185.

URIM AND THUMMIM

Urim is from the Hebrew UWRIYM (plural of UWR - derived from OWR translated "light," "shine," "bright," "clear," "break of day," and "morning") and is rendered "lights" by Young, Strong, Zenos, and others.

Thummim is from TUMMIYM (plural of TOM - derived from TAMAN - translated "completeness," "full," "integrity," "perfect," "simplicity," and "upright") and is translated "perfections." Strong says it was in the high priest's breastplate as an emblem of complete truth.

The historian, Prideaux, names the Urim and Thummim as one of the five things that were the glory of the first temple. He says:

"What was the main glory of the first temple, those extraordinary marks of the divine favor with which it was honored, were wholly wanting in the second. The Jews reckon them up in these five particulars: 1. The ark of the covenant, and the mercy seat which was upon it; 2. The Shechinah, or divine presence; 3. The Urim and Thummim; 4. The holy fire upon the altar; and, 5. The spirit of prophecy." - *History of the Jews*, Volume 1, page 151.

Prideaux says the reason for rendering Urim and Thummim "manifestation and truth" in the Septuagint was:

"Because all these oracular answers given by Urim and Thummim were always clear and manifest, and their truth ever certain and infallible." - *Ibid.*, page 156.

Dr. Smith notes various speculations as to how answers came through Urim and Thummim, then observes:

"But it seems to be far simplest and most in agreement with the different accounts of inquiries made by Urim and Thummim (I Samuel 14:3, 18, 19; 23:2, 4, 9, 11, 12; 28:6; Judges 20:28; 2 Samuel 5:23, &c.) to suppose that the answer was given simply by the Word of the Lord to the high priest (comp - John 11:51), when he had inquired of the Lord clothed with the ephod and breastplate." - *Dictionary of the Bible*, page 726.

Calmet explains that:

"When the Urim and THUMMIM was to be consulted, the high Priest put on his robes, and, going into the holy place the curtain that separated the holy place from the most holy place, and then

turning his face directly toward the ark and the mercy seat, upon which the divine presence rested, he proposed what he wanted to be resolved about.” - *Dictionary of the Holy Bible*, Page 909.

Of the Urim and Thummim and its purpose, Joseph Smith said an angel told him:

“Also that there were two stones in silver bows, and these stones fastened to a breastplate constituted what is called the Urim and Thummim, deposited with the plates [of the Book of Mormon], and the possession and use of these stones was what constituted seers in ancient or former times, and that God had prepared them for the purpose of translating the book.” - *History of the Church*, Volume 1, page 13.

Concerning their use and later disposition, Joseph Smith stated:

“By the wisdom of God they remained safe in my hands until I had accomplished by them what was required at my hand, when according to arrangements the messenger called for them, I delivered them up to him, and he has them in his charge until this day, being the second day of May, one thousand eight hundred and thirty - eight.” - *Ibid.*, page 18 (see *Times and Seasons*, Volume 3).

Oliver Cowdery states of the work done with Urim and Thummim:

“Day after day I continued, uninterrupted, to write from his mouth, as he translated, with the Urim and Thummim, or, as the Nephites would have said, ‘Interpreters,’ the history, or record, called ‘The Book of Mormon.’” - *Ibid.*, - page 33, (*Messenger and Advocate*, Volume 1, page 14).

Joseph Smith also stated that the two revelations, Doctrine and Covenants 7 and 15, were given by him through the Urim and Thummim (*Church History*, Volume 1, Pages 33, 45).

Concerning the translating by Urim and Thummim, David Whitmer said:

“The letters appeared on them in light, and would not go off until they were written correctly by Oliver. When Joseph could not pronounce the words he spelled them out letter by letter.” - *Church History*, Volume 4, page 448.

Lucy Smith, Joseph Smith’s mother, quotes from him and describes the Urim and Thummim as follows:

“ ‘Do not be uneasy, Mother, all is right - see here, I have got a key.’ I knew not what he meant, but took the article of which he spoke into my hands, and, upon examination, found that it consisted of two smooth three - cornered diamonds set in glass, and the glasses were set in silver bows, which were connected with each other in much the same way as old - fashioned *spectacles*.” - *Biographical Sketches of Joseph Smith the Prophet, and his Progenitors*, Edition of 1880, chapter 23, page 107.

SOLOMON SPAULDING’S “MANUSCRIPT FOUND”

The claim that Spaulding’s *Manuscript Found* was the origin of the Book of Mormon was rejected by no less an authority than James H. Fairchild, then the president of Oberlin College, Ohio. Of this manuscript, now in the archives of Oberlin College, he stated:

The theory of the origin of the Book of Mormon in the traditional manuscript of Solomon Spaulding, will probably have to be relinquished. . . . There seems no reason to doubt that this [manuscript] is the long - lost story Mr. Rice, myself, and others, compared with the Book of Mormon, and could detect no resemblance between the two, in general or in detail. There seems to be no name or

incident common to the two. . . . Some other explanation of the origin of the Book of Mormon must be found, if any explanation is required.” - Quoted from *Bibliotheca Sacra* in the preface to the published copy of the *Manuscript Found*, pages 5, 6.

Mr. L. L. Rice found this manuscript among many books and manuscripts bought from E. D. Howe, the Painesville *Telegraph*, in 1839 - 40, of which he states in a letter to Joseph Smith in 1885: “There is no identity of names, of persons, or places; and there is no similarity of style between them. As I told Mr. Deming, I should as soon think the Book of Revelation was written by the author of Don Quixote, as that the writer of this Manuscript was the author of the Book of Mormon.” - *Ibid.*, page 7.

Mr. Rice copied the following endorsement found on the Manuscript:

“The writings of Solomon Spaulding proved by Aaron Wright, Oliver Smith, John N. Miller, and others. The testimonies of the above gentlemen are now in my possession.” (Signed) D. P. Hurlbut. - *Ibid.*, page 9.

Chapter Eight

THE GOSPEL OF JESUS CHRIST

INTRODUCTION TO THE GOSPEL

ITS ANTIQUITY

†**Genesis 5:44** - “And thus the gospel began to be preached from the beginning, being declared by holy angels, sent forth from the presence of God; and by his own voice, and by the gift of the Holy Ghost.”

THE TRUE FOUNDATION

Deuteronomy 32:3, 4, 31 - “I will publish the name of the Lord; . . . He is the Rock, his work is perfect. . . For their rock is not as our Rock.”

***Psalms 11:3** - “But the foundations of the wicked shall be destroyed, and what can they do?”

***Psalms 40:2** - “He brought me up also out of a horrible pit, out of the miry clay, and set my feet upon a rock, and established my doings.”

Psalms 82: 5 - “They know not, neither will they understand; they walk on in darkness: all the foundations of the earth are out of course.”

Isaiah 28:16 - “Behold, I lay in Zion for a foundation a stone, a tried stone, a precious corner stone, a sure foundation.”

Ezekiel 13:14 - “So will I break down the wall that ye have daubed with untempered mortar, and bring it down to the ground, so that the foundation thereof shall be discovered, and it shall fall.”

***Matthew 7:34** - “Whosoever heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock, and the rains descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house, and it fell not; for it was founded upon a rock” (24, 25).

Matthew 21:44 - “Jesus said unto them Did ye never read in the scriptures, The stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner?” (42).

1 Corinthians 3:11 - 13 - “For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ. Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble; Every man’s work shall be made manifest; for the day shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire.”

Ephesians 2:20 - 22 - “And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone; in whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto an

holy temple in the Lord; in whom ye also are builded together for an habitation of God through the Spirit."

2 Timothy 2:19 - *"The foundation of God standeth sure, having this seal, The Lord knoweth them that are his."*

Hebrews 11:10 - *"For he looked for a city which hath foundations, whose builder and maker is God."*

2 Samuel 22:2, 3; Ps 18:2; 61:2; 118:22; Matthew 16:19; *Luke 6:47, 48; *14:27 - 31; Acts 4:10 - 12; Romans 9:33; 1 Corinthians 10:4; Hebrews 11:10; *1 Peter 2:6 - 8; Revelation 21:14, 19.

Jacob 3:26, 27 - *"By the stumbling of the Jews, they will reject the stone upon which they might build, and have safe foundation. But behold, according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last, and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build."*

Helaman 2:74, 75 - *"It is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your foundation, that when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds; yea, his shafts in the whirlwind; yea, when all his hail and his mighty storm shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you, to drag you down to the gulf of misery and endless woe, because of the rock upon which ye are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men build, they can not fall."*

2 Nephi 11:93.

MAN'S NEED OF THE GOSPEL OF CHRIST

John 15:6 - *"If a man abide not in me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered; and men gather them, and cast them into the fire, and they are burned."*

Romans 11:22 - *"Behold therefore the goodness and severity of God; on them which fell, severity; but toward thee, goodness, if thou continue in his goodness; otherwise thou also shalt be cut off."*

Colossians 1:23 - *"If ye continue in the faith grounded and settled, and be not moved away from the hope of the gospel, which ye have heard."*

Jude 3 - *"Exhort you that ye should earnestly contend for the faith which was once delivered unto the Saints."*

Philemon 1:27; 2 Timothy 1:13; Hebrews 6:12.

OBEDIENCE TO CHRIST REQUIRED

Deuteronomy 18:18, 19 - *"I will raise them up a Prophet . . . and will put my words in his mouth; . . . whosoever will not hearken unto my words which he shall speak in my name, I will require it of him."*

1 Samuel 15:22, 23 - *"Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams. For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry."*

Isaiah 55:4 - *"Behold, I have given him for a witness to the people, a leader and commander to the people."*

***Matthew 7:35** - *"Every one that heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them not, shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand" (26).*

Mark 8:41 - *"Whosoever shall be ashamed of me and of my words, . . . of him also shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he cometh in the glory of his Father with the holy angels" (38).*

John 12:48 - *"He that rejecteth me, and receiveth not my words, hath one that judgeth him: the word that I have spoken, the same shall judge him in the last day."*

John 14:21 - *"He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me."*

2 Corinthians 10:5, 6 - *"Bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ; and having in a readiness to revenge all disobedience."*

2 Thessalonians 1:7, 8 - *"The Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels, in flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ."*

Hebrews 5:8, 9 - *"Though he were a Son yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered; and being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him."*

James 1:21, 22 - *"Receive with meekness the engrafted word, which is able to save your souls. But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves."*

1 Peter 1:22 - *"Seeing ye have purified your souls in obeying the truth."*

1 Peter 4:17 - *"Judgment must begin at the house of God; and if it first begin at us, what shall the end be of them that obey not the gospel of God?"*

Revelation 22:14 - *"Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life."*

***Matthew 7:30; 28:19; John 15:10; Acts 5:29, 32; Romans 2:8; 6:16; 2 Corinthians 2:9; 2 Thessalonians 3:14; *James 2:25.**

3 Nephi 7:2 - *"Therefore whoso remembereth these sayings of mine, and doeth them, him will I raise up at the last day."*

D&C 86:3; 102:2.

NATURE AND POWER OF THE GOSPEL

***Luke 2:10, 14** - *"But the angel said unto them, Fear not, for behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people. . . . Glory to God in the highest; and on earth, peace; good will to men."*

***Romans 1:16, 17** - *"For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ; for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek. For therein is the righteousness of God revealed through faith on his name."*

1 Corinthians 1:21, 24 - *"For after that in the wisdom of God the world by wisdom knew not God, it pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe. . . . But unto them who believe, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God."*

1 Corinthians 15:1, 2 - *"Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel . . . wherein ye stand; by which also ye are saved."*

1 Thessalonians 1:5 - *"For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much assurance."*

***Titus 2:11, 12** - *"For the grace of God which bringeth salvation to all men, hath appeared; teaching us that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously, and godly, in this present world."*

1 Corinthians 1:18 - 24; 2 Timothy 1:8 - 10.

ITS UNCHANGEABILITY

Galatians 1:8 - *"But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed."*

1 Peter 1:25 - *"But the word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you."*

***Matthew 24:32; Acts 4:12; Revelation 14:6. 2 Nephi 1:72 - 93; 13:31; Mosiah 2:12.**

DOCTRINE OF CHRIST NECESSARY

John 7:16, 17 - "Jesus answered them, and said, My doctrine is not mine, but his that sent me. If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or whether I speak of myself."

2 John 9 - "Whosoever transgresseth, and abideth not in the doctrine of Christ, hath not God. He that abideth in the doctrine of Christ, he hath both the Father and the Son."

***Romans 6:17** - "But God be thanked, that ye are not the servants of sin, for ye have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you."

1 Timothy 4:16 - "Take heed unto thyself, and unto the doctrine; continue in them; for in doing this thou shalt both save thyself, and them that hear thee."

2 Timothy 3:14 - "But continue thou in the things which thou hast learned and hast been assured of, knowing of whom thou hast learned them."

Isaiah 28:9, 10; *Matthew 15:8; 1 Corinthians 1:10; 1 Timothy 1:3; 4:6; 5:17; 6:3; 2 Timothy 1:13; 2:2; Titus 1:9; *1 John 2:24.

2 Nephi 13:32 - "And now behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, without end."

GOSPEL, DEFINED AND EXPLAINED

In the *Standard Bible Dictionary* of 1909, Gospel is defined as "'good tidings''"; AS, *godspel*; OHG, *gotspel* - 'God - story': The N T term for the contents of the message given by Jesus Christ to the world." - Article "Gospel," page 301.

The Popular and Critical Bible Cyclopædia informs us:

"In Homer, in the sing, and in the Attic Gr., in the pl., it signified a *reward* or a *thank - offering for good tidings*. In later Greek (Plutarch, in the pl., Lucian in the sing.) it signified also the *good tidings* itself. In LXX, II Samuel iv: 10, the Attic meaning and the plural occur. Hastings *Bible Dictionary*)" - Article "Gospel" page 728.

Buck's *Theological Dictionary* offers the explanation:

GOSPEL, the revelation of the grace of God to fallen man through a mediator. It is taken also for the history of the life, actions, death, resurrection, ascension, and doctrine of Jesus Christ. The word is Saxon, and of the same import with the Latin *evangelium*, which signifies glad tidings or good news." - Article "Gospel," Page 201.

Barnes' *Notes on the Gospels* explains the term "gospel of the kingdom" to be:

"The gospel of the kingdom. The good news respecting the kingdom he was about to set up; or the good news respecting the coming of the Messiah and the nature of his kingdom." - Volume 1, "Note on Matthew 4:23."

Smith's *Dictionary of the Bible* states:

"The name Gospel (from *god* and *spell*, Angl. Sax. *good message* or *news*, which is a translation of the Greek *euaggelion*) is applied to the four inspired histories of the life and teaching of Christ obtained in the New Testament." - Article "Gospels," page 218.

McClintock and Strong's *Cyclopaedia* says of the term "gospel:"

"It is a term used to denote, 1. The annunciation of the kingdom of the Messiah, as ushered in by the coming and life of Christ; 2. The Gospel scheme "or plan of salvation thus inaugurated, especially in its promulgations." - Article "Gospels."

The People's Dictionary of the Bible, Second Edition, defines the word "Gospel":

"Gospel. From the Anglo - Saxon *God - spell*, 'good tidings,' is the English translation of the Greek *euaggelion*, which signifies 'good' or 'glad tidings' (Luke 2:10; Acts 13:32). The same word in the original is rendered in Romans 10:15 by the two equivalents 'gospel' and 'glad tidings.' The term refers to the good news of the new dispensation of redemption ushered in by the life, death, and resurrection of Jesus Christ." - Article "Gospel," page 99.

SALVATION THE MEANS

Lamentations 3:26 - *"It is good that a man should both hope and quietly wait for the salvation of the Lord."*

***Luke 1:76** - *"To give knowledge of salvation unto his people, by baptism for the remission of their sins" (77).*

Acts 4:12 - *"Neither is there salvation in any other; for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved."*

Romans 1:16 - *"For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ; for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek."*

2 Corinthians 7:10 - *"For godly sorrow worketh repentance to salvation not to be repented of; but the sorrow of the world worketh death."*

***1 Timothy 2:4** - *"Who is willing to have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth which is in Christ Jesus."*

1 Timothy 4:10 - *"For therefore we both labour and suffer reproach, because we trust in the living God, who is the Saviour of all men, specially of those that believe."*

2 Timothy 3:15 - *"And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus."*

Hebrews 7:24 - *"Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them" (25).*

Revelation 12:9 - *"And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ" (10).*

***Psalms 14:7; John 7:37, 38; Acts 13:47; 28:28; Romans 10:9; 11:11; Ephesians 1:13; I Thessalonians 5:9; Hebrews 2:3, 4; *9:28; *1 Peter 1:5, 9; 2 Peter 3:15.**

HOPE OF SALVATION

Alma 14:77 - *"Thus they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation, relying upon the spirit of prophecy, which spake of those things to come."*

Acts 24:15 - *"Have hope towards God."*

Colossians 1:5 - *"Hope laid up for you in heaven."*

Hebrews 6:19 - *"Which hope we have as an anchor of the soul, both sure and steadfast, and which entereth into that within the veil."*

Proverbs 14:32; Titus 2:13; Hebrews 3:6; 6:11, 18; 1 Peter 1:3, 13, 21.

Romans 8:24, 25 - *"For we are saved by hope; but hope that is seen is not hope; for what a man seeth, why doth he yet hope for?"*

Ephesians 1:18 - *"Hope of his calling, and riches of his glory."*

Colossians 1:23, 27 (The hope of the gospel).

BY GRACE

Romans 11:5, 6 - *"Even so then at this present time also there is a remnant according to the election of grace. And if by grace, then is it no more of works."*

*** Ephesians 2:8** - *"For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves; but it is the gift of God."*

Acts 20:32; *Romans 5:2, 15 - 21; Ephesians 2:5; *Titus 2:11; 1 Peter 3:7; Ether 2:5.

2 Nephi 7:42 - *"It is only in and through the grace of God that ye are saved."*

SALVATION ONLY THROUGH CHRIST

Isaiah 9:6 - *"And his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace."*

Acts 4:12 - *"Neither is there salvation in any other; for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved."*

Philemon 2:10 - *"That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow of things in heaven, and things in earth, and thing's under the earth."*

Revelation 19:16 - *"And he hath on a vesture, and on his thigh a name written, King of kings, and Lord of lords."*

2 Nephi 6:81, 82 - *"And the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel: and he employeth no servant there; and there is none other way, save it be by the gate, for he can not be deceived; for the Lord God is his name."*

2 Nephi 13:31 - *"Now behold, my beloved brethren, this is the way; and there is none other way nor name given under heaven, whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God."*

Alma 18:11 - *"There is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ."*

Mosiah 1:116 - *"And moreover, I say unto you, that there shall be no other name given, nor any other way nor means whereby salvation can come unto the children of men, only in and through the name of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent."*

†Genesis 6:53, 62; Romans 10:9; Ephesians 1:13; 1 Thessalonians 5:8, 9; 2 Timothy 3:15;

***Hebrews 9:28; *2 Peter 3:15. 2 Nephi 11:39, 44; Alma 8:90, 92; Helaman 4:69; Moroni 7:25.**

D&C 16:4 - *"Jesus Christ is the name which is given of the Father, and there is none other name given whereby man can be saved."*

D&C 38: 4; 42: 10; 43:6; 45:10; 77:3; 81:3; 100:1; 101:9.

JESUS THE ONLY MEDIATOR

***Galatians 3:20** - *"Now this mediator was not a mediator of the new covenant but there is one mediator of the new covenant, who is Christ, as it is written in the law concerning the promises made to Abraham and his seed."*

1 Timothy 2:5 - *"For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus."*

Hebrews 8:6 - *“He is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises.”*

***Hebrews 9:15** - *“He is the mediator of the new covenant, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first covenant, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance.”*

Hebrews 9:24 - *“For Christ is not entered into the holy places made with hands, which are the figures of the true; but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of God for us.”*

***Hebrews 7:20; 10:19; 12:24. D&C 104:9.**

2 Nephi 6:81 - *“Behold, the way for man is narrow, but it lieth in a straight course before him, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; and he employeth no servant there.”*

***Psalms 118:22** - *“The stone which the builders refused has become the head stone of the corner.”*

Matthew 21:44 - *“Jesus said unto them, Did ye never read in the Scriptures, The stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner; this is the Lord's doings, and it is marvellous in our eyes?” (42).*

Acts 4:11 - *“This is the stone which was set at naught of you builders, which is become the head of the corner.”*

Ephesians 1:22, 23 - *“And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church, which is his body.”*

SACRAMENTS AND ORDINANCES

Exodus 18:20 - *“And thou shalt teach them ordinances and laws, and shalt show them the way wherein they must walk and the work that they must do.”*

D&C 83:3 - *“In the ordinances . . . the power of godliness is manifest; and without the ordinances thereof, and the authority of the priesthood, the power of godliness is not manifest unto men in the flesh; for without this no man can see the face of God, even the Father, and live.”*

No attempt is made here to present an explicit distinction between the sacraments and the ordinances of the gospel. In general, they are the outward acts, observances, and ceremonial customs and practices of the church which have originated in specific divine commandments and in the ministry of Christ.

It is considered inadvisable, because of the scriptural arrangement of the “Principles of the Gospel,” and for other reasons, to bring all the ordinances and sacraments into a group by themselves. For the convenience of the reader they are named here, and will be found discussed in the following pages. Any one of them may be found by consulting the Index.

THE PRINCIPLES OF THE GOSPEL

***Hebrews 6:1, 2** - *“Therefore not leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again the foundation of repentance from dead works, and of faith toward God, of the doctrine of baptisms, of laying on of hands, and of the resurrection of the dead, and of eternal judgment.”*

FAITH

FAITH DEFINED

***Hebrews 11:1** - *“Now faith is the assurance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.”*

NECESSITY OF FAITH

Matthew 9:35 - *"Then touched he their eyes, saying, According to your faith, be it unto you" (29).*

Ephesians 6:16 - *"Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked."*

Hebrews 11:6 - *"But without faith it is impossible to please him; for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and that he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him."*

James 1:6, 7 - *"But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering; for he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed. For let not that man think that he shall receive any thing of the Lord."*

***Romans 14:23; 1 Peter 1:9; 1 John 5:4.**

Moroni 7:24, 25 - *"Thus by faith, they did lay hold upon every good thing . . . men also were saved by faith in his name; and by faith, they become the sons of God."*

D&C 63:3 - *"Without faith no man pleaseth God."*

1 Nephi 1:53 - 58.

OBJECTS OF FAITH

GOD

2 Chronicles 20:20 - *"Believe in the Lord your God, so shall ye be established; believe his prophets, so shall ye prosper."*

Psalms 37:3 - *"Trust in the Lord, and do good; so shalt thou dwell in the land, and verily thou shalt be fed."*

***Mark 11:24** - *"And Jesus spake and said unto him, Have faith in God." (22).*

Psalms 4:5; 62:8; Proverbs 3:5; *John 5:24; 1 Timothy 4:10; 6:17.

2 Nephi 15:4 - *"I cry unto my God in faith, and I know that he will hear my cry."*

CHRIST

John 3:16 - *"For God so loved the world, that he gave his Only Begotten Son, that whosoever believeth on him should not perish; but have everlasting life."*

***John 6:40** - *"And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life; and I will raise him up in the resurrection of the just."*

John 14:1 - *"Let not your hearts be troubled; ye believe in God, believe also in me."*

John 6:29, 47; 8:24; 11:25; 12:46; 20:31; Acts 4:12; 10:43; Hebrews 12:2; 1 John 2:23; *5:1, 5, 13.

2 Nephi 11:26 - *"Until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and in the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind."*

Helaman 5:62 - *"And it shall come to pass that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall have everlasting life."*

2 Nephi 13:27 - 30 Helaman 5:59 - 74; Ether 5:15, 18.

D&C 17:6 - *"And we know that all men must repent and believe on the name of Jesus Christ and worship the Father in his name. . . . or they can not be saved in the kingdom of God."*

D&C 2:6; 5:10; 10:5.

THE GOSPEL

Mark 1:12, 13 - *"Jesus came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of the kingdom of God; and saying, The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand; repent ye, and believe the gospel" (14, 15).*

Mark 16:14 - 16 - *“And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature. He that believeth and is baptized, shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned. And these signs shall follow them that believe”* (15 - 17).

1 Corinthians 15:1, 2 - *“Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel . . . by which also ye are saved, if ye keep in memory what I preached unto you, unless ye have believed in vain.”*

1 Peter 1:25 - *“The word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.”*

1 Thessalonians 2:13; Hebrews 3:12, 18, 19; 4:2, 6.

D&C 2:6 - *“And that they might believe the gospel and rely upon the merits of Jesus Christ.”*

THE WITNESS OF THE PROPHETS

***Matthew 5:19, 20** - *“Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets; I am not come to destroy, but to fulfill. For verily I say unto you, heaven and earth must pass away, but one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, until all be fulfilled”* (17, 18).

John 5:40, 47 - *“Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life; and they are they which testify of me. . . . For had ye believed Moses, ye would have believed me; for he wrote of me”* (39, 46).

Acts 26:22 - *“I continue unto this day, witnessing both to small and great, saying none other things than those which the prophets and Moses did say should come.”*

Isaiah 8:20; *Luke 16:36; 24:26; Acts 13:27; 26:27; 28:23; 1 Peter 1:10, 11.

THE PROMISES OF GOD

Numbers 23:19 - *“God is not a man, that he should lie; neither the son of man, that he should repent; hath he said, and shall he not do it? or hath he spoken, and shall he not make it good?”*

Romans 4:20, 21 - *“He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God; and being fully persuaded, that what he had promised, he was able also to perform”*

Hebrews 6:12 - *“That ye be not slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises.”*

Acts 26:6; 2 Corinthians 1:20; Hebrews 11:13.

1 Nephi 2:19 - *“And if it so be that we are faithful to him, we shall obtain the land of promise.”*

D&C 2:6 - *“That the promises of the Lord might be fulfilled, which he made to his people.”*

THE POWER OF FAITH

***Luke 17:6** - *“And the Lord said, If you had faith as a grain of mustard seed, you might say unto this sycamore tree, Be thou plucked up by the roots, and be thou planted in the sea; and it should obey you.”*

***Acts 3:16** - *“And this man, through faith in his name, hath been made strong, whom ye see and know.”*

Hebrews 11:4, 5, 33 - *“By faith Abel offered unto God a more excellent sacrifice than Cain, by which he obtained witness that he was righteous. . . . By faith Enoch was translated that he should not see death. . . . Who through faith subdued kingdoms, wrought righteousness, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions.”*

James 5:15 - *“And the prayer of faith shall save the sick, and the Lord shall raise him up; and if he have committed sins, they shall be forgiven him.”*

Matthew 17:20; 21:19, 20; *Mark 11:25; Ephesians 6:16; *Hebrews 11:24 - 39; James 5:16 - 18; * 1 Peter 1:9; 1 John 5:4.

Mormon 4:84 - *“Behold I say unto you, that whoso believeth in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ, it shall be granted him and this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.”*

D&C 28:2 - *“Whatsoever ye shall ask in faith, being united in prayer according to my command, ye shall receive.”*

JUSTIFICATION BY FAITH

***Romans 3:28** - *“Therefore we conclude that man is justified by faith alone without the deeds of the law.”*

Romans 5:1 - *“Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.”*

***Galatians 3:24** - *“Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster until Christ, that we might be justified by faith.”*

FAITH SHOWN BY WORKS

Luke 6:46 - *“And why call ye me Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?”*

John 14:12 - *“He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also.”*

John 14:21 - *“He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me.”*

Ephesians 2:10 - *“We are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.”*

1 Timothy 2:9, 10 - *“That women adorn themselves in modest apparel. . . . not with braided hair, or gold, or pearls, or costly array; but (which becometh women professing godliness) with good works.”*

2 Timothy 3:16, 17 - *“All scripture given by inspiration of God is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness; that the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works. “*

Titus 1:16 - *“They profess that they know God; but in works they deny him, being abominable, and disobedient.”*

Titus 2:14 - *“Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify unto himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works.”*

Titus 3:8 - *“This is a faithful saying, and these things I will that thou affirm constantly, that they which have believed in God might be careful to maintain good works.”*

James 1:25 - *“But whoso looketh into the perfect law of liberty, and continueth therein, he being not a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work, this man shall be blessed in his deed.”*

***James 2:14, 17** - *“What profit is it, my brethren for a man to say he hath faith, and hath not works? can faith save him? Even so faith, if it have not works is dead, being alone.”*

Matthew 7:34, 35; *Luke 8:21; *11:29; John 15:14; *Romans 4:16; *James 2:25; Revelation 14:12.

1 Thessalonians 5:8 - *“But let us, who are of the day, be sober, putting on the breastplate of faith and love; and for an helmet, the hope of salvation.”*

Psalms 31:24; 33:18; 42:5; 71:5; 146:5; Joel 3:16; Romans 12:12 (Rejoicing in hope).

2 Thessalonians 2:16; 1 John 3:3.

D&C 4:1 - *“Faith, hope, charity, and love, with an eye single to the glory of God, qualifies him for the work.”*

D&C 6:8 - *“Be patient; be sober; be temperate; have patience faith, hope, and charity.”*

D&C 11:4 - *"No one can assist in this work except he shall be humble and full of love, having faith, hope, and charity, being temperate in all things."*

D&C 16 4 - *"And if you have not faith, hope, and charity, you can do nothing."*

REPENTANCE NECESSITY

†Genesis 5:1, 2 - *"And the Lord God called upon men, by the Holy Ghost, everywhere, and commanded them that they should repent; and as many as believed in the Son, and repented of their sins, should be saved. And as many as believed not, and repented not, should be damned."*

Matthew 4:16 - *"From that time, Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand" (17).*

Mark 1:13 - *"The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand; repent ye, and believe the gospel" (15).*

***Luke 13:3** - *"I tell you, nay; but except you repent, you shall all likewise perish."*

Luke 24:46 - *"And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem" (47).*

†Genesis 6:27 - 30, 59; †7:12; †8:8; Matthew 3:28; 9:14; Acts 2:38; 17:30; 20:21.

2 Nephi 1:108, 109 - *"He gave commandment that all men must repent; for he shewed unto all men that they were lost, because of the transgression of their parents."*

Alma 7:13 - *"He commandeth you to repent; and except ye repent, ye can in no wise inherit the kingdom of God."*

1 Nephi 3:210 - 213; 2 Nephi 6:48, 49; 13:14; Mosiah 8:88, 89; 9:53; 11:138 - 140; Alma 5:24 - 28; 13:51; Helaman 5:63, 65, 67, 72 - 74; 3 Nephi 4:26, 50 - 52, 58; 5:24, 39, 40; 12:29, 33.

D&C 6:4; 10:4 - *"Say nothing but repentance unto this generation."*

D&C 17:6 - *"All men must repent."*

D&C 43:5 - *"Call upon the nations to repent, both old and young, both bond and free; saying, Prepare yourselves for the great day of the Lord."*

D&C 64:2 - *"He that repenteth not of his sins, and confesseth them not, then ye shall bring him before the church."*

D&C 5:4; 10:4; 17:7; 18:4; 32:2; 39:2; 53:2.

GOD'S GOODNESS LEADS TO

Romans 2:4 - *"Or despisest thou the riches of his goodness and forbearance and longsuffering; not knowing that the goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance?"*

2 Peter 3:9 - *"The Lord is . . . longsuffering towards us, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance."*

IS MORE THAN SORROW FOR SIN

2 Corinthians 7:9, 10 - *"Now I rejoice, not that ye were made sorry, but that ye sorrowed to repentance; for ye were made sorry after a godly manner. . . . For godly sorrow worketh repentance to salvation not to be repented of; but the sorrow of the world worketh death."*

D&C 3:16 - *"Whosoever repenteth and cometh unto me the same is my church."*

IS FORSAKING OF SIN

Isaiah 1:17, 25 - "Cease to do evil; learn to do well; seek judgment, relieve the oppressed, judge the fatherless, Plead for the widow. . . . And I will turn my hand upon thee, and purely purge away thy dross."

Isaiah 55:7 - "Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts; and let him return unto the Lord, and he will have mercy upon him."

***Jeremiah 26:13** - "Therefore now, amend your ways and your doings, and obey the voice of the Lord your God, and repent, and the Lord will turn away the evil that he hath pronounced against you."

Ezekiel 18:21 - "But if the wicked will turn from all his sins that he hath committed, and keep all my statutes, and do that which is lawful and right, he shall surely live, he shall not die."

James 4:8 - "Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you. Cleanse your hands, ye sinners, and purify your hearts, ye doubleminded."

Jeremiah 7:3; Ezekiel 18:27, 28; 33:14 - 16; Daniel 4:27.

Mosiah 2:16 - "Ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God."

Alma 19:13 - "Now, my son, I would that ye should repent and forsake your sins."

FOLLOWED BY RESTITUTION

Leviticus 6:1 - 5 - "*And the Lord spake unto Moses, saying, If a soul sin, and commit a trespass against the Lord, . . . then it shall be, because he hath sinned, and is guilty, that he shall restore that which he took violently away, or the thing which he hath deceitfully gotten, or that which was delivered him to keep, or the lost thing which he found, or all that about which he hath sworn falsely; he shall even restore it in the principal, and shall add the fifth part more thereto, and give it unto him to whom it appertaineth, in the day of his trespass offering.*"

Matthew 3:35 - "*Repent, therefore, and bring forth fruits meet for repentance*" (8).

Acts 26:20; Revelation 2:5.

TRUE REPENTANCE EXEMPLIFIED

Judges 10:16 - "And they put away the strange gods from among them, and served the Lord."

Jonah 3:10 - "And God saw their works that they turned from their evil way and repented; and God turned away the evil that he had said he would bring upon them."

2 Corinthians 7:9 - 11.

Mosiah 9:28, 29 - "Alma . . . repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, . . . concerning . . . the redemption of the people, which was to be brought to pass through the power, the suffering, and death of Christ."

BAPTISM

GOD'S PURPOSE IS HUMAN REGENERATION

Deuteronomy 30:6 - "*The Lord thy God will circumcise thine heart, and the heart of thy seed, to love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, that thou mayest live.*"

Psalms 51:10 - "*Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me.*"

Isaiah 1:18 - "*Come now, and let us reason together, saith the Lord; though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool.*"

Ezekiel 18:31 - "*Cast away from you all your transgressions, whereby ye have transgressed; and make you a new heart and a new spirit: for why will ye die, O house of Israel?*"

Matthew 18:2 - *“Except ye be converted, and become as little children, ye shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven” (3).*

***John 1:12** - *“But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God; only to them who believe on his name.”*

John 3:3 - *“Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.”*

2 Corinthians 5:17 - *“Therefore if any man live in Christ, he is a new creature; old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.”*

***Ephesians 4:22 - 24** - *“That ye put off the old man, which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts; and be renewed in the mind of the Spirit; and that ye put on the new man, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness.”*

Colossians 3:9 - *“Lie not one to another, seeing that ye have put off the old man with his deeds; and have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him.”*

Titus 3:5 - *“Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost.”*

James 1:18 - *“Of his own will begat he us with the word of truth, that we should be a kind of first-fruits of his creatures.”*

1 John 2:29 - *“If ye know that he is righteous, ye know that every one that doeth righteousness is born of him.”*

***1 John 3:9** - *“Whosoever is born of God doth not continue in sin; for the Spirit of God remaineth in him; and he can not continue in sin, because he is born of God, having received that Holy Spirit of promise.”*

3 Nephi 4: 47 - *“And as many as have received me, to them have given to become the sons of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name, for behold, by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled.”*

D&C 83:6 - *“For whoso is faithful unto the obtaining these two priesthoods of which I have spoken, and the magnifying their calling, are sanctified by the Spirit unto the renewing of their bodies: they become the sons of Moses and of Aaron, and the seed of Abraham, and the church and kingdom and the elect of God.*

†Genesis 6:62; 1 Samuel 10:6; Psalms 51:10 - 13; Jeremiah 24:7; Ezekiel 11:19, 20; 36:26, 27; Acts 26:18; *Romans 12:2; Galatians 2:20; 6:15; Ephesians 2:1 - 5; Colossians 3:10; 1 Peter 1:23; 1 John 4:7; 5:1, 4, *18.

D&C 17:6; 24:1; 33:1; 34:1; 39:1; 68:1.

NECESSITY OF WATER BAPTISM

***Matthew 3:41 - 45** - *“And then cometh Jesus from Galilee to Jordan, unto John, to be baptized of him; but John refused him, saying, I have need to be baptized of thee, and why comest thou to me? And Jesus, answering, said unto him, Suffer me to be baptized of thee, for thus it becometh us to fulfill all righteousness. Then he suffered him. And John went down into the water and baptized him. And Jesus when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water” (13 - 16).*

Matthew 28:18 - *“Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost” (19).*

***Luke 7:29, 30** - *“And all the people who heard him, and the publicans, justified God, being baptized with the baptism of John. But the Pharisees, and lawyers, rejected the counsel of God against themselves, not being baptized of him.”*

Acts 10:48 - *“And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord.”*

†Genesis 6:54, 61 - 63 - *“And our father Adam spake unto the Lord, and said, Why is it that men must repent, and be baptized in water? . . . By reason of transgression cometh the fall, which fall bringeth death; and inasmuch as ye were born into the world by water and blood, and the spirit, which I have made, and so became of dust a living soul; even so ye must be born again, into the kingdom of heaven, of water, and of the Spirit, and be cleansed by blood, even the blood of mine Only Begotten. . . .For, by the water ye keep the commandment; by the Spirit ye are justified; and by the blood ye are sanctified.”*

†Genesis 8:11 - *“And it came to pass that Noah continued his preaching unto the people, saying, Harken and give heed unto my words, believe and repent of your sins and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of God.”*

†Genesis 6:53, 67; †7:13; Acts 10:5, 6, 47, 48.

2 Nephi 6:48 - *“And he commandeth all men that they must repent and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they can not be saved in the kingdom of God.”*

2 Nephi 13:7 - *“Now, if the Lamb of God, he being holy, should have to be baptized by water to fulfill all righteousness, O then, how much more need have we, being unholy, to be baptized.”*

1 Nephi 3:73, 74; 2 Nephi 6:48; 13:24; Mosiah 11:94 - 96; Alma 5:24 - 28; Helaman 2:79 - 81; 3 Nephi 5:21 - 28; Mormon 3:30, 33.

D&C 16:4 - *“As many as repent, and are baptized in my name, which is Jesus Christ, and endure to the end, the same shall be saved.”*

D&C 16:6 - *“For all men must repent and be baptized, and not Only men, but women; and children who have arrived to the years of accountability.”*

D&C 39:2, 5; 42:2; 55:1; 68:1 ; 83:10.

OBJECT OF BAPTISM

Mark 1:3 - *“John did baptize in the wilderness, and preach the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins” (4).*

Acts 2:38 - *“Then Peter said unto them, Repent and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins. and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.”*

Acts 22:16 - *“And now why tarriest thou? arise, and be baptized, and wash away thy sins, calling on the name of the Lord.”*

Galatians 3:27 - *“For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.”*

†Genesis 6:62; †Matthew 5:4; Mark 1:3; *Luke 1:76; 3:3; 1 Peter 3:21.

2 Nephi 13:24 - *“For the gate by which ye should enter is repentance and baptism by water, and then cometh a remission of your sins.”*

Mosiah 9:41 - *“If this be the desire of your hearts, what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him that ye will serve him and keep his commandments.”*

Alma 21:142; Moroni 8:4 - 16.

D&C 32:2 - *“Repent and be baptized every one of you, for the remission of your sins.”*

D&C 83:4 - *“Which gospel is the gospel of repentance and of baptism, and of the remission of sins.”*

D&C 18:4.

SUBJECTS OF BAPTISM

***Matthew 3:38** - *“I indeed baptize you with water, upon your repentance” (11).*

Mark 16:15 - *“He that believeth and is baptized, shall be saved; but he that believeth not, shall be damned” (16).*

Acts 2:41 - *“Then they that gladly received his word were baptized; and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls.”*

Acts 8:37 - *“And Philip said, If thou believest with all thine heart, thou mayest. And he answered and said, I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God.”*

Acts 16:14, 15, 30 - 33.

Helaman 5:110 - *“And as many as believed on his word . . . when they had come forth and found him, they confessed unto him their sins, and denied not, desiring that they might be baptized unto the Lord.”*

Moroni 6:3 - *“And none were received unto baptism, save they took upon them the name of Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end.”*

Alma 5:24 - 27; 21:142, 143; Helaman 5:110 - 116; Moroni 6:1 - 4.

D&C 17:7 - *“All those who humble themselves before God and desire to be baptized, and come forth with broken hearts and contrite spirits, and witness before the church that they have truly repented of all their sins, and are willing to take upon them the name of Jesus Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end, and truly manifest by their works that they have received of the Spirit of Christ unto the remission of their sins, shall be received by baptism into his church.”*

MEANING OF THE WORD

The words “baptize,” “baptized,” and “baptizing” are all from the Greek word *baptizo*, which means to immerse, submerge, overwhelm, dip, or wash by immersing, as defined by authors of Greek lexicons and other authorities. The word “baptism” is of the same meaning, from the Greek *baptisma*, a derived form of *baptize*.

Robinson in the *History of Baptism*, page 5, states the native Greek always baptized by immersion. Eusebius states how aspersion came to be used. Novatus was supposed to be at the point of death. In the early centuries immersion was not dispensed with but aspersion was permitted in emergencies.

WHO BAPTIZED

See apostles.

John the Baptist *Matthew 3:32, 40, 41; Mark 1:3, 4, 6, 7; *Luke 3:28; *John 1:27, 31.

Jesus, *John 4:1 - 3,

His disciples, *John 4:3; Acts 2:41.

Philip, Acts 8:12.

Ananias, Acts 9:18.

Paul, Acts 16:33.

Elders, D. and C 17:8; 124:5.

Priests, D&C 17:10, 104:10.

Alma, Mosiah 9:45 - 47.

Ammon, Alma 12:178.

Helaman, Alma 29:55.

Nephi, Helaman 2:81; 3 Nephi 1:27.

Disciples of Jesus, 3 Nephi 5:22, 44.

MODE OF ADMINISTERING BAPTISM

***Matthew 3:44, 45** - "And John went down into the water and baptized him. And Jesus when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water" (16).

***John 3:5, 24** - "Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water, and the Spirit, he can not enter into the kingdom of God. . . . And John was also baptizing in Aenon, near to Salim because there was much water there; and they came and were baptized" (23).

Acts 8:38 - "And he commanded the chariot to stand still; and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him."

Romans 6: 4 - "Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death; that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life."

Colossians 2:12 - "Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead."

†Genesis 6:67; Acts 8:39; Romans 6:5; 1 Corinthians 10:2; Ephesians 5:26; Titus 3:5.

3 Nephi 5:26 - "And then shall ye immerse them in the water and come forth again out of the water."

Mosiah 9:43 - 47; 11:95; Alma 2:4; 3 Nephi 9:12 - 14.

D&C 17:21 - "The person who is called of God, and has authority from Jesus Christ to baptize, shall go down into the water with the person who has presented him or herself for baptism, and shall say . . . Then shall he immerse him or her in the water."

D&C 110:12 - "To be immersed in the water and come forth out of the water, is in the likeness of the resurrection of the dead in coming forth out of their graves."

HISTORY OF BAPTISM

That the baptism of John as the prophet forerunner of Jesus was by immersion, is shown by Mosheim, in his *Institutes of Ecclesiastical History*, in which Dr. Mosheim states concerning John: "And those who professed repentance and reformation, he initiated in the approaching kingdom of the Saviour, by immersion in the Jordan, Matthew 3:2, &c.; John 1:22, &c. Jesus himself, before commencing his public ministry, chose to receive a solemn lustration in the waters of Jordan at the hands of *John*;" - Book 1, Century 1, Part 1, chapter 3, Section 3.

Of baptism in the first century he states:

"In this century *baptism* was administered in convenient places, without the public assemblies; and by immersing the candidate wholly in water." - *Ibid.*, Part 2, chapter 4, Section 8.

Of baptism in the second century, he states:

"The candidates for it were immersed wholly in water, with invocation of the sacred Trinity, according to the Saviour's precept, after they had repeated what they called the *Creed*, (*Symbolum*), and had renounced all their sins and transgressions, and especially the *devil* and his *pomp*." - *Ibid.*, Century 2, Part 2, chapter 4, Section 13.

Tertullian, one of the most esteemed fathers, and living in the second century, wrote that immersion was the mode practiced by the church at that time, and also says:

"When entering the water, we make profession of the Christian faith in the words of its rule." - *De Spectaculis*, chapter 4.

“When we are going to enter the water, but a little before, in the presence of the congregation and under the hand of the president, we solemnly profess that we disown the devil, and his pomp, and his angels. Hereupon we are immersed.” - *De Carona*, chapter 3.

“We, after the example of Jesus Christ, are born in water. . . . The *act* of baptism itself is carnal, in that we are plunged in water; but the *effect* is spiritual, in that we are freed from *sins*.” - *On Baptism*, chapters 1 and 7.

Above taken from The Ante - Nicene Fathers.

Epistles of the Apostolic Fathers, Canterbury translation, 1834 edition says:

“Blessed are they who put their trust in the cross, descend into the water; . . . we go down into the water full of sins and pollution; but come up again bringing forth fruit; having in our hearts the fear and hope which is in Jesus, by the Spirit.” - *General Epistle of Barnabas*, chapter 10, verses 11, 14.

The Works of S. Justin the Martyr, Oxford Edition, 1861, thus quotes Justin:

“All then who are persuaded, and believe, that the things which are taught, and affirmed by us are true; and who promise to be able to live accordingly; are taught to pray, and beg God with fasting, to grant them forgiveness of their former sins; . . . Then we bring them where there is water; and after the same manner of regeneration as we also were regenerated ourselves, they are regenerated; for, in the Name of God, the Father and Lord of all things, and of our Saviour Jesus Christ, and of the Holy Ghost, they then received the washing of water.” - “First Apology for the Christians to Antoninus Pius,” paragraph 61, page 46.

Calvin in his Institutes says:

“The word *baptizo* (baptize) signifies to immerse, and the rite of immersion was performed by the ancient church.”

Beza, one of the Genevan reformers of the sixteenth century, wrote in his epistle concerning Mark 7:4.

“Christ commanded us to be baptized, by which word it is certain that immersion is signified.”

John Wesley in His note upon Romans 6:4 says that Paul in this text refers to immersion, which was the mode of baptism practiced in the primitive church.

Bloomfield, an English Bishop of the early part of this century, in his *Critical Digest* speaks as follows of the same text:

“Baptism, or our immersion into water, according to the ancient mode of administering it, is a figure of our burial with Christ, and of our conformity with His death, and so signifies our dying to sin, and our walking in newness of life.”

Beza says further:

“We are dead to sin and buried with Christ that we may rise again unto righteousness.”

Sherlock, an English clergyman of two centuries ago, wrote in relation to the same text:

“There is plainly here a reference to the ancient mode of baptism by immersion; and I agree that there is reason to regret that it should have been abandoned in most Christian churches, especially as it has so evidently a reference to the mystic sense of baptism.”

The last three quotations are gathered from the Revelation William Jenks' *Comprehensive Commentary*.

Another writer quotes from other authors as follows:

Vitringa, a Dutch commentator, says on page 884 of his theological work:

“The act of baptizing is the immersion of believers in water. This expresses the force of the word. Thus also it was performed by Christ and his apostles.”

Salmasius, a French theological teacher in a German university two hundred and fifty years ago, says on page 669 of his work:

“Baptism is immersion, and was administered in former times according to the force and meaning of that word.”

Gahan, a Catholic historian says that Novatus was baptized in bed, and he adds that it was not by immersion, which, he says, “was then the usual method.” The Catholics defend the change to sprinkling by saying that the authorities of the church, as the successors of Peter and holding the keys, had a right to change the ordinance if they thought necessary.

Neander, who is considered as having been one of the greatest of ecclesiastical historians, in his letter to Judd, as found on page 194 of the latter’s Reply to Stewart, wrote as follows:

“As to your question on the original rite of baptism, there can be no doubt whatever that in the primitive times it was performed by immersion, to signify a complete immersion into the new principle of the divine life which was to be imparted by the Messiah.”

The late Charles Anthon, Professor of Languages in Columbia College, New York, in a letter to Dr. E

Parmeley, written March 27, 1843, said:

“The primary meaning of the word (*baptizo*) is to dip or immerse; and its secondary meaning, if it ever had any, all refer, in some way or other, to the same leading idea. Sprinkling, etc., are entirely out of the question.”

Smith, in his *Dictionary of the Bible*, says:

“Baptism properly and literally means *immersion*. . . . The language of the New Testament and of the primitive fathers sufficiently points to immersion as the common mode of baptism.” - Page 73.

The work of C. H. Ball presents this convincing summary:

“We bring forward 16 of these distinguished authors of Greek dictionaries whose authority is received in colleges, universities, and seminaries of all denominations; their names are Scapula, Henricus, Stephanus, Bass, Robertson, Donnagun, Pickering, Schleusner, Pastor, Parkhurst Greenfield, Bretschneider, Storking, Liddel, Scott, and Robinson. These men were all members of Pedo - Baptist churches (i. e., those observing infant sprinkling, etc.), but were so learned, impartial, honest, and scholarly, that their sectarian relations did not bias their minds; they all agree upon the meaning of *baptizo*, there is no dissent nor disagreement; the whole 16 declare as scholars learned in the language of the New Testament that *baptizo* means to immerse, plunge, dip, wash by immersing, sink, submerge, overwhelm, and not one of them ever defines it to mean sprinkle in any case or under any circumstances whatever.” - *Christian Baptism*, page 25.

Neander’s *History of the Christian Religion and Church*, which covers the first three centuries, in a translation by Henry J. Rose, late Fellow of St. John’s College, published in 1843, states:

“Baptism was originally administered by immersion, and many of the comparisons of St. Paul allude to this form of its administration: the immersion is a symbol of death, of being buried with Christ,

the coming forth from the water is a symbol of a resurrection with Christ, and both taken together represent the second birth, the death of the old man and a resurrection to a new life." - Section III, page 197.

Of immersion in the fourth century, the statement of Venema is quoted:

"Immersion, in the *fourth* century, was one of those acts that were considered as essential to baptism; nevertheless, aspersion was used in the last moments of life, on such as were called clinics, and also, where there was not sufficient quantity of water." - Quoted in *Presidency and Priesthood*, page 368.

BAPTISM IMMEDIATELY AFTER REPENTANCE

Of the first century, Mosheim states concerning preparation for baptism:

"At the first promulgation of the gospel, all who professed firmly to believe that *Jesus* was the only redeemer of mankind, and who promised to lead a holy life conformable to the religion he taught, were received immediately among the disciples of *Christ*: nor did a more full instruction in the principles of Christianity *precede their baptism*, but followed after it. But afterwards, when churches were everywhere established and organized, for very just reasons this custom was changed; and none were admitted to the sacred font unless previously well instructed in the primary truths of religion, and affording indubitable evidence of a sincere and holy character." - Part 2, chapter 3, Section 5.

CHILDREN OF CHRISTIANS INSTRUCTED

"There can be no doubt, but that the children of Christians were carefully trained up from their infancy, and were early put to reading the sacred books and learning the principles of religion. For this purpose, *schools* were erected everywhere from the beginning. From these schools for children, we must distinguish those *seminaries of the early Christians*, erected extensively in the larger cities, at which adults and especially such as aspired to be public teachers, were instructed and educated in all branches of learning both human and divine. . . . Among these seminaries, in subsequent times, none was more celebrated than that at *Alexandria*; which is commonly called a *catechetical school*, and was said to be erected by **St. Mark*." - *Ibid.*, Section 7.

*A footnote by the translator indicates that this school was more probably established in the second century, the evidence being insufficient to ascribe it to St. Mark.

POURING AND SPRINKLING

The following is found in Robinson's *History of Baptism*, chapter thirty - three:

"It was not until the legislature in a Council at Ravenna, in the year 1311, declared immersion and pouring indifferent."

Professor Stuart quotes Brenner, as follows:

"For thirteen hundred years was baptism generally and ordinarily performed by the immersion of a man under water; and only in extraordinary cases were sprinkling or effusion (pouring) permitted. " In his *Ecclesiastical History*, as translated by Cruse, Eusebius gives us the first instance on record of aspersion or sprinkling (about A.D. 249 - 251), as recited by Cornelius, bishop of Rome. This was Novatus, who later caused havoc in the church by heresies. Of him he states:

“Who, aided by the exorcists, when attended with an obstinate disease, and being supposed at the point of death, was baptized by aspersion, in the bed on which he lay; if, indeed, it be proper to say that one like him did receive baptism. But neither, when he recovered from disease, did he partake of other things, which the *rules of the church prescribe as duty, nor was he sealed (in confirmation) by the bishop. But as he did not obtain this, how could he obtain the Holy Spirit?” - Chapter 43, page 251.

*A footnote by Vales explains this reference to rules by stating:

“The canon was, that they who were baptized in their beds, if they recovered again, should afterwards go to the bishop, that he might supply what was wanting in that baptism.”

When, though not properly baptized or confirmed, attempt was made by one of the bishops to ordain Novatus to the priesthood, it was strongly opposed. Of this the narrative informs us:

“As all the clergy and many of the *laity resisted it, since it was not lawful that one baptized in his sickbed by aspersion, as he was, should be promoted to any order of the clergy, the bishop requested that it should be granted him to ordain only this one.” - *Ibid.*, pages 251, 252.

*A footnote states that “Formerly, bishops could not ordain priests without the consent of the clergy and people.”

Dionysius, Bishop of Alexandria in that time, says of this and of the heresies introduced by Novatus, that he had drawn some of the brethren into impiety and blasphemy, and that his heresy, “besides all this, sets aside the holy baptism.”

Venema says that aspersion was not used till the third century, and then only “in cases of necessity,” and was counted “a half perfect baptism.” Of the fourth century, he says that it was used in the last moments of life, and also where there was not sufficient water for the proper baptism.

INFANT BAPTISM

The following authorities clearly show that infant baptism was an innovation introduced in the church long after Christ and his apostles. Martin Luther, of unquestioned education in church doctrine and history, frankly admitted:

“It cannot be proved by the sacred Scriptures that infant baptism was instituted by Christ, or begun by the first Christians after the *apostles*.” - *Vanity of Infant Baptism*, Part 2 page 8. (Quoted in *Presidency and Priesthood*, page 370.)

In his history, previously quoted, Neander declares:

“As faith and baptism are constantly so closely connected together in the New Testament, an opinion was likely to arise, that where there could be no faith, there could also be no baptism. It is certain that Christ did not ordain infant baptism; . . . We cannot prove that the apostles ordained infant baptism; from those places where the baptism of a whole family is mentioned, as in Acts 16:33, 1 Corinthians 1:16, we can draw no such conclusion, because the inquiry is still to be made, whether there were any children in these families of such an age, that they were not capable of any intelligent reception of Christianity, for this is the only point on which the case turns.” - Section 3, page 198.

He shows that the noted Tertullian (C. A.D. 160 - 230) *opposed it*, and states:

“Tertullian appeared as a zealous opponent of infant baptism, a proof that it was not then usually considered as an apostolical ordinance, for in that case he could hardly have ventured to speak so strongly against it.” - *Ibid.*, page 199.

Smith’s Dictionary of the Bible states some reasons for rejecting infant baptism, as follows:

“The silence of the New Testament concerning the baptism of infants, the constant mention of faith as a pre - requisite or condition of baptism, the great spiritual blessings which seem attached to a right reception of it, and the responsibility entailed on those who have taken its obligations on themselves, seem the chief objections urged against pedo - baptism.” - See “Baptism,” VIII.

Neander’s history states of those who first urged infant baptism:

“As it was in the North African Church that the necessity of infant baptism was first peculiarly insisted on, so also did they join with this notion that of *infant communion*.” - Section 3, page 213.

HERETICAL AND SECTARIAN BAPTISMS VOID

Early church views on sectarian baptisms are noted in Neander’s history as follows:

“In Asia Minor and the neighboring regions, the light in which it was regarded was this, that only such baptism as had been administered in the orthodox Church, in which alone all religious rites could be duly administered, was valid, that the baptism of heretics was to be looked upon as of no value, and, therefore, that the true baptism must be administered to one who came over from one of the sects, just as to a heathen.” - Section 3, page 203.

The same position was taken by other leading church officials; Neander states:

“That the Alexandrian Church also rejected the baptism administered in the churches of heretics, is clearly deducible from the declaration of Dionysius, in his letter to Sixtus II, bishop of Rome.” - *Ibid.*, page 205, footnote.

Cyprian (c. 200 - 258), bishop of Carthage held likewise, Neander says:

“Cyprian reproaches his adversaries here with an inconsistency, against which they could not well defend themselves - it was this: if the baptism of the heretical Churches had an objective validity, their confirmation must equally have an objective validity also.” - *Ibid.*, page 206.

THE BAPTISM OF CHILDREN

In the *Works of Justin Martyr*, Oxford Edition, 1861, the requirements of the early church for baptism are stated, and would debar children who had not reached the age of accountability.

Justin, who lived about A.D. 100 - 165, explains:

“All then who are persuaded, and believe, that the things which are taught and affirmed by us are true; and who promise to be able to live accordingly; are taught to pray, and beg God with fasting, to grant them forgiveness of their former sins; and we pray and fast with them. Then we bring them where there is water; and after the same manner of regeneration as we also were regenerated ourselves, they are regenerated; for in the Name of God, the Father and Lord of all things, and of our Savior Jesus Christ, and of the Holy Ghost, they then receive the washing of water; for, indeed, Christ also said, *Except ye be born again, ye shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven.*” - “*First Apology*,” Section 61, pages 46, 47. (Critics believe this “Apology,” was written about A. D. 139, its being addressed to Antoninus Pius, of that period.)

Neander’s history, concerning the baptism of children, states of Tertullian:

“He takes occasion to declare himself particularly against haste in the baptism of children. . . . ‘let them become Christians, after they have had an opportunity of knowing Christ. Why does the age of innocence hasten to the forgiveness of sins?’ . . . Tertullian (desires that children may be brought to Christ, while they are being instructed in Christianity; but he does not wish them to receive baptism until they have been sufficiently instructed in Christianity, and from their own conviction and free choice, with earnest longings of the heart, desire baptism themselves.” - Section 3, page 199.

BAPTISM FOR THE DEAD

1 Corinthians 15:29 - *“Else what shall they do which are baptized for the dead, if the dead rise not at all? Why are they then baptized for the dead?”*

D&C 107:10 - *“That they, my saints, may be baptized for those who are dead; for this ordinance belongeth to my house.”*

D. and C. 109:5, 6 - *“Verily, thus saith the Lord unto you concerning your dead: When any of you are baptized for your dead, let there be a recorder; and let him be eye witness of your baptisms; . . . Let all the records be had in order, that they may be put in the archives of my holy temple, and be held in remembrance from generation to generation, saith the Lord of hosts.”*

D&C 110:1 - 18.

Considerable mystery has attached to Paul’s teaching or reference to baptism for the dead.

Barnes’ *Notes* (1 Corinthians 15:29), Revised Edition, 1872, states:

“There is, perhaps, no passage in the New Testament in respect to which there has been a greater variety of interpretation than this, and the views of expositors now by no means harmonize to regard to its meaning. It is possible that Paul may here refer to some practice or custom which existed in his time respecting baptism, the knowledge of which is now lost.” - Page 288.

Among several opinions, he states the view of some:

“That the apostle refers to a custom of vicarious baptism, or being baptized for those who were dead, referring to a practice of having some person baptized in the place of one who had died without baptism. This was the opinion of Grotius, Michaelis, Tertullian, and Ambrose. . . . That this custom prevailed in the Church after the time of Paul has been abundantly proved by Grotius and is generally admitted.” - *Ibid.*, page 288.

Under this subject, Buck’s *Theological Dictionary* states:

“A practice formerly in use, when a person dying without baptism, another was baptized in his stead; thus supposing that God would accept the baptism of the proxy, as though it had been administered to the principal. Chrysostom says, this was practiced among the Marcionites with a great deal of ridiculous ceremony. . . . If it can be proved (as some think it can) that this practice was as early as the days of the apostle Paul, it might probably form a solution of those remarkable words in 1 Corinthians 15:29: “If the dead rise not at all, what shall they do who are baptized for the dead?” - Edition of 1826, page 44.

Robinson’s revision of Calmet’s *Dictionary* contains the statement of Epiphanius that the Marcionites were “baptized in the name of those among them who died without baptism, as substituted representatives of such persons”; and observes: “The most ancient interpretation which we have of the passage, follows the simple and literal meaning of

the words: (Greek text), *to be baptized, for, instead of, the dead.*" - *Dictionary of the Bible*, page 146.

BAPTISM OF THE HOLY SPIRIT PROMISED

***Mark 1:6** - *"I indeed have baptized you with water; but he shall not only baptize you with water, but with fire, and the Holy Ghost."* (8).

Luke 24:48 - *"I send the promise of my Father upon you: but tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high"* (49).

***John 7:38, 39** - *"He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water. (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive; for the Holy Ghost was promised unto them who believe, after that Jesus was glorified.)"*

John 14:26 - *"But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things."*

Acts 1:5 - *"For John truly baptized with water, but ye shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost not many days hence."*

Acts 2:38, 39 - *"And ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God shall call."*

John 14:16, 17; 16:7.

3 Nephi 5:46 - *"And after that ye are baptized with water, behold I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost."*

2 Nephi 13:10, 15 - 17; 3 Nephi 9:14; 12:10, 29, 33; 5:46, 49; Mormon 3:35.

D&C 35:1 - *"You shall receive my Spirit, the Holy Ghost, even the Comforter, which shall teach you the peaceable things of the kingdom."*

D&C 85:1 - *"Wherefore I now send upon you another Comforter. . . . that it may abide in your hearts, even the Holy Spirit of promise, which other Comforter is the same that I promised unto my disciples, as is recorded in the testimony of John."*

D&C 19:3; 23:3; 30:4; 34:5; 42:5; 87:4, 5.

FULFILLMENT OF THE PROMISE

Acts 2:4 - *"They were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance."*

Acts 4:31 - *"And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and they spake the word of God with boldness."*

Acts 8:17 - *"Then laid they their hands on them, and they received the Holy Ghost."*

Acts 10:44, 45 - *"While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word . . . because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost."*

Acts 19:6 - *"And when Paul had laid his hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied."*

Ephesians 1:13; 1 Thessalonians 1:5, 6; Titus 3:5.

3 Nephi 9:14 - *"And it came to pass that when they were all baptized, and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them."*

3 Nephi 13:30 - *"And as many as were baptized, did receive the Holy Ghost."*

WORLD CANNOT RECEIVE SPIRIT, BUT IS REPROVED BY IT

Matthew 13:9 - *"He answered and said unto them, Because it is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given" (11).*

John 14:17 - *"Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world can not receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him; but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you."*

John 16:8 - *"And when he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment."*

1 Corinthians 2:14 - *"But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God; for they are foolishness unto him; neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned."*

ENDOWMENT OF THE SPIRIT

Isaiah 44:3 - *"I will pour water upon him that is thirsty, and floods upon the dry grounds: I will pour my Spirit upon thy seed, and my blessing upon thine offspring."*

Ezekiel 39:29 - *"Neither will I hide my face any more from them; for I have poured out my Spirit upon the house of Israel, saith the Lord God."*

Joel 2:28, 29 - *"I will pour out my Spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions: and also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my Spirit."*

Luke 24:48 - *"I send the promise of my Father upon you; but tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high" (49).*

***Acts 2:2 - 4** - *"Suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting. And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it rested upon each of them. And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance."*

Zechariah 10:12; *John 7:38, 39; 14:16, 17; Acts 2:16, 17; 4:31; 10:44 - 46; 13:52; 19:6.

D&C 43:4 - *"Ye ate to be taught from on high. Sanctify yourselves and ye shall be endowed with power, that ye may give even as I have spoken."*

D&C 102:3 - *"This can not be brought to pass until mine elders are endowed with power from on high; for behold, I have prepared a great endowment and blessing to be poured out upon them."*

D&C 102:10 - *"It is expedient in me that the first elders of my church should receive their endowment from on high, in my house, which I have commanded to be built unto my name in the land of Kirtland."*

D&C 38:7.

Mosiah 11:104 - *"And the Lord did pour out his Spirit upon them, and they were blessed, and prospered in the land."*

MODE: THE LAYING ON OF HANDS IN CONFERRING THE HOLY GHOST

Acts 8:17 - *"Then laid they their hands on them, and they received the Holy Ghost."*

Acts 19:6 - *"And when Paul had laid his hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them."*

1 Timothy 4:14 - *"Neglect not the gift that is in thee, which was given thee by prophecy, with the laying on of the hands of the presbytery."*

Acts 9:17; Galatians 3:5; Ephesians 4:30.

Alma 16:117 - *“And behold, as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Ghost.”*

Moroni 2:1, 2 - *“The words of Christ which he spoke unto his disciples. . . . Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer; and after ye have done this, ye shall have power that on him whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost.”*

D&C 34:2 - *“Thou shalt baptize by water, and they shall receive the Holy Ghost by the laying on of the hands.”*

D&C 49:2 - *“Whoso doeth this, shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost, by the laying on of the hands of the elders.”*

D&C 17:8, 18; 32:3; 52:3; 53:2; 55:1; 68:4.

TO CONFER AUTHORITY AND ORDAIN

Exodus 28:41 - *“And thou shalt put them upon Aaron thy brother, and his sons with him; and shalt anoint them, and consecrate them, and sanctify them, that they may minister unto me in the priest’s office.”*

Numbers 8:10 - *“And thou shalt bring the Levites before the Lord; and the children of Israel shall put their hands upon the Levites.”*

Numbers 27:18 - 20 - *“Take thee Joshua the son of Nun, a man in whom is the Spirit, and lay thine hand upon him; and set him before Eleazar the priest, and before all the congregation; and give him a charge in their sight. And thou shalt put some of thine honor upon him, that all the congregation of the children of Israel may be obedient.”*

Deuteronomy 34:9 - *“And Joshua the son of Nun was full of the spirit of wisdom; for Moses had laid his hands upon him.”*

Acts 6:6 - *“Whom they set before the apostles; and when they had prayed, they laid their hands on them.”*

Acts 13:3 - *“And when they had fasted and prayed, and laid their hands on them, they sent them away.”*

3 Nephi 8:70, 73; Moroni 2:1; 3:1 - 3.

D&C 16:5; 17:17; 42:4; 43:2; 50:4; 63:5; 68:2; 77:1; 114:4.

Jacob 1:8; Mosiah 9:51; 11:97; 10:103; 14:8; 21:26, 27

1 Timothy 5:22 - *“Lay hands suddenly on no man.”*

Mark 3:13; John 15:16; Acts 14:23; 1 Timothy 2:7; 4:14; 5:22; 2 Timothy 1:6.

Exodus 28:41; Lev. 8:12; Numbers 8:10; Mark 3:13; John 15:16; Timothy 2:7; 4:14.

Alma 4:1 - *“He ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands, according to the order of God.”*

3 Nephi 8:70, 71 - *“When Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one, even until he had touched them all. . . . The disciples bear record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost.”*

Moroni 2:1; 3:2; Jacob 1:8; Mosiah 9:51; 11:97; Alma 10:103; 14:8; 21:26, 27.

D&C 68:2 - *“And found worthy, and anointed, and ordained under the hands of this presidency.”*

D&C 42:4 - *“It shall not be given to any one to go forth and preach my gospel, or to build up my church, except he be ordained by some one who has authority . . . and has been regularly ordained.”*

D&C 43:2.

IN BLESSING CHILDREN

***Matthew 19:14, 15** - *“But Jesus said, Suffer little children to come unto me, and forbid them not, for of such is the kingdom of heaven. And he laid hands on them.”*

Mark 10:14 - *“And he took them up in his arms, and put his hands upon them, and blessed them” (16).*

Luke 18:15 - 17.

3 Nephi 8:23 - *“And he took their little children, one by one, and blessed them, and prayed unto the Father for them.”*

D&C 17:19 - *“Every member of the Church of Christ having children, is to bring them unto the elders before the church, who are to lay their hands upon them in the name of Jesus Christ, and bless them in his name.”*

IN HEALING THE SICK

***Mark 6:7** - *“And he could do no mighty works there, save that he laid his hands upon a few sick folks and they were healed” (5).*

Luke 13:13 - *“And he laid hands on her; and immediately she was made straight, and glorified God.”*

Mark 16:19 - *“They shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover” (18).*

James 5:14, 15 - *“Is any sick among you? let him call for the elders of the church; and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord; and the prayer of faith shall save the sick, and the Lord shall raise him up; and if he have committed sins, they shall be forgiven him.”*

***Luke 4:40.**

Mormon 4:87 - *“They shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.”*

D&C 42:12 - *“The elders of the church, two or more, shall be called and shall pray for, and lay their hands upon them in my name.”*

HISTORICAL NOTES ON LAYING ON OF HANDS IN THE BLESSING OF CHILDREN

Smith’s Dictionary of The Bible informs us:

“The blessing of offspring, but especially of the male sex, is highly valued among all Eastern nations, while the absence is regarded as one of the severest punishments.” - Article “Children,” page 107.

Notes on the Gospels, by Barnes, comments on blessing of children by Jesus, as recorded in Mark 10:16:

“Took them up in his arms. These were small children. *Blessed them.* Prayed for them, sought a blessing on them, or gave them the assurance of his favor as the Messiah. How happy would it be if *all* parents thus felt it to be their privilege to present their children to Christ!” - Footnote on verse 16.

In his *Commentary*, Matthew Henry remarks on Jesus’ blessing of children:

“He put his hands upon them, denoting the bestowal of his Spirit upon them, (for this is the hand of the Lord,) and his setting them apart for himself. (3) He ‘blessed them’ with the spiritual blessings he came to give. Our children are happy if they but have the Mediator’s blessing for their portion. It is true we do not read that he baptized these children.” - Volume 3, page 298.

On this subject, Bishop Taylor points out that:

“From the action of Christ’s blessing children, to infer they are to be baptized, proves nothing so much, as that there is a want of better arguments; for the conclusion would with more probability be derived thus: Christ blessed infants, and so dismissed them, but baptized them not; therefore infants are not to be baptized.” - *Liberty of Prophecy*, page 230 (From *The Instructor*, page 146).

Scott’s Commentary on this, in Matthew 19, remarks:

“Doubtless he meant to encourage parents to seek a blessing upon their offspring from their earliest infancy, and to teach such children to apply to him as soon as they could understand his words; but the expression, ‘Of such is the kingdom of heaven’ seems to mean that little children are admissible into the visible church, under the New Testament dispensation, as they had been under that of Moses. Christ, indeed, did not order these infants to be baptized.” - Volume 3, page 69.

IN CONFIRMATION, FOR THE HOLY SPIRIT (Also see Confirmation, and Gifts of the Holy Spirit)

The *Popular and Critical Bible Encyclopaedia*, Volume II, observes

“The apostles, likewise, laid hands on those upon whom they bestowed the Holy Ghost. The priests observed the same custom when any one was received into their body.” - Article “Imposition of Hands,” page 857:

Tertullian says of this ordinance:

“In the next place the hand is laid on us, invoking and inviting the Holy Spirit.” - *Epistle on Baptism*, chapter 8.

Cyprian, one of the martyrs of the third century, wrote:

“Those who have been dipped abroad outside the church, and have been stained among heretics an schismatics, when they come to us and to the church, ought to be baptized, for the reason that it is a small matter [that is of no value] to lay hands on them that they may receive the Holy Ghost, unless they receive also the baptism of the Church.” - *Epistle 71*.

In his sixty - ninth epistle, he says that it is necessary that he who is baptized should be confirmed, in order that “he may be anointed of God and have in him the grace of Christ.” In Epistle twelve, he writes that those in the church who have sinned should make confession of their sin, and through repentance and the laying on of hands should come to the Lord. In epistle seventy - three, he says of like persons: “It behooves these, when they return, having repented, to be received by the laying on of hands, and to be restored by the shepherd to the sheepfold.”

Jenks, in his *Comprehensive Commentary*, gives notes by Scott on Acts 8:17, as follows:

“The rite of confirmation, as practiced by many Christian churches, has often been and still is, spoken of as a continuation of the apostolical laying on of hands for the confirmation of new converts, by the Holy Spirit thus given them.”

Jenks himself writes upon the same:

“They laid their hands on them to signify that their prayers were answered, and that the gift of the Holy Ghost was conferred upon them; *for upon the use of this sign, they received the Holy Ghost, and spake with tongues*. The laying on of hands was anciently used *in blessings, by those who blessed with authority*.”

Also in his notes on Acts 19:6, he says:

“Paul solemnly prayed to God to give them the extraordinary gifts of the Holy Ghost, signified by his laying *his hands on them*, which was a *gesture used in blessing*, by the *patriarchs*; especially in conveying *the great trust* of the promise. The Spirit being the *great promise of the New Testament* *the apostles conveyed* it by the laying on of hands.”

In another note upon the same text, quoted by Jenks, it is said:

“The apostles seem to have *laid down a rule*, that after being baptized the proselytes *should have* the laying on of hands, accompanied with prayer, in order to their receiving the gifts of the Holy Spirit.”

One of the early fathers, in a “Treatise on Re - baptism,” as given on page 669 of Volume 5 of the *Ante - Nicene Fathers*, wrote:

“By the laying on of hands the Holy Spirit *is given to every one that believes*, as in the case of the Samaritans.”

FOR HEALING THE SICK

Concerning this rite, Mosheim’s *History*, Century 1, declares:

“The early Christians, when dangerously sick, sent for the elders of the church, agreeably to James v., 14; and after the sick man had confessed his sins, the elders commended him to God in devout supplication, and anointed him with oil. Many things in regard to this rite, may be, and have actually been, subjects of controversy.” - Part II, chapter IV, Section 9.

In his *Commentary* on James 5:14, 15, Matthew Henry says:

“We should observe the success of prayer. ‘The Lord shall raise him up’; that is, if he be a person capable and fit for deliverance, and if God has anything further for such a person to do in this world. ‘If he have committed sins, they shall be forgiven him’; that is, where sickness is sent as a punishment for some particular sin, that sin shall be pardoned; and in token thereof, the sickness shall be removed.” Volume 3, page 1,305.

On this same text, in his *Apostolic Succession*, Stratton comments:

“They shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.’ This manual imposition in the miracles of healing was to be the rule of procedure, although, as in the work of the Lord himself, other modes might present the exception.” - Page 208.

In his work on *The Catholic Epistles*, Calvin observes, concerning the statement of James:

“‘Is any sick among you?’ *Infirmitur quis inter vos?* As the gift of healing as yet continued, he directs the sick to have recourse to that remedy. It is, indeed, certain that they were not all healed; but the Lord granted this favor as often and as far as he knew it to be wise and expedient; nor is it probable that the oil was applied indiscriminately.” - Volume 1, page 354.

Evidence from the early Fathers is shown in Neander’s *Church History* to explain their observance of this rite. He states:

“The Christian introduces no magic formulae, no amulets; but, calling on God through Christ, he lays his hand on the head of the sick man, in firm and faithful reliance on his Saviour. The sick man is healed, and the cure of his body leads to that of his soul.” - Section 1, page 42.

“An unhappy man of this kind, after seeking help in vain at the hands of these impostors (exorcists), comes to a Christian; . . . His prayer, which calls down the power of heaven, works deeply on the distracted heart of the patient. Inward peace follows the turbulent tide which agitated him within; and, conducted by this experience of the influence of Christianity on himself to a belief in it, he becomes now, in every sense, for the first time freed from evil spirits, and healed through the enlightening and healing power of truth so thoroughly and forever, that the evil spirit returns not to his house, to find it swept and garnished for him.” - *Ibid.*, page 43.

He also presents the statement of Irenaeus (c. 130 - 202) that:

“Some cast out evil spirits, so radically and completely, that those purified from evil spirits often become, afterwards, themselves believers and members of the community; others heal the sick by the laying on of hands. - *Ibid.*, page 43.

Prof. Cheetham, in *History of the Christian Church During the First Six Centuries*, says of this ordinance:

“In sickness, the brethren sent for the elders of the Church, who prayed over them and anointed them with oil that they might recover.” - Page 27.

Discussion on the propriety of administering to the sick when not in extremity appears to have taken place as early as the second century, and continued to some extent until the ninth century, when the doctrine of Extreme Unction was substituted for the original rite, becoming in essential intent an eschatological sacrament. In Hagenbach's *History of Doctrines*, Volume II, a few aspects are mentioned, as follows:

“The apostolic injunction respecting the sick, James v. 14 (comp. Mark vi. 13), which probably had a symbolical and religious significance, as well as a medicinal and therapeutic, gave rise to the institution of a new sacrament, which came into general use from the ninth century, and could be administered only in the dying hour. But various opinions obtained on the question, whether it was proper to repeat the administration of the sacrament in the case of a dying person who had received it on a former occasion, but who had recovered, and been restored to life; or whether it was sufficient to have administered it once?” - Third Period, Section 199, page 112.

TO ORDAIN TO PRIESTHOOD

Ordination to the priesthood was so commonly understood and practiced that little particular attention was given to it in the first centuries of the church by the early writers. Later views differed greatly as to its nature and authority. In his *Ecclesiastical History*, Eusebius mentions various ordinations. Dius was chosen bishop of Jerusalem about A. D. 211, he states, the occasion being that:

“Narcissus having retired from the world, and no one knowing whither he had gone, it seemed proper to the bishops of the neighboring churches to proceed to the ordination of another bishop.” - Book VI, chapter X, page 215.

A few years later, about the time Origen wrote his *Commentaries*, Eusebius states:

“At this time Origen, being compelled by some necessary affairs of the church, went to Greece by way of Palestine, where he received the ordination to the priesthood, at Caesarea, from the bishops of that country.” - Book VI, chapter XXIII, page 229.

Concerning the ordination of Fabianus as bishop of Rome some years later, he says:

“When all the brethren had assembled in the church, for the purpose of ordaining him that should succeed in the episcopate, though there were very many eminent and illustrious men in the estimation of many, Fabianus being present, no one thought of any other man. They relate, further, that a dove suddenly flying down from on high, sat upon his head, exhibiting a scene like that of the Holy Spirit once descending upon our Saviour in the form of a dove. Upon this the whole body exclaimed, with all eagerness and with one voice, as if moved by the one Spirit of God, that he was worthy.” - Book VI, chapter XXIX, page 234.

A footnote by Valesius explains this form of procedure, saying:

“This was the common acclamation at the election of bishops, of which we have many examples in Philostorgius, b. ix. ch. 10.”

Novatus obtained his ordination by artifice and treachery, with the aid of others of his stamp. They were later deposed. Eusebius quotes Cornelius on this matter:

“When these men had come, being, as before observed, but simple and plain in discerning the artifices and villainy of the wicked, and when shut up with men of the same stamp with himself, at the tenth hour, when heated with wine and surfeiting, they forced them by a kind of shadowy and empty imposition of hands, to confer the episcopate upon him, and which, though by no means suited to him, he claims by fraud and treachery.” - Book VI, chapter XLIII, pages 249, 250.

Consent of the ministry and people appears to have been required in early times before an ordination took place, but some modification of this is noted in Mosheim’s *Ecclesiastical History in Century III*, which remarks:

“To the objection that *Cyprian* (C. A. D. 200 - 258) did himself ordain some presbyters and lectors without the consent of his council and the laity, it is answered that the persons so advanced were *confessors*, who, according to usage, were entitled to ordination without any previous election.” - Part 11, chapter II, footnote (1).

Buck’s Theological Dictionary offers the explanation that:

“Although Christians have the liberty of choosing their own pastor, yet they have no power or right to confer the office itself. Scripture represents ordination to be the setting apart of a person to the holy ministry, by the authority of Jesus himself acting by the medium of *men in office*; and this solemn investing act is necessary to his being lawfully accounted a minister of Christ.” - Article “Ordination.”

Dupin’s Church History, Volume III, gives an instance of voided ordinations:

“Formosus had been translated from the bishopric of Ostia to that of Rome. That translation had been declared void, and so were the ordinations of Formosus in consequence of it.” - *Chapter XI, Century IX*, page 45.

Terming it the Sacrament of Orders, Hagenbach’s *History of Doctrines* remarks:

“This sacrament is intimately connected with the doctrine of the Church, and with the distinction made between the laity and the clergy. It is that sacrament by which men are fitted to administer the other sacraments. Accordingly, its essence lies in the ecclesiastical power which it communicates.” - Third Period, Section 200.

Concerning the power to transmit priesthood, McClintock and Strong’s *Cyclopaedia* mentions the fact that:

“In the Russo - Greek Church there exist some sects *without Priests*, because in their idea the gift of consecration by laying on of hands, which had continued from the apostles down to Nikon (q.v.), had been lost by the apostasy of Nikon, and of the clergy seduced by him, and thus all genuine priesthood had become impossible.” - Volume 4, page 522.

CONFIRMATION AFTER BAPTISM

Confirmation, or laying on of hands to impart the Holy Spirit, was at times referred to by the post - apostolic Fathers as sealing, its being understood that the convert after baptism was thus sealed as a child of God and a member of the body of Christ. History shows that this rite was, with some variations, taught and observed from the earliest times. Mosheim observes of Century II: “The baptized were signed with the cross, anointed, commended to God by prayer and imposition of hands, and finally directed to taste some milk and honey (Tertullian cited). . . . Adults were to prepare their minds expressly, by prayers, fasting, and other devotional exercises.” - Part II, chapter 4, Section 13.

Of Century III, Mosheim says:

“And it was believed that the bishop, by the imposition of hands and by prayer, conferred those gifts of the Holy Spirit which were necessary for living a holy life.” - Part II, chapter 4, Section 13.

McClintock and Strong's *Cyclopaedia* explains:

“From this general imposition of hands, under which Christians received the baptism of the Spirit, came the official, apostolic imposition of hands. . . . It was generally performed by the bishop, but elders were authorized to do it in certain cases, in subordination to the bishop.” - Volume 4, page 522.

So vital was confirmation considered, that Cornelius, bishop of Rome (A. D. 249 - 251), denied that Novatus received by aspersion) was entitled to membership, saying:

“But neither, when he recovered from disease, did he partake of other things, which the rules of the church prescribe as duty, nor was he sealed (in confirmation) by the bishop. But as he did not obtain this, how could he obtain the Holy Spirit.” - Eusebius' *Ecclesiastical History*, Book VI, chapter 43.

Near the beginning of the third century, confirmation included anointing with holy oil in some instances, of which Ruter's *Church History* notes:

“Confirmation immediately followed the reception of baptism. This ceremony consisted in anointing them with holy oil and the imposition of hands; the former of which practices was probably introduced about the beginning of this century; and to this unction was ascribed the effect of confirming the soul in all spiritual graces on the part of God, and the confirmation of the profession of a Christian on the part of man.” - Century III, chapter 11, page 54.

There may be some confusion in the minds of early writers concerning use of anointing oil, and Neander implies that it may have been analogous to the Jewish anointing to priesthood, saying: “Just as anointing, in the Old Testament, was the sign of the priestly consecration, so also the newly - baptized person should be consecrated to this *spiritual priesthood* by being anointed with oil, expressly blessed for that purpose. . . . *The laying on of hands*, accompanied by prayer, with which the ceremony of baptism was concluded is undoubtedly older than this custom. . . . This

(confirmation) was the *closing* rite, inseparably united with the old act of baptism." - Section III, page 201.

The close relationship of these rites is shown by Neander when he says: "Cyprian (c. 200 - 258) speaks of a '*sacramentum duplex*,' the baptism of water, and the baptism of the Spirit represented by the laying on of hands, '*sacramento utroque nasci*,' and yet also of both as united in the Church rite of baptism" - Ibid., pages 202, 203, footnote.

(Also see Laying on of Hands; and Gifts of the Holy Spirit.)

RESURRECTION OF THE DEAD

A DOCTRINE OF THE OLD TESTAMENT

Job 19:25, 26 - *"For I know that my Redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth; and though after my skin worms destroy this body, yet in my flesh shall I see God."*

Isaiah 26:19 - *"Thy dead men shall live, together with my dead body shall they arise."*

Daniel 12:2 - *"And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake."*

Hosea 13:14 - *"I will ransom them from the power of the grave; I will redeem them from death."*

Ezekiel 37:12, 13

A CHRISTIAN TEACHING

***John 5:25** - *"Verily, verily, I say unto you, The hour is coming, and now is, when the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of God; and they who hear shall live."*

John 11:25 - *"Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life; he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live."*

John 14:19 - *"Because I live, ye shall live also."*

1 Corinthians 15:13, 14, 52, 53 - *"But if there be no resurrection of the dead, then is Christ not risen; and if Christ be not risen, then is our preaching vain, and your faith is also vain. . . . In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the sound of the last trump; for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed. For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality."*

Revelation 20:12 - *"And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened; and another book was opened, which is the book of life; and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works."*

Isaiah 25:8; *Luke 20:35 - 38; Acts 17:31; 26:8; Romans 8:23.

2 Nephi 6:6, 7 - *"Ye know that our flesh must waste away and die; nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God."*

Alma 8:98, 100 - *"The day cometh that all shall rise from the dead and stand before God. . . . The spirit and the body shall be reunited. . . . Both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time."*

1 Nephi 3:15; Alma 2:24; 8:106, 107, 120; 13:47; Mormon 4:72, 73; Helaman 5:69 - 71.

CHRIST FIRST TO RISE AND REDEEM FROM DEATH

Psalms 49:15 - *"God will redeem my soul from the power of the grave."*

Isaiah 25:8 - *"He will swallow up death in victory."*

Hosea 13:14 - *"I will ransom them from the power of the grave; I will redeem them from death."*

***Matthew 27:56, 57** - *"The bodies of the saints which slept, arose, who were many, and came out of the graves after his resurrection, went into the holy city, and appeared unto many" (52, 53).*

Acts 4:2 - *"Being grieved that they taught the people, and preached through Jesus the resurrection from the dead."*

Acts 26:22, 23 - *"I continue unto this day, witnessing both to small and great, saying none other things than those which the prophets and Moses did say should come: that Christ should suffer, and that he should be the first that should rise from the dead."*

1 Corinthians 15:20 - *"But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the first fruits of them that slept."*

2 Corinthians 4:14 - *"He which raised up the Lord Jesus shall raise up us also by Jesus."*

Philemon 3:20, 21 - *"The Lord Jesus Christ, who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself."*

Colossians 1:18 - *"Who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all things he might have the pre - eminence."*

***Revelation 1:5** - *"I, John, . . . bear record of the things which were delivered me of the angel, and from Jesus Christ the first begotten of the dead."*

Revelation 1:18 - *"I am he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death."*

Mosiah 8:80, 81 - *"If Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death, . . . there could have been no resurrection."*

D&C 85:4 - *"Through the redemption which is made for you, is brought to pass the resurrection from the dead."*

DEAD IN CHRIST RISE FIRST - FIRST FRUITS

***John 5:29** - *"They who have done good, in the resurrection of the just."*

1 Corinthians 15:23 - *"But every man in his own order; Christ the first fruits."*

1 Thessalonians 4:16 - *"For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God; and the dead in Christ shall rise first."*

***Hebrews 11:35** - *"Women received their dead raised to life again; and others were tortured, not accepting deliverance, that they might obtain the first resurrection."*

***Revelation 14:4** - *"These were redeemed from among men, being the first - fruits unto God and to the Lamb."*

***Revelation 20:5, 6** - *"This is the first resurrection. Blessed and holy are they who have part in the first resurrection; on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years."*

Daniel 12:2; Romans 8:23; *Philemon 3:11; Colossians 3:4.

2 Nephi 6:31 - *"The paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the bodies of the righteous."*

Mosiah 8:56 - *"All those that have kept the commandments of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection."*

D&C 45:7 - *"An angel shall sound the trump, and the saints that have slept, shall come forth to meet me in the cloud."*

D&C 108:10 - *"And the graves of the saints shall be opened, and they shall come forth and stand on the right hand of the Lamb, when he shall stand upon Mount Zion."*

2 Nephi 1:75; Jacob 3:17; Mosiah 8:80 - 84; 9:40; Alma 9:14, 21.

D&C 28:3; 43:5; 63:13; 76:5; 85:27.

LAST RESURRECTION - OF THE UNJUST

Daniel 12:2 - *“And some to shame and everlasting contempt.*

***John 5:29** - *“And they who have done evil, in the resurrection of the unjust.”*

Acts 24:15 - *“That there shall be a resurrection of the dead, both of the just and unjust.”*

Revelation 20:5, 7, 13 - *“But the rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished. . . . And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison. . . . And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them; and they were judged every man according to their works.”*

2 Nephi 6:28, 29 - *“Hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies.”*

Mosiah 8:62 - *“All those that have perished in their sins . . . that have willfully rebelled against God, that have known the commandments of God, and would not keep them; these are they that have no part in the first resurrection.”*

Mosiah 8:86 - 88 - *“Having gone according to their own carnal wills and desires; . . . they being warned of their iniquities and yet they would not depart from them; they were commanded to repent and they would not.”*

D&C 76:7 - *“These are they who shall not be redeemed from the Devil till the last resurrection, until the Lord, even Christ the Lamb, shall have finished his work.”*

D&C 85:29 - *“Then cometh the spirits of men who are . . . found under condemnation and these are the rest of the dead, and they live not again till the thousand years are ended.”*

Mosiah 8:84 - 89; 2 Nephi 6:24 - 30.

FROM THE BOOK OF MORMON

A TIME APPOINTED

Alma 19:33 - 35 - *“There is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead. Now when this time cometh, no one knows; but God knoweth the time which is appointed. Now whether there shall be one time, or a second time, or a third time, that men shall come forth from the dead, it mattereth not; for God knoweth all these things.”*

A TIME OF WAITING

Alma 19:36, 37 - *“Now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death, and the time of the resurrection. And now I would inquire what becometh of the souls of men, from this time of death, to the time appointed for the resurrection?”*

BETWEEN DEATH AND THE RESURRECTION

Alma 19:42 - 47 - *“Now concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection. Behold, it has been made known unto me, by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body; yea, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life. And then it shall come to pass that the spirits of those who are righteous, are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise; a state of rest; a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their troubles, and from all care, and sorrow. And then it shall come to pass, that the spirits of the wicked, yea, who are evil; . . . And these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing and gnashing of teeth; and this because of their own iniquity; being led captive by the will of the devil. Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked; yea in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful, looking for, of the fiery indignation of the*

wrath of God upon them; thus they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection."

RESURRECTION, EVIDENCE OF (EARLY CHURCH TEACHINGS ON)

Justin Martyr affirmed:

"But Sunday is the day on which we all hold our common assembly. . . . and Jesus Christ our Saviour, on the same day, rose from the dead; for the day before that of Saturn, He was crucified; and on the day after it, which is Sunday, He appeared to his Apostles and disciples - "First Apology," Paragraph 67.

Of Century II, Mosheim informs us:

"Now the greater part of the Christians deemed it wrong to consecrate any other day than the Lord's day, in remembrance of *Christ's* resurrection. Hence great contention frequently arose from this difference between the Asiatic and the other Christians." - Part II, chapter IV, Section 10

Concerning the teaching of Thaddeus, one of the Seventy appointed of Christ, we have this quotation by Eusebius:

"I will proclaim the word of God, and will sow among them the word of life, both respecting the coming of Jesus, as he was, and respecting his mission, . . . what things, also, he suffered from the Jews; how he was crucified, and descended into hell, (hades,) and burst the bars which had never yet been broken, and rose again, and also raised with himself the dead that had slept for ages." - *Ecclesiastical History*, Book 1, chapter 13 (Cruse edition, page 35).

Concerning those teachings later put in the Apostles' Creed which came from the apostles themselves, Robinson states:

"That they were the Articles of the Existence of God, the Trinity; that Jesus was Christ, or the Saviour of the World, the Remission of Sins, and the Resurrection." - *History of the Apostles' Creed*, page 35.

An admirable presentation of evidence that Christ rose from the dead is quoted from Saurin in *The Popular and Critical Bible Encyclopaedia*, Volume III, page 1452. It also further states that:

"In the time of Christ the belief of a resurrection, in connection with a state of future retribution, was held by the Pharisees and the great body of the Jewish people, and was only disputed by the Sadducees. . . . But although the doctrine of the resurrection was thus prevalent among the Jews in the time of Christ, it might still have been doubtful and obscure to us, had not Christ given to it the sanction of his authority, and declared it a constituent part of his religion." - *Ibid.*, page 1453.

ETERNAL JUDGMENT A PRINCIPLE OF THE GOSPEL

Hebrews 6:1, 2 - One of the "*principles of the doctrine of Christ*" . . . "*and of eternal judgment.*"

THE WAYS OF GOD

Deuteronomy 32:4 - "*All his ways are judgment: a God of truth and without iniquity, just and right is he.*"

THE THRONE OF JUDGMENT

Psalms 9:7 - *"The Lord shall endure for ever: he hath prepared his throne for judgment."*

WITH RIGHTEOUSNESS

Psalms 33:5 - *"He loveth righteousness and judgment; the earth is full of the goodness of the Lord."*

WITH JUSTICE

Psalms 89:14 - *"Justice and judgment are the habitation of thy throne: mercy and truth shall go before thy face."*

TO REDEEM ZION

Isaiah 1:27 - *"Zion shall be redeemed with judgment, and her converts with righteousness."*

†Isaiah 9:7 - *"Of the increase of his government and peace there, shall be no end, . . . to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever."*

A GOD OF JUDGMENT

Isaiah 30:18 - *"The Lord is a God of judgment."*

JESUS AND JUDGMENT

John 9:39 - *"Jesus said, For judgment I am come into this world."*

WHERE JUDGMENT BEGINS

1 Peter 4:17 - *"For the time is come that judgment must begin at the house of God; and if it first begin at us, what shall be the end of them that obey not the gospel of God?"*

CONTINUING JUDGMENT

Mosiah 13:16 - *"The judgments of God are always just."*

Mormon 2:27 - *"For I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them."*

THE FINAL JUDGMENT

Ecclesiastes 3:16, 17 - *"And moreover I saw under the sun the place of judgment, that wickedness was there; and the place of righteousness, that iniquity was there. I said in mine heart, God shall judge the righteous and the wicked; for there is a time there for every purpose and for every work."*

Ecclesiastes 12:14 - *"For God shall bring every work into judgment, with every secret thing, whether it be good, or whether it be evil."*

Acts 24:25 - *"And as he reasoned of righteousness, temperance, and judgment to come, Felix trembled."*

Hebrews 9:27 - *"And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment."*

Ecclesiastes 11:9; Daniel 7:10, 26.

1 Nephi 4:54 - *"Wherefore, they must be brought to stand before God to be judged of their works."*

Alma 9:46 - *"And after death, they must come to judgment; even that same judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end."*

2 Nephi 1:79; 6:36, 37, 47; 15:8; Mosiah 8:83; Alma 9:21 - 26; 19:70 - 79; 3 Nephi 11:32; 12:28;

Mormon 1:86 - 89; 3:28; 4:74.

D&C 38:1 - *"But, behold, the residue of the wicked have I kept in chains of darkness until the judgment of the great day."*

D&C 1:2, 6; 3:3; 18:1, 2; 76:7.

A DAY APPOINTED

***Acts 17:31** - *"Because he hath appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by him whom he hath ordained."*

Romans 2:5 - *"But, after thy hardness and impenitent heart, treasurest up unto thyself wrath against the day of wrath and revelation of the righteous judgment of God."*

1 Corinthians 3:13 - *"Every man's work shall be made manifest; for the day shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire; and the fire shall try every man's work of what sort it is."*

1 Timothy 5:23 - *"Some men's sins are open beforehand, going before to judgment; and some men they follow after" (24).*

2 Nephi 6:91 - *"Prepare your souls for that glorious day, . . . even the day of judgment, that ye may not shrink with awful fear."*

Mosiah 1:125 - *"They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day."*

Alma 16:197 - *"That all men shall stand before him, to be judged, at the last and judgment day, according to their works."*

1 Nephi 4:52 - 54; 3 Nephi 72:29 - 33; Ether 2:5.

D&C 3:3 - *"It shall turn to their shame and condemnation in the day of judgment."*

D&C 60:4; 75:3.

A RIGHTEOUS JUDGE

Jeremiah 33:15 - *"In those days, and at that time, will I cause the Branch of righteousness to grow up unto David; and he shall execute judgment and righteousness in the land."*

Isaiah 11:3, 4 - *"And he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears; but with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth."*

John 5:22 - *"For the Father judgeth no man; but hath committed all judgment unto the Son."*

***John 5:30** - *"And shall all be judged of the Son of Man. For as I hear, I judge, and my judgment is just."*

John 5:27; Acts 10:42; *Romans 2:16; 14:10; *2 Timothy 4:1.

1 Nephi 7:47 - *"Wherefore, he shall execute judgment in righteousness; and the righteous need not fear."*

Alma 8:98, 101, 104.

JUDGED BY THE WORD OF GOD ACCORDING TO THEIR DEEDS

Daniel 7:10 - *"Ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him; the judgment was set, and the books were opened."*

†Matthew 7:31 - *"For the day soon cometh, that men shall come before me to judgment, to be judged according to their works."*

John 12:48 - *"He that rejecteth me, and receiveth not my words, hath one that judgeth him; the word, that I have spoken, the same shall judge him in the last day."*

***2 Corinthians 5:10** - *"For we must all appear before the judgment - seat of Christ, that every one may receive a reward of the deeds done in the body."*

Revelation 20:12 - *“And the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works.”*

Revelation 22:12 - *“And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his works shall be.”*

Matthew 16:30; Romans 2:6; 1 Corinthians 3:13; Revelation 2:23.

2 Nephi 11:30 - *“Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them, which words shall judge them at the last day.”*

2 Nephi 12:66 - *“For out of the books which shall be written, I will judge the world, every man according to their works.”*

Mosiah 1:125, 126 - *“Thus saith the Lord: They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works.”*

2 Nephi 11:42; 12:52 - 63; 15:17, 18; Words of Mormon 1:17; 3 Nephi 13:2, 3.

THE LORD’S SUPPER THE SACRAMENT, OR HOLY COMMUNION SCRIPTURES

***Matthew 26:22 - 26** - *“And as they were eating, Jesus took bread and brake it, and blessed it, and gave to his disciples, and said, Take, eat; this is in remembrance of my body which I give a ransom for you. And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink ye all of it. For this is in remembrance of my blood of the new testament, which is shed for as many as shall believe on my name, for the remission of their sins. And I give unto you a commandment, that ye shall observe to do the things which ye have seen me do, and bear record of me even unto the end” (26 - 28).*

1 Corinthians 10:16 - *“The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not the communion of the body of Christ?”*

***1 Corinthians 11:23 - 29** - *“For I have received of the Lord that which also I delivered unto you, That the Lord Jesus, the same night in which he was betrayed, took bread; and when he had given thanks, he brake it, and said, Take, eat; this is my body, which is broken for you; this do in remembrance of me. After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood; this do ye, as oft as ye drink it, in remembrance of me. . . . But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup. For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh condemnation to himself, not discerning the Lord’s body.”*

***Mark 14:20 - 25; *Luke 22:17 - 20.**

3 Nephi 8:32, 33 - *“Behold, there shall be one ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread, and bless it, and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name. And this shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done, even as I have broken bread, and blessed it and gave it unto You.”*

3 Nephi 8:60, 61 - *“Ye shall not suffer any one knowingly, to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it, for whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily, eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul; Therefore if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood, ye shall forbid him.”*

Moroni 6:6 - *“And they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.”*

3 Nephi 9:40 - 45.

D&C 17:22 - *“It is expedient that the Church meet together often, to partake of bread and wine.”*

D&C 26:1 - *"It mattereth not what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink, when ye partake of the sacrament, if it so be that ye do it with an eye single to my glory, remembering unto the Father my body which was laid down for you, and my blood which was shed for the remission of your sins; wherefore a commandment I give unto you, that ye shall not purchase wine, neither strong drink of your enemies; wherefore you shall partake of none, except it is made new among you."*

HISTORICAL NOTES

The institution of the Eucharist by Jesus is quite clearly shown to have been at the time he and his disciples celebrated the Jewish Passover, apparently at its close (see Matthew 26:17, 22 - 24; Mark 14:16, 20 - 24; Luke 22:15 - 17, 19, 20), though John (13:21, 26, 30) appears to recall some of this event in a different manner than is mentioned elsewhere. These details may indicate the reason for some of the early historical statements noted below, as love feasts, distribution made, etc.

Of the First Century custom, Moseim's *History* remarks:

"Though the people had not withdrawn themselves from the Jewish worship, yet they held their own separate meetings; in which they were instructed by the apostles and presbyters, offered up their united prayers, celebrated in the sacred supper the memorial of *Jesus Christ*, of his death, and the salvation he procured, and afterward manifested their mutual love, partly by their liberality to the poor, and partly by those temperate repasts, which from their design were called *love - feasts*, Acts ii, 42." - Part 1, Chapter IV, Section 5.

Of their procedure concerning the use of gifts for the ministry and the poor in the First Century, Mosheim states (supported by early writers):

"From these gifts, so much bread and wine as were requisite for the Lord's supper, were set apart, and consecrated by prayers offered solely by the bishop, to which the people responded *amen*. The distributors of the sacred supper were the *deacons*. This most holy ordinance was followed by sober repasts, which, from their design, were denominated *agapae*, feasts of charity." - Part II, chapter IV, Section 7.

It appears that the wine was mixed with water, being a common *Jewish* custom, of which Mosheim informs us that, in the Second Century:

"When the Christians celebrated the Lord's supper, which they were accustomed to do chiefly on Sundays, they consecrated a part of the bread and wine of the oblations, by certain prayers pronounced by the president, the bishop of the congregation. The wine was mixed with water, and the bread was divided into small pieces. Portions of the consecrated bread and wine were commonly sent to the absent and the sick, in testimony of fraternal affection toward them." - Part II, chapter IV, Section 12.

In his *First Apology to Antoninus Pius*, Justin Martyr writes similarly:

"And on the day which is called Sunday, there is an assembly in the same place of all who live in cities, or in country districts; and the records of the Apostles, or the writings of the prophets, are read as long as we have time. Then the reader concludes: and the President verbally instructs, and exhorts us, to the imitation of these excellent things: then, we all together rise and offer up our prayers; and, as I said before (par. 65), when we have concluded our prayer, bread is brought, and wine, and water, and the President, in like manner, offers up prayers, and thanksgivings with all his

strength; and the people give their assent by saying, Amen: and there is a distribution, and a partaking by every one, of the Eucharistic elements; and to those who are not present, they are sent by the hands of the deacons; and such as are in prosperous circumstances, and wish to do so, give what they will, each according to his choice." - Paragraph 67, pages 51, 52.

In this writing (C. A. D. 150) Justin Martyr states of those who may partake:

"And this food is called by us the Eucharist, of which no one is allowed to partake but he who believes the truth of our doctrines; and who has been washed in the laver for the forgiveness of sins, and to regeneration; and who so lives, as Christ has directed." - *Ibid.*, paragraph 66, page 51. In this statement Justin shows agreement with Paul's instruction (1 Corinthians 11:27 - 29).

But some changes occurred in the Third Century, of which Mosheim says:

"To the celebration of the Lord's supper, those who conducted religious worship annexed longer prayers and more of ceremony; and this, I suppose, with no bad intentions. Neither those doing penance, nor those not yet baptized, were allowed to be present at the celebration of this ordinance; which practice, it is well known, was derived from the pagan mysteries. That gold and silver vessels were used in the ordinance, is testified among others by Prudentius; . . . The time of its administration was different, according to the state and circumstances of the churches." - Part II, chapter IV, Section 3.

In the Fourth Century other changes in the sacramental rite occurred as noted by Mosheim:

"It was also administered at the sepulchres of the martyrs, and at funerals; whence arose, afterwards, the *masses* in honor of the saints, and for the dead. The bread and wine were now everywhere elevated, before distribution, so that they might be seen by the people, and be viewed with reverence; and hence arose, not long after, the *adoration of the symbols*." - Part II, chapter IV, Section 8.

In the Fourth Century the changes, continuing through several centuries, brought about new rules concerning this sacrament, on which Mosheim comments:

"The new mode of administering the *Lord's* supper, magnificently, and with a splendid apparatus, or *The Canon of the Mass*, as it is called, was a prescription of *Gregory the Great* (pope: 590 - 604); or, as some would say, he enlarged and altered the old *Canon*. But many ages elapsed, before the other Latin churches could be prevailed on to adopt this Romish form." - Part II, chapter IV, Section 3.

Concerning the many changes made in this rite, Dr. Stanley, Dean of Westminster, makes the observation:

"Not a single church now communicates in the form in which it was originally given. The Reformed Churches, on the same principle as that on which they have adopted a common loaf instead of a thin wafer, have dropped the water. The Greek Churches have mixed the bread with the wine. The Roman Churches have dropped the use of the cup altogether except for the officiating *priest*." - *Christian Institutions*, pages 44, 45.

Neander's History remarks concerning the use of water for communion:

"Epiphanius (C. A. D. 315 - 402) says of the Ebionites of his time, that they celebrated the communion once a year with unleavened bread and water." - Section III, page 212, footnote.

Belief in a mystical union of Christ with the Eucharist, which later became the doctrine of the Real Presence, was taught in the Sixth Century and afterward, and Hagenbach's History, Second Period, states:

"This idea, which had taken its rise in the preceding period, was now farther carried out by means of the more fully developed terminology of the church, and by the introduction of liturgical formulas, which substituted mystical ceremonies for the simple apostolical rite." - Section 138, page 362.

For some time various churches gave the Eucharist to infants in the Latin church, but this was abolished after the thirteenth century, of which Dr. Stanley remarks:

"The Eucharist is either a purely moral act, or else it is entirely mechanical. If viewed as a charm, as a medicine, it would be equally applicable to conscious or unconscious persons, to children or to fullgrown men. But if viewed as an act of the will, Infant Communion became an obvious incongruity, and accordingly, in spite of the long and venerable traditions which sustained the usage, it was deliberately abandoned by the Latin church." - *Christian Institutions*, page 84.

THE MARRIAGE COVENANT GIVEN OF GOD

***Genesis 2:23, 24** - *"And I, the Lord God, said unto mine Only Begotten, that it was not good that the man should be alone; wherefore, I will make an help meet for him"(18).*

Mark 10:6, 7 - *"But from the beginning of the creation, God made them male and female. For this cause shall a man leave his father, and mother, and cleave to his wife; and they twain shall be one flesh" (6 - 8).*

Matthew 19:5, 6; *1 Corinthians 7:2.

D&C 49:3 - *"Whoso forbiddeth to marry, is not ordained of God, for marriage is ordained of God unto man; wherefore it is lawful that he should have one wife, and they twain shall be one flesh, and all this that the earth might answer the end of its creation."*

D&C 111:1, 2 - *"We believe that all marriages in this church should be solemnized in a public meeting, or feast, prepared for that purpose; and that the solemnization should be performed by a presiding high priest, high priest, bishop, elder or priest, not even prohibiting those persons . . . of being married by other authority. We believe that it is not right to prohibit members from marrying out of the church, if it be their determination so to do, but such persons will be considered weak in the faith of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. Marriage should be celebrated with prayer and thanksgiving; and at the solemnization, the persons to be married, standing together, the man on the right, and the woman on the left, shall be addressed by the person officiating as he shall be directed by the Holy Spirit: and, if there be no legal objections, he shall say, calling each by their names: 'You both mutually agree to be each other's companion, husband and wife, observing the legal rights belonging to this condition; that is, keeping yourselves wholly for each other, and from all others during your lives.' And when they have answered, 'Yes,' he shall pronounce them 'husband and wife,' in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, and by virtue of the laws of the country and authority vested in him: 'May God add his blessings, and keep you to fulfill your covenants from henceforth and forever, Amen."*

MARRIAGE ORDAINED OF GOD

***Proverbs 18:22** - *"Whoso findeth a good wife hath obtained favour of the Lord."*

Proverbs 19:14 - *"A prudent wife is from the Lord."*

Proverbs 31:10 - 12 - *“Who can find a virtuous woman? for her price is far above rubies. The heart of her husband doth safely trust in her, so that he shall have no need of spoil. She will do him good and not evil all the days of her life.”*

Ephesians 5:25, 28, 31 - *“Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, and gave himself for it; . . . So ought men to love their wives as their own bodies. He that loveth his wife loveth himself. . . . For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.”*

1 Timothy 3:2, 12 - *“A bishop then must be blameless, the husband of one wife, . . . Let the deacons be the husbands of one wife, ruling their children and their own houses well.”*

1 Timothy 5:9 - *“Let not a widow be taken into the number under threescore years old, having been the wife of one man.”*

Titus 1:6 - *“If any be blameless, the husband of one wife.”*

D&C 42:7 - *“Thou shalt love thy wife with all thy heart, and shall cleave unto her and none else.”*

D&C 49:3 - *“Marriage is ordained of God unto man; wherefore it is lawful that he should have one wife; and they twain shall be one flesh, and all this that the earth might answer the end of its creation; and that it might be filled with the measure of man, according to his creation before the world was made.”*

Jacob 2:55, 57 - *“For they have not forgotten the commandments of the Lord, which was given unto our fathers. . . . Behold their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands, and their husbands and their wives love their children.”*

***Genesis 2:29, 30; Matthew 19:5; Mark 10:7; *1 Corinthians 7:2.**

SEPARATION

***1 Corinthians 7:10, 11** - *“And unto the married I command, yet not I, but the Lord, Let not the wife depart from her husband; but and if she depart, let her remain unmarried, or be reconciled to her husband; but let not the husband put away his wife.”*

DIVORCE

***Matthew 5:35, 36** - *“It hath been written that, Whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement. Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery; and whomever shall marry her that is divorced, committeth adultery” (31, 32).*

Mark 10:9 10 - *“And he said unto them, whosoever shall put away his wife, and marry another, committeth adultery against her. And if a woman shall put away her husband, and be married to another, she committeth adultery” (11, 12).*

***Matthew 19:7 - 11; *Luke 16:23.**

3 Nephi 5:79 - *“It hath been written, that, whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement. Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall put away his wife, save for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery; and whosoever shall mary [marry] her who is divorced, committeth adultery.”*

ADULTERY

Deuteronomy 5:18 - *“Neither shalt thou commit adultery.”*

***Matthew 5:29, 30** - *“But I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her, hath committed adultery with her in his heart already” (28).*

***Matthew 19:9** - *“Whosoever shall put away his wife, except for fornication, and shall marry another, committeth adultery; and whoso marrieth her that is put away; doth commit adultery.”*
Exodus 20:14; Mark 10:9, 10; *Luke 16:22, 23; 18:20; Romans 2:22; 13:9; Galatians 5:19; James 2:11; 4:4; *Revelation 2:22.

3 Nephi 5:76, 77 - *“It is written by them of old time, that thou shalt not commit adultery; but I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery already in his heart.”*

Mosiah 7:121 - *“Thou shalt not commit adultery.”*

D&C 18:3 - *“Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor’s wife.”*

D&C 42:7 - *“Thou shalt not commit adultery; and he that committeth adultery and repenteth not, shall be cast out; but he that has committed adultery and repents with all his heart, and forsaketh it, and doeth it no more, thou shalt forgive; but if he doeth it again, he shall not be forgiven, but shall be cast out.”*

D&C 63:5 - *“If any shall commit adultery in their hearts they shall not have the Spirit, but shall deny the faith and shall fear.”*

D&C 42:22; 59:2; 66:5; 76:7.

PENALTY FOR ADULTERY UNDER MOSAIC LAW

Leviticus 20:10 - *“The adulterer and the adulteress shall surely be put to death.”*

Leviticus 20:14 - *“And if a man take a wife and her mother, it is wickedness; they shall be burnt with fire, both he and they.”*

Proverbs 6:32 - *“But whoso committeth adultery with a woman lacketh understanding; he that doeth it destroyeth his own soul.”*

John 8:4, 5 - *“Master, this woman was taken in adultery, in the very act. Now Moses in the law commanded us, that such should be stoned.”*

Leviticus 20:10 - 22; 21:9; Proverbs 7:18 - 23.

ADULTERERS NOT INHERIT THE KINGDOM

1 Corinthians 6:9, 10 - *“Neither fornicators, . . . nor adulterers, nor effeminate, . . . shall inherit the kingdom of God.”*

Galatians 5:19, 21 - *“Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these, Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, . . . they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God.”*

Ephesians 5:5 - *“For this ye know, that no whoremonger, nor unclean person. . . hath any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God.”*

Hebrews 13:4 - *“Whoremongers and adulterers God will judge.”*

Revelation 21:8 - *Whoremongers . . . shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone; which is the second death.”*

Revelation 22:15 - *“For without are dogs, . . . and whoremongers.”*

2 Nephi 6:70 - *“Wo unto them who commit whoredoms: for they shall be thrust down to hell.”*

D&C 42:7 - *“He that looketh upon a woman to lust after her, shall deny the faith, and shall not have the spirit; and if he repents not, he shall be cast out. Thou shalt not commit adultery; and he that committeth adultery and repenteth not, shall be cast out.”*

IDOLATRY CALLED SPIRITUAL ADULTERY

Judges 2:17 - *“But they went a whoring after other gods, and bowed themselves unto them.”*

1 Chronicles 5:25 - *"And went a whoring after the gods of the people of the land, whom God destroyed before them."*

Ezekiel 6:9 - *"I am broken with their whorish heart, which hath departed from me, and with their eyes, which go a whoring after their idols."*

Hosea 1:2 - *"Go, take unto thee a wife of whoredoms and children of whoredoms; for the land hath committed great whoredom, departing from the Lord."*

Judges 8:27; Psalms 106:39; Jeremiah 3:1,2; 13:27; Ezekiel 16:13 - 25; 20:30, 31; 23:35; Hosea 4:12; 5:4; 9:1; *Revelation 2:22; 18:3, 9.

MONOGAMOUS MARRIAGE THE LAW OF GOD

Genesis 2:30 - *"Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh" (24).*

†**Genesis 4:3** - *"From that time forth, the sons and daughters of Adam began to divide, two and two, in the land, and to till the land, and to tend flocks; and they also begat sons and daughters."*

***Genesis 8:25** - *"And of every living thing of all flesh, two of every kind shalt thou bring into the ark, to keep alive with thee; they shall be male and female" (6:19).*

Deuteronomy 17:17 - *"Neither shall he multiply wives to himself, that his heart turn not away."*

Proverbs 5:18 - *"Let thy fountain be blessed: and rejoice with the wife of thy youth."*

Malachi 2:14, 15 - *"The Lord hath been witness between thee and the wife of thy youth, against whom thou hast dealt treacherously; yet is she thy companion, and the wife of thy covenant. And did not he make one? Yet had he the residue of the Spirit. And wherefore one? That he might seek a godly seed."*

***Matthew 19:4, 5** - *"Have ye not read, that he who made man at the beginning, made him male and female, and said, For this cause shall a man leave father and mother, and shall cleave to his wife; and they twain shall be one flesh."*

***Mark 10:6, 7** - *"From the beginning of the creation, God made them male and female. For this cause shall a man leave his father, and mother, and cleave to his wife; and they two shall be one flesh" (6 - 8).*

1 Corinthians 7:2 - *"Let every man have his own wife, and let every woman have her own husband."*

Ephesians 5:30, 31 - *"For we are members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones. For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh."*

1 Timothy 3:2, 12 - *"A bishop then must be blameless, the husband of one wife. . . Let the deacons be the husbands of one wife."*

Titus 1:5, 6 - *"And ordain elders in every city, as I had appointed thee; if any be blameless, the husband of one wife."*

Romans 7:3; 1 Corinthians 6:16; Galatians 4:21 - 30.

Jacob 2:36 - *"Hearken to the word of the Lord: For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none: For I, the Lord God, delighteth in the chastity of women."*

Jacob 2:55 - *"For they have not forgotten the commandments of the Lord, which was given unto our fathers, that they should have, save it were one wife: and concubines they should have none."*

Mosiah 1:33.

D&C 42:7 - *"Thou shalt love thy wife with all thy heart, and shall cleave unto her and none else; and he that looketh upon a woman to lust after her, shall deny the faith, and shall not have the Spirit."*

D&C 49:3 - *"For marriage is ordained of God unto man; wherefore it is lawful that he should have one wife, and they twain shall be one flesh, and all this that the earth might answer the end of its creation."*

D&C 111:2 - (Marriage covenant) *"You both mutually agree to be each other's companion, husband and wife, observing the legal rights belonging to this condition; that is, keeping yourselves wholly for each other, and from all others, during your lives?"*

D&C 111:4 - *"We believe that one man should have one wife; and one woman but one husband, except in case of death, when either is at liberty to marry again."*

POLYGAMY CONDEMNED BY GOD

***Genesis 8:2, 3** - *"When these men began to multiply on the face of the earth, and daughters were born unto them, the sons of men saw that their daughters were fair, and they took them wives even as they chose. And the Lord said unto Noah, The daughters of thy sons have sold themselves" (6: 1, 2).*

***Genesis 21:8, 10** - *"She said unto Abraham, Cast out this bondwoman and her son; for the son of this bondwoman shall not be heir with my son, Isaac. . . . And God said unto Abraham, . . . in all that Sarah has said unto thee, hearken unto her voice; for in Isaac shall thy seed be called" (10, 12).*

2 Samuel 11:27 - *"David sent and fetched her to his house, and she became his wife, and bare him a son. But the thing that David had done displeased the Lord."*

***1 Kings 11:1, 3, 4, 6** - *"But King Solomon loved many strange women, . . . and his wives turned away his heart. . . . and his heart was not Perfect with the Lord his God, and it became as the heart of David his father. . . . And Solomon did evil in the sight of the Lord, as David his father."*

Luke 17:26, 27 - *"As it was in the days of Noe, so shall it be also in the days of the Son of man. They did eat, they drank, they married wives, they were given in marriage, until the day that Noe entered into the ark, and the flood came, and destroyed them all."*

Jacob 1:15 - *"The people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old, desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son."*

Jacob 2:32, 33 - *"Thus saith the Lord, This people begin to wax in iniquity; they understand not the scriptures: for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son. Behold, David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord."*

Mosiah 7:2, 3 - *"He did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines."*

Ether 4:48 - *"Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives and concubines."*

STANDARDS OF SAINTHOOD AND CHRISTIAN LIFE ASSEMBLING

Numbers 8:9 - *"And thou shalt gather the whole assembly of the children of Israel together."*

Numbers 28:25 - *"On the seventh day ye shall have an holy convocation; ye shall do no servile work."*

Numbers 29:35 - *"On the eighth day ye shall have a solemn assembly; ye shall do no servile work therein."*

Deuteronomy 16:8 - *“And on the seventh day shall be a solemn assembly to the Lord, thy God; thou shalt do no work therein.”*

Psalms 107:32 - *“Let them exalt him also in the congregation of the people, and praise him in the assembly of the elders.”*

Psalms 111:1 - *“I will praise the Lord with my whole heart, in the assembly of the upright, and in the congregation.”*

Ezekiel 44:24 - *“They shall keep my laws and my statutes in all mine assemblies; and they shall hallow my sabbaths.”*

Joel 2:15, 16 - *“Blow the trumpet in Zion, sanctify a fast, call a solemn assembly: gather the people, sanctify the congregation, assemble the elders, gather the children.”*

Malachi 3:16 - *“Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another; and the Lord hearkened, and heard it, and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name.”*

Acts 1:4 - *“And being assembled together with them, commanded them that they should not depart from Jerusalem, but wait for the promise of the Father.”*

Acts 4:31 - *“And when they had prayed, the place was shaken where they were assembled together; and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost.”*

Acts 19:39 - *“But if ye inquire anything concerning other matters, it shall be determined in a lawful assembly.”*

Hebrews 10:25 - *“Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is; but exhorting one another; and so much the more, as ye see the day approaching.”*

D&C 42:1 - *“Hearken, O ye elders of my church, who have assembled yourselves together, in my name, even Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, the Saviour of the world.”*

D&C 85:20 - *“And I give unto you who are the first laborers in this last kingdom, a commandment, that you assemble yourselves together, and organize yourselves, and prepare yourselves; and sanctify yourselves.”*

D&C 85:36 - *“Call your solemn assembly, as I have commanded you; and as all have not faith, seek ye diligently and teach one another words of wisdom.”*

D&C 41:1; 43:3; 45:1, 2.

Moroni 6:6 - *“And the church did meet together oft, to fast and to pray, and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls: and they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.”*

Ezekiel 13:9; Micah 4:6; Acts 2:46; 11:26; 15:25; 1 Corinthians 14:23; Hebrews 12:23.

BROTHERHOOD

See Charity, Oblation, Offering, Tithing, United Order, Consecration, Gathering, Inheritance, Poor Stewardship, Storehouse, and Surplus. Zion.

ALL THINGS COMMON

Acts 2:44 - *“And all that believed were together, and had all things common.”*

Acts 4:32 - *“And the multitude of them that believed were of one heart and of one soul; neither said any of them that aught of the things which he possessed was his own; but they had all things common.”*

D&C 81:4; 3 Nephi 12:11, 12; 4 Nephi 1:3, 4, 28.

ESSENTIALS

Genesis 4:9 - *"Am I my brother's keeper?"*

†**Genesis 6:45** - *"The Lord which spake with me, the same is the God of heaven, and he is my God and your God, and ye are my brethren."*

†**Genesis 6:71** - *"Behold, thou art one in me, a son of God; and thus may all become my sons."*

Deuteronomy 17:20 - *"That his heart be not lifted up above his brethren, and that he turn not aside from the commandment."*

Psalms 133:1 - *"Behold, how good and how pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in unity."*

Mark 3:30 - *"Whosoever shall do the will of God, the same is my brother, and my sister, and mother" (35).*

Acts 7:26 - *"Sirs, ye are brethren; why do ye wrong one to another?"*

***Romans 8:29** - *"Whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to his own image, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren."*

Romans 14:13 - *"Let us not therefore judge one another any more: but judge this rather, that no man put a stumbling block or an occasion to fall in his brother's way."*

Galatians 6:1, 2 - *"Brethren, if a man be overtaken in a fault, ye which are spiritual, restore such an one in the spirit of meekness; considering thyself, lest thou also be tempted. Bear ye one another's burdens, and so fulfill the law of Christ."*

1 John 2:10, 11 - *"He that loveth his brother abideth in the light, . . . But he that hateth his brother is in darkness, and knoweth not whither he goeth."*

1 John 3:14 - 17 - *"We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren. He that loveth not his brother abideth in death. Whosoever hateth his brother is a murderer: . . . we ought to lay down our lives for the brethren. But whoso hath this world's good, and seeth his brother have need, and shutteth up his bowels of compassion from him, how dwelleth the love of God in him?"*

Proverbs 22:2; Matthew 25:41; *Luke 8:21; *17:3, 4; Acts 17:26; Romans 15:2; Galatians 5:14; James 2:8, 9; 1 Peter 2:17; 3:8.

ADMONITIONS CONCERNING BROTHERHOOD

Malachi 2:10 - *"Have we not all one father? hath not one God created us? why do we deal treacherously every man against his brother?"*

***Matthew 7:4, 5** - *"Why is it that thou beholdest the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye? Or how wilt thou say to thy brother, Let me pull out the mote out of thine eye; and canst not behold a beam in thine own eye?" (3, 4).*

Matthew 18:21, 22 - *"How oft shall my brother sin against me, and I forgive him? till seven times? Jesus said unto him, I say not unto thee, Until seven times: but, Until seventy times seven."*

***Matthew 23:5** - *"Be not ye called Rabbi; for one is your master, which is Christ; and all ye are brethren" (8).*

Matthew 25:41, 46 - *"Inasmuch as ye have done it unto one of the least of these my brethren, ye have done it unto me. . . . Inasmuch as ye did it not to one of the least of these, ye did it not to me" (40 45).*

Romans 14:10 - *"But why dost thou judge thy brother? or why dost thou set at naught thy brother? for we shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ."*

1 Corinthians 5:11 - *"I have written unto you not to keep company, if any man that is called a brother be a fornicator, or covetous, or an idolater, or a railer, or a drunkard, or an extortioner; with such all one no not to eat."*

1 Corinthians 6:6 - 8 - *"Brother goeth to law with brother, and that before the unbelievers. . . . Why do ye not rather take wrong? Why do ye not rather suffer yourselves to be defrauded? Nay, ye do wrong, and defraud, and that your brethren."*

2 Thessalonians 3:6, 14, 15 - *"Withdraw yourselves from every brother that walketh disorderly, . . . And if any man obey not our word by this epistle, note that man, and have no company with him, that he may be ashamed. Yet count him not as an enemy, but admonish him as a brother."*

***James 3:1; 4:11; 5:9** - *"My brethren, strive not for the mastery, knowing that in so doing we shall receive the greater condemnation. . . . Speak not evil one of another, brethren. . . . Grudge not one against another, brethren, lest ye be condemned."*

Proverbs 22:2.

4 Nephi 1:4 - *"And they had all things common among them, therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift."*

3 Nephi 12:11

D&C 85:41 - *"I receive you to fellowship, in a determination that is fixed, immovable, and unchangeable, to be your friend and brother, through the grace of God, in the bonds of love, to walk in all the commandments of God blameless, in thanksgiving, for ever and ever. Amen."*

D&C 4:2; 38:5; 42:14, 23; 85:40, 43.

RECONCILIATION BETWEEN BRETHERN

***Matthew 5:25, 26** - *"If thou bring thy gift to the altar, and there rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee, leave thou thy gift before the altar, and go thy way unto thy brother, and first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come and offer thy gift" (23, 24).*

***Matthew 18:15 - 17** - *"Moreover, if thy brother shall trespass against thee, go and tell him his fault between thee and him alone; if he shall hear thee, thou hast gained thy brother. But if he will not hear thee, then take with thee one or two more, that in the mouth of two or three witnesses every word may be established. And if he shall neglect to hear them, tell it unto the church; but if he neglect to hear the church, let him be unto you as a heathen man and a publican."*

***Luke 17:3, 4** - *"If your brother trespass against you, rebuke him; and if he repent, forgive him. And if he trespass against you seven times in a day, and seven times in a day turn to you again, saying, I repent; you shall forgive him."*

3 Nephi 5:72 - *"First be reconciled to thy brother, and then come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I will receive you."*

D&C 42:23 - *"And if thy brother or sister offend thee, thou shalt take him or her between him or her and thee alone; and if he or she confess, thou shalt be reconciled. And if he or she confess not, thou shalt deliver him or her up unto the church, not to the members, but to the elders. And it shall be done in a meeting, and that not before the world."*

D&C 46:1.

CHARITY

Romans 13:10 - *"Love worketh no ill to his neighbor; therefore love is the fulfilling of the law."*

1 Corinthians 13:3 - 8 - *"And though I bestow all my goods to feed the poor, and though I give my body to be burned, and have not charity, it profiteth me nothing. Charity suffereth long, and is kind;*

charity envieth not; charity vaunteth not itself, is not puffed up, doth not behave itself unseemly, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil; rejoiceth not in iniquity, but rejoiceth in the truth; beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things. Charity never faileth."

1 Corinthians 16:14 - *"Let all your things be done with charity."*

Colossians 3:14 - *"And above all these things put on charity, which is the bond of perfectness."*

1 Timothy 1:5 - *"Now the end of the commandment is charity out of a pure heart, and of a good conscience, and of faith unfeigned."*

2 Timothy 2:22 - *"Flee also youthful lusts; but follow righteousness, faith, charity, peace, with them that call on the Lord out of a pure heart."*

***1 Peter 4:8** - *"And above all things have fervent charity among yourselves; for charity preventeth a multitude of sins."*

2 Nephi: 11:107 - *"The Lord hath given a commandment, that all men should have charity, which charity is love."*

Alma 5:41 - *"See that ye have faith, hope and charity, and then ye will always abound in good works."*

Moroni 7:52, 53 - *"Wherefore, cleave unto charity, which is the greatest of all, for all things must fail; but charity is the pure love of Christ, and it endureth for ever. . . . Pray unto the Father . . . that ye may be filled with this love that ye may become the sons of God."*

D&C 11:4 - *"No one can assist in this work except he shall be humble and full of love, having faith, hope and charity, being temperate in all things whatsoever shall be entrusted to his care."*

LIBERALITY, HOSPITALITY, AND MINISTERING TO THE NEEDY

Deuteronomy 15:13, 14 - *"Thou shalt not let him go away empty; thou shalt furnish him liberally out of thy flock."*

Proverbs 11:25 - *"The liberal soul shall be made fat: and he that watereth shall be watered also himself."*

Isaiah 32:8 - *"But the liberal deviseth liberal things; and by liberal things shall he stand."*

Matthew 25:36, 37 - *"For I was in hungered, and ye gave me meat; I was thirsty, and ye gave me drink; I was a stranger, and ye took me in; naked, and ye clothed me: I was sick, and ye visited me; I was in prison and ye came unto me" (35, 36).*

***Mark 9:38** - *"And whosoever shall give you a cup of water to drink, in my name, because ye belong to Christ, verily I say unto you, He shall not lose his reward. (41).*

Luke 6:38 - *"Give, and it shall be given unto you; good measure, pressed down, and shaken together, and running over, shall men give into your bosom. For with the same measure that ye mete withal, it shall be measured to you again."*

Luke 14 13 - *"But when thou makest a feast, call the poor, the maimed, the lame, the blind."*

2 Corinthians 9:6, 7 - *"But this I say, He which soweth sparingly shall reap also sparingly; and he which soweth bountifully shall reap also bountifully. Every man according as he purposeth in his heart, so let him give; not grudgingly, or of necessity; for God loveth a cheerful giver."*

Hebrews 13:16 - *"But to do good and to communicate forget not; for with such sacrifices God is well pleased."*

***James 2:16** - *"For if a brother or sister be naked and destitute, and one of you say, Depart in peace, be warmed and filled; notwithstanding he give not those things which are needful to the body; what profit is your faith unto such?" (15, 16).*

1 Peter 4:9 - *"Use hospitality one to another without grudging."*

1 John 3:17 - *“But whoso hath this world’s good, and seeth his brother have need, and shutteth up his bowels of compassion from him, how dwelleth the love of God in him?”*

Romans 12:13; *1 Corinthians 9:11 - 14; 1 Timothy 3:2; Titus 1:8.

Jacob 2:24 - *“After ye have obtained a hope in Christ, . . . ye shall obtain riches, if ye seek them. . . . for the intent to do good; to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, . . . and administer relief to the sick, and the afflicted.”*

Mosiah 2:30, 31 - *“Perhaps thou shalt say, The man has brought upon himself his misery; therefore I will stay my hand. . . . But . . . whosoever doeth this, the same has great cause to repent.”*

Mosiah 2:43, 44 - *“Impart of your substance to the poor, every man according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick, and administering to their relief. . . . And see that all these things are done in wisdom and order; for it is not requisite that a man should run faster than he has strength.”*

Mosiah 9:60 - 62; Alma 1:40, 41; 2:19, 20; 16:223 - 225.

D&C 85:38 - *“Learn to impart one to another as the gospel requires.”*

D&C 42:8 - *“Remember the poor, and consecrate of thy properties for their support.”*

D&C 82:2 - *“And the storehouse shall be kept by the consecrations of the church, and widows and orphans shall be provided for, as also the poor.”*

D&C 44:3; 51:1, 4; 52:9; 72:3; 83:23; 101:2; 102:2.

CHILDREN

DUTIES OF PARENTS

†Genesis 6:1 - *“And Adam hearkened unto the voice of God, and called upon his sons to repent.”*

†Gen: 6:59, 61 - *“I have given unto you another law and commandment; wherefore teach it unto your children, That all men, everywhere, must repent, or they can in no wise inherit the kingdom of God. . . . Therefore I give unto you a commandment, to teach these things freely unto your children.”*

Deuteronomy 4:10 - *“I Will make them hear my words, that they may learn to fear me all the days that they shall live upon the earth, and that they may teach their children.”*

Deuteronomy 6:6, 7 - *“These words, which I command thee this day, shall be in thine heart; and thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way.”*

Psalms 78:5, 6 - *“He established a testimony in Jacob, and appointed a law in Israel, which he commanded our fathers, that they should make them known to their children: that the generation to come might know them, even the children which should be born; who should arise and declare them to their children.”*

Proverbs 13:24 - *“He that spareth his rod hateth his son; but he that loveth him chasteneth him betimes.”*

Proverbs 22:6 - *“Train up a child in the way he should go: and when he is old, he will not depart from it.”*

Proverbs 29:15 - *“The rod and reproof give wisdom; but a child left to himself bringeth his mother to shame.”*

Ephesians 6:4 - *“And ye fathers provoke not your children to wrath; but bring them up in the nurture and admonition of the Lord.”*

Colossians 3:21.

Mosiah 2:25 - 27 - *“And ye will not suffer your children, that they go hungry, or naked; neither will ye suffer that they transgress the laws of God, and fight and quarrel one with another, and serve the*

devil, who is the master of sin. . . . But ye will teach them to walk in the ways of truth and soberness; ye will teach them to love one another, and to serve one another."

3 Nephi 8:52 - *"Pray in your families unto the Father always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed."*

D&C 68:4 - *"And again, inasmuch as parents have children in Zion, or in any of her stakes which are organized, that teach them not to understand the doctrine of repentance; faith in Christ the Son of the living God; and of baptism and the gift of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands when eight years old, the sin be upon the heads of the parents; for this shall be a law unto the inhabitants of Zion, or in any of her stakes which are organized; and their children shall be baptized for the remission of their sins when eight years old, and receive the laying on of hands: and they shall also teach their children to pray and to walk uprightly before the Lord."*

D&C 62:2 - *"All children have claim upon their parents for their maintenance until they are of age."*

D&C 90:6 - *"I have commanded you to bring up your children in light and truth, but verily I say unto you . . . you have continued under this condemnation; for you have not taught your children . . . according to the commandments."*

D&C 90:7 - *"He hath not kept the commandments concerning his children; therefore firstly set in order thy house."*

D&C 90:8 - *"You have not kept the commandments, and must needs stand rebuked before the Lord. Your family must needs repent and forsake some things, and give more earnest heed to your sayings, or be removed out of their place."*

CONFESSION OF SINS

Numbers 5:6, 7 - *"When a man or woman shall commit any sin that men commit, to do a trespass against the Lord, and that person be guilty, Then they shall confess their sin which they have done: and he shall recompense his trespass with the principal thereof, and add unto it the fifth part thereof, and give it unto him against whom he hath trespassed."*

James 5:16 - *"Confess your faults one to another, and pray for one another."*

1 John 1:9 - *"If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness."*

D&C 42:23 - *"And if thy brother or sister offend thee, thou shalt take him or her between him or her and thee alone; and if he or she confess, thou shalt be reconciled. And if he or she confess not, thou shalt deliver him or her up unto the church, not to the members, but to the elders. And it shall be done in a meeting, and that not before the world. And if thy brother or sister offend many, he or she shall be chastened before many. And if anyone offend openly, he or she shall be rebuked openly, that he or she may be ashamed. And if he or she confess not, he or she shall be delivered up unto the law of God. If any shall offend in secret, he or she shall be rebuked in secret, that he or she may have opportunity to confess in secret to him or her whom he or she has offended, and to God, that the church may not speak reproachfully of him or her."*

HISTORICAL NOTES

The New Testament doctrine of confession of sins taught by the church appears to have been recognized in the early centuries of the ancient church, but later was confined to auricular confession to a priest, contrary to its original observance, in private. Of the early rule, Neander states:

“Tertullian says, ‘they should pray to God for the forgiveness of their sins, make confession of their sins before the Church, and begging all their Christian brethren to pray in their behalf, should throw themselves at the feet of the presbyters, and the known friends of God.’” - Section II, page 129.

Cave’s *Primitive Christianity* says concerning their views of confession:

“At these times also they made open confession of their faults; this being accounted the very spring of repentance, and without which they concluded it could not be real. . . . So that the satisfaction, which they reckoned they made to God, consisted in seeking to avert his displeasure, and to regain his forfeited favor, by a deep contrition and sorrow for sin, by a real acknowledgement and forsaking of their faults, and by an humble giving to God the glory both of his mercy and his justice.” - Volume II, Part III, chapter V, pages 133, 134.

The primitive church early usage that those who sinned privately might confess in public, was modified in the fifth century, of which Mosheim states:

“Among the Latins, grievous offenders, who before had to confess their sins in public, were relieved from this unpleasant duty; for *Leo* the Great gave them liberty to confess their crimes privately to a priest selected for that purpose. In this way the ancient discipline, the sole barrier against shameful and indecent conduct, was removed; and the actions of men were subjected to the scrutiny of the clergy, which was greatly for their interest.” - Century V, Part II, chapter IV Section 3

In a footnote (5) Dr. Murdock comments on this discipline of the church, and states that it applied only to private offenses, as follows:

“All *public* offenders, and all such as were *proved* guilty of gross crimes, were still liable to *public* censures. But the ancient practice of *voluntary* confession before the church, of *private* offenses and *secret* sins, had for some time gone into desuetude. Instead of such confessions before the church, in most places both of the East and the West, these *voluntary* confessions were made only to a priest, in private and he directed the persons to such a course as he deemed proper.”

In the earlier periods, usage was not uniform everywhere at all times, but tended to become more nearly so in the course of time. Tytler remarks:

“Auricular confession, which had been abolished in the East in the fourth century, began to be in use in the West in the age of Charlemagne (742 - 814), and has ever since prevailed in the Romish church.” - *General History*, Part Second, Section VI, Section 7.

Eventually official action established this as a rule, of which Hagenbach’s *History of Doctrines*, Volume II, informs us:

“The ecclesiastical institution of *auricular confession* was established by the fourth Council of the Lateran (1215). . . . The practice of imposing fines instead of bodily punishments, gave rise to the sale Indulgences.” - Third Period, Sixth Division, Section 198, page 111.

CONTEND FOR RIGHT

Proverbs 28:4 - “They that forsake the law praise the wicked; but such as keep the law contend with them.”

Acts 9:29 - “Paul disputed against the Grecians.”

Acts 15:2 - “Paul and Barnabas had no small dissension and disputation with them.”

Acts 17:17 - “Paul disputed in the synagogue and in the market daily.”

Acts 19:8 - 12 - “Paul disputed in the synagogue for three months concerning the kingdom of God.”

Jude 1:3 - *"Ye should earnestly contend for the faith which was once delivered unto the saints."*

***Isaiah 49:25; Jude 1:9.**

D&C 43:4 - *"Not sent to be taught, but to teach . . . ye are to be taught from on high."*

D&C 71:2 - *"Confound your enemies; call upon them to meet you, both in public and in private."*

D&C 105:3 - *"Contend thou, therefore, morning by morning, and day after day; let thy warning voice go forth, and when the night cometh, let not the inhabitants of the earth slumber because of thy speech."*

D&C 129:9 - *"Though there may have been differences of opinion, these differences have been held in unity of purpose and desire for the good of my people, and will result in helping to bring to pass a unity of understanding."*

DRESS

1 Timothy 2:9, 10 - *"In like manner also, that women adorn themselves in modest apparel, with shamefacedness and sobriety; not with braided hair, or gold, or pearls, or costly array; but with good works."*

***1 Peter 3:3, 4** - *"Let your adorning be not that outward adorning of plaiting the hair, and wearing of gold, or putting on of apparel; but let it be the hidden man of the heart, in that which is not corruptible, even the ornament of a meek and quiet spirit, which is in the sight of God of great price."*

EDUCATION

Psalms 119:73 - *"Give me understanding, that I may learn thy commandments."*

Proverbs 2:2 - *"So that thou incline thine ear unto wisdom, and apply thine heart to understanding."*

Proverbs 4:7 - *"Wisdom is the principal thing; therefore get wisdom; and with all thy getting get understanding."*

1 Thessalonians 5:21 - *"Prove all things; hold fast that which is good."*

2 Timothy 2:15 - *"Study to show thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth."*

2 Timothy 3:15 - *"From a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus."*

2 Nephi 6: 61 - *"But to be learned is good, if they hearken unto the counsels of God."*

Proverbs 1:5; 2:3 - 5; 3:13 - 15; 4:5 - 7; 8:1 - 11; 12:1; Isaiah 28:10; 2 Peter 1:5, 6.

KNOWLEDGE, WISDOM, AND LEARNING

Job 28:28 - *"The fear of the Lord, that is wisdom; and to depart from evil is understanding."*

Job 32:7 - 9 - *"Years should teach wisdom."*

Proverbs 1:7 - *"The fear of the Lord is the beginning of knowledge."*

Proverbs 3:5, 7 - *"Lean not unto thine own understanding. . . . Be not wise in thine own eyes."*

Proverbs 9: 10 - *"The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom; and the knowledge of the Holy is understanding."*

Acts 7: 22 - *"Moses was learned in all the wisdom of the Egyptians."*

1 Corinthians 3:19 - *"The wisdom of the world."*

1 Corinthians 8:1 - *"Knowledge puffeth up, but charity edifieth."*

1 Corinthians 12:8 - *"The gift of wisdom."*

Ephesians 1:17 - *"Spirit of wisdom and revelation."*

James 1:5 - *"If any lack wisdom, let him ask of God."*

James 3:17 - *"Wisdom from above is pure."*

1 Corinthians 1:19, 20; Colossians 2:3; 2 Timothy 3:1, 2, 7.

INSTRUCTION IN "THE DOCTRINE OF THE KINGDOM"

This notable passage deals with the study program of a people devoted to the building of the kingdom of God. Readers will observe that it summarizes briefly the educational curriculum of the church, and includes many of the fields of study offered by a modern university. It is an ideal to be held before the people of the church.

D&C 85:21 - *"I give unto you a commandment, that you shall teach one another the doctrine of the kingdom; teach ye diligently and my grace shall attend you, that you may be instructed more perfectly in theory, in principle, in doctrine, in the law of the gospel, in all things that pertain unto the kingdom of God, that is expedient for you to understand; of things both in heaven, and in earth, and under the earth; things which have been; things which are; things which must shortly come to pass things which are at home; things which are abroad; the wars and perplexities of the nations; and the judgments which are on the land; and a knowledge also of countries, and of kingdoms, that ye may be prepared in all things when I shall send you again, to magnify the calling whereunto I have called you, and the mission with which I have commissioned you."*

D&C 85:36 - *"Call your solemn assembly, as I have commanded you; and as all have not faith, seek ye diligently and teach one another words of wisdom; yea, seek ye out of the best books words of wisdom, seek learning even by study, and also by faith."*

D&C 87:5 - *"And study and learn, and become acquainted with all good books, and with languages, tongues, and people."*

D&C 90:5, 6 - *"Intelligence, or the light of the truth, was not created or made, neither indeed can be. All truth is independent in that sphere in which God has placed it, to act for itself, as all intelligence also, otherwise there is no existence. . . . The glory of God is intelligence, or, in other words, light and truth; light and truth forsaketh that evil one."*

D&C 90:12 - *"Obtain a knowledge of history, and of countries, and of kingdoms, of laws of God and man, and all this for the salvation of Zion."*

D&C 119:2 - *"Study to approve their ministrations to the people by candor in speech and courtesy in demeanor, that as ministers of the gospel they may win souls unto Christ."*

D&C 42:17; 76:2; 85:21; 94:1; 104:44.

2 Nephi 6:59, 60 - *"When they are learned, they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves."*

EXAMPLE GOOD CONDUCT

***Matthew 5:16** - *"Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the light of the world; a city that is set on a hill cannot be hid" (14).*

1 Timothy 4:12 - *"Let no man despise thy youth; but be thou an example of the believers, in word, in conversation, in charity, in spirit, in faith, in purity."*

Titus 2:7 - *"In all things showing thyself a pattern of good works; in doctrine showing uncorruptness, gravity, sincerity."*

James 5:10 - *"Take, my brethren, the prophets, who have spoken in the name of the Lord, for an example of suffering affliction, and of patience."*

1 Thessalonians 5:6; 1 Peter 2:12.

RIGHTEOUS EXAMPLE

Jacob 2:46 - *"Ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before them; and the sobbings of their hearts ascend up to God against you."*

Alma 12:19 - *"Ye shall be patient in long suffering and afflictions, that ye may shew forth good examples unto them in me."*

3 Nephi 8:49 - *"I have set an example for you" - (Jesus).*

D&C 119:3 - *"That your counsel to be temperate may be made effectual by your example."*

FASTING

2 Chronicles 20:3 - *"And Jehoshaphat feared, and set himself to seek the Lord, and proclaimed a fast throughout all Judah."*

Ezra 8:21, 23 - *"Then I proclaimed a fast there, at the river of Ahava, that we might afflict ourselves before our God, to seek of him a right way for us, and for our little ones, and for all our substance."*

Isaiah 58:6, 7 - *"Is not this the fast that I have chosen? to loose the bands of wickedness, to undo the heavy burdens, and to let the oppressed go free, and that ye break every yoke? Is it not to deal thy bread to the hungry, and that thou bring the poor that are cast out to thy house? when thou seest the naked, that thou cover him; and that thou hide not thyself from thine own flesh?"*

Jeremiah 36:9 - *"They proclaimed a fast before the Lord to all the people in Jerusalem, and to all the people that came from the cities of Judah unto Jerusalem."*

Joel 1:14 - *"Sanctify ye a fast, call a solemn assembly, gather the elders and all the inhabitants of the land into the house of the Lord your God; and cry unto the Lord."*

Joel 2:12, 15 - *"Turn ye even to me with all your heart, and with fasting and with weeping, and with mourning. . . . Blow the trumpet in Zion, sanctify a fast, call a solemn assembly."*

***Matthew 6:18** - *"But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thy head and wash thy face, that thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father who is in secret; and thy Father who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly" (17, 18).*

Omni 1:47 - *"Offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end."*

Alma 4:6 - *"The children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayer, in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God."*

4 Nephi 1:13 - *"Continuing in fasting and prayer, and in meeting together oft, both to pray and to hear the word of the Lord."*

Alma 12:5, 14; Helaman 2:31; 3 Nephi 12:14; 3 Nephi 5:108, 109; Mosiah 11:185.

D&C 85:21 - *"Also, I give unto you a commandment, that you shall continue in prayer and fasting from this time forth."*

D&C 85:36 - *"Establish . . . a house of prayer, a house of fasting, a house of faith, a house of learning, a house of glory, a house of order, a house of God."*

D&C 59:3; 92:1, 3.

REMARKABLE INSTANCES OF FASTING

Deuteronomy 9:9, 18 - *"When I was gone up into the mount to receive the tables of stone, even the tables of the covenant which the Lord made with you, . . . I fell down before the Lord, as at the first, forty days and forty nights; I did neither eat bread nor drink water, because of all your sins which ye sinned, in doing wickedly in the sight of the Lord, to provoke him to anger."*

1 Kings 19:7, 8 - *"And the angel of the Lord came again the second time, and touched him, and said, Arise and eat; because the journey is too great for thee. And he arose, and did eat and drink, and went in the strength of that meat forty days and forty nights unto Horeb the mount of God."*

Daniel 10:2, 3 - *"I ate no pleasant bread, neither came flesh nor wine in my mouth, neither did I anoint myself at all, till three whole weeks were fulfilled."*

***Matthew 4:2** - *"And when he had fasted forty days and forty nights, and had communed with God, he was afterwards an hungered, and was left to be tempted of the devil."*

FORGIVENESS

***Matthew 6:16** - *"For if ye forgive men their trespasses, who trespass against you, your heavenly Father will also forgive you; but if ye forgive not men their trespasses, neither will your heavenly Father forgive you your trespasses" (14, 15).*

Matthew 18:21, 22 - *"Then came Peter to him and said, Lord, how oft shall my brother sin against me, and I forgive him? Till seven times? Jesus said unto him, I say not unto thee, until seven times; but, until seventy times seven."*

Luke 6:37 - *"Forgive, and ye shall be forgiven."*

***Luke 17:3, 4** - *"Take heed to yourselves. If your brother trespass against you, rebuke him; and if he repent forgive him. And if he trespass against you seven times in a day, and seven times in a day turn to you again, saying, I repent; you shall forgive him."*

Ephesians 4:32 - *"And be ye kind one to another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as God for Christ's sake hath forgiven you."*

Colossians 3:13 - *"Forbearing one another, and forgiving one another, if any man have a quarrel against any; even as Christ forgave you, so also do ye."*

Mosiah 11:140 - *"And ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses; for verily I say unto you, he that forgiveth not his neighbor's trespasses, when he says that he repents, the same hath brought himself under condemnation."*

D&C 64:2 - *"My disciples, in days of old, sought occasion against one another, and forgave not one another in their hearts; and for this evil they were afflicted and sorely chastened; wherefore I say unto you, that ye ought to forgive one another, for he that forgiveth not his brother his trespasses, standeth condemned before the Lord, for there remaineth in him the greater sin. I, the Lord, will forgive whom I will forgive, but of you it is required to forgive all men; and ye ought to say in your hearts, Let God judge between me and thee, and reward thee according to thy deeds."*

D&C 64:3; 81:1; 95:7.

RETURNING GOOD FOR EVIL

***Matthew 5:46 - 48** - *"But I say unto you, love your enemies; bless them that curse you; do good to them that hate you; and pray for them which despitefully use you and persecute you; that ye may be the children of your Father who is in heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust. For if ye love only them which love you, what reward have you? Do not even the publicans the same?" (44 - 46)*

Romans 12:14, 20 - *“Bless them which persecute you; . . . Therefore if thine enemy hunger, feed him; if he thirst, give him drink.”*

D&C 95:5 - *“If men will smite you, or your families once, and ye bear it patiently and revile not against them, neither seek revenge, ye shall be rewarded; but if ye bear it not patiently, it shall be accounted unto you as being meted out a just measure unto you.*

. . . If your enemy shall smite you the second time, and you revile not against your enemy, and bear it patiently, your reward shall be an hundredfold. If he shall smite you the third time, and ye bear it patiently, your reward shall be doubled unto you fourfold.”

1Thessalonians 5:15. 1 Peter 3:9.

GOVERNMENT

Exodus 23:6, 7 - *“Thou shalt not wrest the judgment of thy poor in his cause. Keep thee far from a false matter.”*

Deuteronomy 1:17 - *“Ye shall not respect persons in judgment; but ye shall hear the small as well as the great.”*

Deuteronomy 5:20 - *“Neither shalt thou bear false witness against thy neighbor.”*

Deuteronomy 27:19 - *“Cursed be he that perverteth the judgment of the stranger, fatherless, and widow.”*

Ezra 7:26 - *“Whosoever will not do the law of thy God, and the law of the king, let judgment be executed speedily upon him.”*

Proverbs 8:15, 16 - *“By me kings reign, and princes decree justice. By me princes rule, and nobles, even all the judges of the earth.”*

Proverbs 29:2 - *“When the righteous are in authority, the people rejoice; but when the wicked beareth rule, the people mourn.”*

***Matthew 5:27** - *“Agree with thine adversary quickly, while thou art in the way with him; lest at any time thine adversary deliver thee to the judge and the judge deliver thee to the officer, and thou be cast into prison.” (25).*

***Matthew 5:42** - *“If any man will sue thee at the law, and take away thy coat, let him have it; and if he sue thee again, let him have thy cloak also” (40).*

***Luke 12:67** - *“Why goest thou to thine adversary for a magistrate, when thou art in the way with thine enemy? Why not give diligence that thou mayest be delivered from him, lest he hale thee to the judge, and the judge deliver thee to the officer, and the officer cast thee into prison?” (58).*

***Romans 7:1** - *“Know ye not, brethren, (for I speak to them that know the law,) how that the law hath dominion over a man only as long as he liveth?”*

Romans 13:3 - *“For rulers are not a terror to good works, but to the evil.”*

1 Corinthians 6:1, 6 - 8 - *“Dare any of you, having a matter against another, go to law before the unjust, and not before the saints? . . . But brother goeth to law with brother, and that before the unbelievers. Now therefore there is utterly a fault among you, because ye go to law one with another, Why do ye not rather take wrong? why do ye not rather suffer yourselves to be defrauded? Nay, ye do wrong, and defraud, and that your brethren.”*

Titus 3:1 - *“Put them in mind to be subject to principalities and powers, to obey magistrates.”*

James 2:9 - *“But if ye have respect to persons, ye commit sin, and are convinced of the law as transgressors.”*

1 Peter 2:13, 14 - *“Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord’s sake: whether it be to the king, as supreme; or unto governors, as unto them that are sent by him for the punishment of evil doers, and for the praise of them that do well.”*

***Matthew 22:17 - 21; *Rom 13:1 - 8.**

D&C 17:1 - *“Organized church agreeable to the laws of our country.”*

D&C 51:1 - *“Financial law shall be carried out and united order made sure according to the laws of administration.”*

D&C 58:5 - *“Let no man break the laws of the land, for he that keepeth the laws of God hath no need to break the laws of the land; wherefore be subject to the powers that be, until He reigns whose right it is to reign.”*

D&C 95:2 - *“And now, verily I say unto you, concerning the laws of the land, It is my will that my people should observe to do all things whatsoever I command them, and that law of the land, which is constitutional, supporting that principle of freedom, in maintaining rights and privileges belongs to all mankind and is justifiable before me; therefore, I, the Lord, justifieth you, and your brethren of my church, in befriending that law which is the constitutional law of the land.”*

D&C 98:10 - *“It is my will that they should continue to importune for redress, and redemption, by the hands of those who are placed as rulers, and are in authority over you, according to the laws and constitution of the people which I have suffered to be established, and should be maintained for the rights and protection of all flesh, according to just and holy principles, . . . Therefore, it is not right that any man should be in bondage, one to another. And for this purpose have I established the constitution of this land, by the hands of wise men whom I raised up unto this very purpose, and redeemed the land by the shedding of blood.”*

D&C 42:21, 22; 44:2; 82:1; 90:12; 111:4; 112 (on Govt. and Laws); 122:12; 128:1, 5, 7; 131:2.

IDLENESS AND SLOTHFULNESS CONDEMNED

Proverbs 6:6, 9 - 11 - *“Go to the ant, thou sluggard; consider her ways, and be wise;. . . . How long wilt thou sleep, O sluggard? when wilt thou arise out of thy sleep? Yet a little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to sleep: so shall thy poverty come as one that travelleth.”*

Proverbs 12:24 - *“The hand of the diligent shall bear rule: but the slothful shall be under tribute.”*

Proverbs 15:19 - *“The way of the slothful man is as an hedge of thorns; but the way of the righteous is made plain.”*

Proverbs 19:15 - *“Slothfulness casteth into a deep sleep; and an idle soul shall suffer hunger.”*

Proverbs 20:4 - *“The sluggard will not plow by reason of the cold; therefore, shall he beg in harvest, and have nothing.”*

Proverbs 26:14, 16 - *“As the door turneth upon his hinges, so doth the slothful upon his bed. . . . The sluggard is wiser in his own conceit than several men that can render a reason.”*

Proverbs 31:27 - *“She looketh well to the ways of her household, and eateth not the bread of idleness.”*

Ecclesiastes 10:18 - *“By much slothfulness the building decayeth; and through idleness of the hands the house droppeth through.”*

***Matthew 25:26, 27** - *“O wicked and slothful servant. . . thou oughtest to have put my money to the changers, and at my coming I should have received my own with usury.”*

Romans 12:11 - *“Not slothful in business; fervent in spirit; serving the Lord.”*

1 Timothy 5:12, 13 - *“Having damnation, because they have cast off their first faith. And withal they learn to be idle, wandering about from house to house; and not only idle, but tattlers also and busybodies, speaking things which they ought not.”*

Hebrews 6:12 - *“That ye be not slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises.”*

D&C 42:12 - *“Thou shalt not be idle; for he that is idle shall not eat the bread nor wear the garments of the laborer.”*

D&C 58:6 - *“He that is compelled in all things, the same is a slothful and not a wise servant; wherefore he receiveth no reward. . . . But he that doeth not anything until he is commanded, and receiveth a commandment with doubtful heart, and keepeth it with slothfulness, the same is damned.”*

D&C 60:3 - *“Thou shalt not idle away thy time; neither shalt thou bury thy talent that it may not be known.”*

D&C 68:4 - *“And the inhabitants of Zion, also, shall remember their labors, inasmuch as they are appointed to labor, in all faithfulness; for the idler shall be had in remembrance before the Lord.”*

D&C 75:5 - *“Let every man be diligent in all things. And the idler shall not have place in the church, except he repents and mends his ways.”*

D&C 85:38 - *“See that ye love one another; cease to be covetous; learn to impart one to another as the gospel requires; cease to be idle.”*

D&C 118:4 - *“If they be found transgressors, or idle servants, ye shall not uphold them. But be not hasty in withdrawing your support from them, peradventure ye shall injure my work. Even now I am not well pleased with some, but space is granted for repentance and a renewal of diligence.”*

SIN CONDEMNED

***Mark 7:20** - *“For from within, out of the hearts of men, proceed evil thoughts, adulteries, fornications, murders, thefts, covetousness, wickedness, deceit, lasciviousness, an evil eye, blasphemy, pride, foolishness” (21, 22).*

1 Corinthians 6:9, 10 - *“Be not deceived; neither fornicators, nor idolators, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind, nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God.”*

Galatians 5:19 - 21 - *“Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these, Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like.”*

Ephesians 5:3 - *“But fornication, and all uncleanness, or covetousness, let it not be once named among you, as becometh saints.”*

2 Nephi 11:110, 111 - *“God hath commanded that men should not murder; that they should not lie; that they should not steal; that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain; that they should not envy; that they should not have malice; . . . Whoso doeth them shall perish, for none of these iniquities come of the Lord.”*

Alma 16:11; 17:62 - 64.

D&C 59:2 - *“Thou shalt not steal; neither commit adultery; nor kill, nor do anything like unto it.*

D&C 42:6, 7, 21, 22.

LEADERSHIP

***Matthew 5:16** - *“I give unto you to be the light of the world; a city that is set on a hill cannot be hid” (14).*

†Mark 9:46 - *“And if thine eye which seeth for thee, him that is appointed to watch over thee to show thee light, become a transgressor and offend [offend] thee, pluck him out.”*

Philemon 2:15 - "That ye may be blameless and harmless, the sons of God, without rebuke, in the midst of a crooked and perverse nation, among whom ye shine as lights in the world."

1 Peter 5:1 - 3 - "Feed the flock. Oversight not by constraint but willingly. Neither as overlords, but as ensamples to the flock.

†**Genesis 7:15; Exodus 13:21; Psalms 43:3; 78:52 - 54; Isaiah 11:6; 55:4; 63:11 - 14; *Matthew 4:1; *10:31 - 35; 19:21; John 10:2 - 5; 21:19 - 22; Romans 8:14; Galatians 5:18, 25; 2 Thessalonians 3:7 - 9; 1 Peter 2:21 - 25.**

D&C 19:2 - "Wherefore, meaning the church, thou shalt give heed unto all his words, and commandments, which he shall give unto you, as he receiveth them, walking in all holiness before me."

D&C 120:2 - (Officers to preside in conference).

D&C 122:1 - 3 - "My servants have been harsh one with another; and some have not been sufficiently willing to hear those whose duty it is to teach the revelations which my church has already received. Until my people shall hear and heed those who are set in the church to teach the revelations there will be misunderstanding and confusion among the members. The burden of the care of the church is laid on him who is called to preside over the high priesthood of the church, and on those who are called to be his counselors; and they shall teach according to the spirit of wisdom and understanding, and as they shall be directed by revelation, from time to time."

D&C 125:14 - (Church governed by law in revelation, not by spiritual manifestations unless through greater officers).

D&C 126:10 - (The Bishopric interpret temporal law unless liberties of people in jeopardy).

D&C 131:4 - (Those in responsible positions and authority should be upheld).

D&C 132:3 - (Need of confidence in the men chosen for positions of greater responsibility).

D&C 83:2, 4.

BEWARE OF FALSE LEADERS

Isaiah 9:16 - *"For the leaders of this people cause them to err; and they that are led of them are destroyed."*

Jeremiah 23:1 - *"Woe be unto the pastors that destroy and scatter the sheep of my pasture; saith the Lord."*

Ezekiel 13:3 - *"Thus saith the Lord God; woe unto the foolish prophets, that follow their own spirit; and have seen nothing."*

Matthew 15:13 - *"Let them alone; they be blind leaders of the blind; and if the blind lead the blind, both shall fall into the ditch" (14).*

Luke 6:39 - *"Can the blind lead the blind? Shall they not both fall into the ditch?"*

Revelation 13:10 - *"He that leadeth into captivity shall go into captivity."*

Jeremiah 17:5; Zechariah 11:17.

Romans 6:22 - *"Being made free from sin, and become servants to God, ye have your fruit unto holiness, and the end everlasting life."*

Romans 8:6 - *"To be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace."*

Romans 10:15 - *"How beautiful are the feet of them that preach the gospel of peace."*

Romans 11:16 - *"For if the first fruit be holy, the lump is also holy, and if the root be holy, so are the branches."*

Romans 12:18 - *"If it be possible, as much as lieth in you, live peaceably with all men."*

Romans 13:10 - *"Love worketh no ill to his neighbor; therefore love is the fulfilling of the law."*

Romans 14:17 - *"The kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but righteousness, and peace, and joy in the Holy Ghost."*

Galatians 5:22 - *"But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith."*

Ephesians 1:4 - *"He hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love."*

Philemon 2:2 - *"Fulfill ye my joy, that ye be like - minded, having the same love, being of one accord, of one mind."*

Hebrews 12:14 - *"Follow peace with all men, and holiness, without which no man shall see the Lord."*

James 3:17, 18 - *"But the wisdom that is from above is first pure then peaceable, gentle, and easy to be entreated, full of mercy and good fruits, without partiality, and without hypocrisy. And the fruit of righteousness is sown in peace of them that make peace."*

1 Peter 3:8 - *"Finally, be ye all of one mind, having compassion one of another; love as brethren, be pitiful, be courteous."*

1 John 4:20, 21 - *"If a man say, I love God, and hateth his brother, he is a liar; for he that loveth not his brother whom he hath seen, how can he love God whom he hath not seen?"*

Mosiah 11:16 - *"Thus did Alma teach his people, that every man should love his neighbor as himself; that there should be no contention among them."*

Moroni 10:29 - *"Love God with all your might, mind and strength."*

D and C. 85:38 - *"See that ye love one another. . . . Above all things, clothe yourselves with the bonds of charity, as with a mantle, which is the bond of perfectness and peace."*

PERSONAL QUALITIES HOLINESS, PEACE, AND LOVE

***Matthew 5:11** - *"And blessed are all the peacemakers; for they shall be called the children of God" (9).*

Matthew 19:19 - *"Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself."*

***Mark 9:50** - *"Have salt in yourselves, and have peace one with another."*

John 13:34 - *"A new commandment I give unto you, That ye love one another; as I have loved you, that ye also love one another."*

John 15:12, 13 - *"This is my commandment, That ye love one another, as I have loved you. Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends."*

HUMILITY

Psalms 34:2 - *"My soul shall make her boast in the Lord; the humble shall hear thereof, and be glad."*

Proverbs 22:4 - *"By humility and the fear of the Lord are riches, and honour, and life."*

Isaiah 57:15 - *"For thus saith the high and lofty One that inhabiteth eternity, whose name is Holy; I dwell in the high and holy place, with him also that is of a contrite and humble spirit, to revive the spirit of the humble."*

Micah 6:8 - *"He that showeth thee, O man, what is good; and what doth the Lord require of thee, but to do justly, and to love mercy, and to walk humbly with thy God?"*

***Matthew 5:4, 5** - *"Yea, blessed are they who shall believe on your words, and come down into the depth of humility, and be baptized in my name; for they shall be visited with fire and the Holy Ghost,*

and shall receive a remission of their sins. Yea, blessed are the poor in spirit, who come unto me; for theirs is the kingdom of heaven" (3).

***Luke 14:10, 11** - *"But when thou art bidden, go and sit down in the lowest room; that when he who bade thee, cometh, he may say unto thee, Friend, go up higher; then shalt thou have honour of God, in the presence of them who sit at meat with thee. For whosoever exalteth himself shall be abased; and he who humbleth himself shall be exalted."*

***Luke 22:26, 27** - *"But it ought to be so with you; but he who is greatest among you, let him be as the younger; and he who is chief, as he who doth serve. For whether is he greater, who sitteth at meat, or he who serveth? I am not as he who sitteth at meat, but I am among you as he who serveth."*

Romans 12:16 - *"Mind not high things, but condescend to men of low estate. Be not wise in your own conceits."*

1 Peter 5:5 - *"Likewise, ye younger, submit yourselves unto the elder. Yea, all of you be subject one to another, and be clothed with humility; for God resisteth the proud, and giveth grace to the humble."*

Mosiah 2:16 - *"Believe that ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God."*

Alma 16:137 - *"He that truly humbleth himself and repenteth of his sins, and endureth to the end, the same shall be blessed; yea, much more blessed than they who are compelled to be humble, because of their exceeding poverty; therefore blessed are they who humble themselves without being compelled to be humble."*

D&C 11:4 - *"No one can assist in this work, except he shall be humble and full of love,"*

2 Chronicles 7:14; Psalms 9:12; 10:17; 34:18; 69:32; Proverbs 16:19; 29:23; *Isaiah 2:9; *Matthew 11:29, 30; *18:3; *23:9; *Luke 13:11; *18:14; Acts 20:19; 2 Corinthians 8:9; Philemon 2:8; Colossians 3:12; James 4:6, 10; 1 Peter 5:3, 5, 6.

MEEKNESS, PATIENCE, AND TEMPERANCE

***Matthew 5:7** - *"And blessed are the meek; for they shall inherit the earth" (5).*

Matthew 11:30 - *"Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me; for I am meek and lowly in heart; and ye shall find rest unto your souls" (29).*

***Luke 8:15** - *"But that which fell on the good ground are they who receive the word in an honest and good heart, having heard the word, keepeth what they hear, and bring forth fruit with patience."*

Luke 21:19 - *"In your patience possess ye your souls."*

Romans 2:5 - 7 - *"God who will render to every man according to his deeds; to them who by patient continuance in well doing seek for glory and honor and immortality, eternal life."*

Romans 5:3, 4 - *"Knowing that tribulation worketh patience; and patience, experience; and experience, hope."*

***Romans 8:25** - *"But if we hope for that we see not, then with patience we do wait for it."*

Romans 15:4 - *"For whatsoever things were written aforetime were written for our learning, that we through patience and comfort of the scriptures might have hope."*

2 Corinthians 6:4 - *"But in all things approving ourselves as the ministers of God, in much patience, in afflictions, in necessities, in distresses."*

Galatians 5:22, 23 - *"But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, temperance, against such there is no law."*

Ephesians 4:2 - *“With all lowliness and meekness, with long - suffering, forbearing one another in love.”*

2 Peter 1:5 - 7 - *“And besides this, giving all diligence, add to your faith virtue; and to virtue knowledge; and to knowledge temperance; and to temperance patience; and to patience godliness; and to godliness brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness charity.”*

Romans 12:12; James 1:4, 21; 3:13; 5:7, 8; 1 Peter 2:20; Revelation 13:10; 14:12.

Mosiah 1:120 - *“And becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love.”*

Alma 5:39 - *“Ye should be humble, and be submissive, and gentle; easy to be entreated; full of patience and long - suffering; being temperate in all things.”*

Alma 16:239 - *“Do not revile against those who do cast you out, . . . lest ye become sinners like unto them.”*

Ether 5:28 - *“I give unto men weakness, that they may be humble; and my grace is sufficient for all men who humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me, then will I make weak things become strong unto them.”*

Moroni 8:29 - *“The remission of sins bringeth meekness; and lowliness of heart; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost.”*

Mosiah 11:153, 154; Alma 1:29, 30; 10:28; 14:49 - 51; 17:66, 67; 18:14 - 16; Moroni 7:49 - 51.

D&C 4:2 - *“Remember faith, virtue, knowledge, temperance, patience, brotherly kindness, godliness, charity, humility, diligence.”*

D&C 30:3 - *“Be patient in afflictions, revile not against those that revile.”*

MERCY

Zechariah 7:9 - *“Thus speaketh the Lord of hosts, saying, Execute true judgment, and show mercy and compassions every man to his brother.”* *Matthew 5:9 - *“And blessed are the merciful; for they shall obtain mercy”* (7).

Luke 6:36 - *“Be ye therefore merciful, as your Father also is merciful.”*

James 2:13 - *“For he shall have judgment without mercy, that hath showed no mercy.”*

PERFECTION SHOULD BE SOUGHT

*Matthew 5:50 - *“Ye are therefore commanded to be perfect, even as your Father who is in heaven is perfect”* (48).

Matthew 19:21 - *“If thou wilt be perfect, go and sell that thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven: and come and follow me.”*

*Luke 6:40 - *“A disciple is not above his master; but every one that is perfect shall be as his master.”*

2 Corinthians 7:1 - *“Let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.”*

2 Corinthians 13:9, 11 - *“This also we wish, even your perfection. . . . Be perfect, be of good comfort, be of one mind, live in peace.”*

*Ephesians 4:13 - *“Till we, in the unity of the faith, all come to the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ.”*

Colossians 1:28 - *“Teaching every man in all wisdom; that we may present every man perfect in Christ Jesus.”*

Colossians 3:14 - *“And above all these things put on charity, which is the bond of perfectness.”*

Colossians 4:12 - *“Always laboring fervently for you in prayers, that ye may stand perfect and complete in all the will of God.”*

2 Timothy 3:17 - *“That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.”*

***Hebrews 6:1** - *“Therefore not leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection.”*

Hebrews 10:14 - *“For by one offering he hath perfected forever them that are sanctified.”*

***James 1:4** - *“But let patience have its perfect work, that ye may be perfect and entire, wanting nothing.”*

James 3:2 - *“If any man offend not in word, the same is a perfect man, and able also to bridle the whole body.”*

1 Peter 5:10 - *“But the God of all grace. . . after that ye have suffered a while, make you perfect, stablish, strengthen, settle you.”*

D&C 85:8 - *“That which is governed by law, is also preserved by law, and perfected and sanctified by the same.”*

D&C 85:38 - *“Clothe yourselves with the bonds of charity, as with a mantle, which is the bond of perfectness and peace.”*

D&C 110:18 - *“For we without them can not be made perfect; neither can they without us be made perfect. Neither can they or we be made perfect without those who have died in the gospel also.”*

John 17:23.

PERFECTION NOT YET ATTAINED

1 Corinthians 13:10 - *“But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away.”*

Ephesians 4:11, 12 - *“He gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers; for the perfecting of the saints.”*

Philemon 3:12 - *“Not as though I had already attained, either were already perfect; but I follow after.”*

Hebrews 2:10 - *“For it became him . . . in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings.”*

***Hebrews 11:40** - *“God having provided some better things for them through their sufferings, for without sufferings they could not be made perfect.”*

D&C 110:18 - *“For we without them can not be made perfect; neither can they without us be made perfect. Neither can they or we be made perfect without those who have died in the gospel also.”*

PRAYER

1 Chronicles 16:11 - *“Seek the Lord and his strength, seek his face continually.”*

***Matthew 26:38** - *“Watch and pray ye, that ye enter not into temptation” (41).”*

***Luke 18:1** - *“And he spake a parable unto them, saying, that men ought always to pray and not faint.”*

Colossians 4:2 - *“Continuing in prayer, and watch in the same with thanksgiving.”*

1 Timothy 2:8 - *“I will therefore that men pray everywhere, lifting up holy hands, without wrath and doubting.”*

Alma 16:219, 221, 222 - *“Humble yourselves, and continue in prayer unto him; cry unto him when ye are in your fields; yea, over all your flocks. Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both morning, mid - day and evening; . . . But this is not all; ye must pour out your souls in your closets, and in your secret places. . . And when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full, drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your welfare and also for the welfare of those who are around you.”*

2 Nephi 14:11, 12; Enos 1:1, 5, 6, 16, 18; Alma 1:85, 86; 6:11; 3 Nephi 9:18 - 30; Ether 1:13, 39 - 41, 61 - 67.

D&C 18:4 - *"Thou shalt pray vocally as well as in thy heart, yea, before the world as well as in secret; in public as well as in private."*

D&C 24:3 - *"My soul delighteth in the song of the heart; yea, the song of the righteous is a prayer unto me."*

D&C 27:4 - *"For all things must be done in order and by common consent in the Church, by the prayer of faith."*

D&C 30:4 - *"Pray always lest you enter into temptation, and lose your reward."*

D&C 59:2 - *"And that thou mayest more fully keep thyself unspotted from the world, thou shalt go to the house of prayer and offer up thy sacraments upon my holy day."*

D&C 61:6 - *"Pray always that you enter not into temptation, that you may abide the day of his coming."*

D&C 68:4 - *"He that observeth not his prayers before the Lord in the season thereof, let him be had in remembrance before the judge of my people."*

D&C 90:8 - *"Pray always, lest that wicked one have power in you and remove you out of your place."*

D&C 100:7 - *"All victory and glory is brought to pass unto you through your diligence, faithfulness, and prayers of faith."*

D&C 9:1; 21:5; 22:3; 25:1; 28:2; 46:3; 65:1; 74:2; 85:40; 90:11; 98:11.

GOD'S PROMISE TO HEAR AND ANSWER

Deuteronomy 4:29 - *"But if from thence thou shalt seek the Lord thy God, thou shalt find him, if thou seek him with all thy heart and with all thy soul."*

Psalms 50:14, 15 - *"Offer unto God thanksgiving, and pay thy vows unto the Most High; and call upon me in the day of trouble; I will deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify me."*

Isaiah 65:24 - *"And it shall come to pass, that before they call, I will answer; and while they are yet speaking, I will hear."*

***Matthew 6:7, 8** - *"But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the hypocrites do; for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking. Therefore be ye not like unto them; for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of, before ye ask him."*

Luke 11:10, 11 - *"And I say unto you, Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you" (9)*

Proverbs 3:6; 15:29; Jeremiah 29:12; *Matthew 18:19; John 15:7; James 1:5 - 8.

Helaman 2:25 - *"Thus we see that the gate of heaven is open unto all, even to those who will believe on the name of Jesus Christ."*

CONDITIONS ANNEXED

2 Chronicles 7:14 - *"If my people which are called by my name, shall humble themselves, and pray, and seek my face, and turn from their wicked ways; then will I hear from heaven, and will forgive their sin, and will heal their land."*

Jeremiah 29:13 - *"And ye shall seek me, and find me, when ye shall search for me with all your heart."*

***Matthew 21:20** - *"And all things, whatsoever ye shall ask in prayer, in faith believing, ye shall receive" (22).*

***Mark 11:25** - *“For verily I say unto you, That whosoever shall say unto this mountain, Be thou removed, and be thou cast into the sea; and shall not doubt in his heart, but shall believe that those things which he saith shall come to pass; he shall have whatsoever he saith fulfilled” (23).*

3 Nephi 8:47, 48 - *“Verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye are led away captive by him. And as I have prayed among you, even so shall ye pray in my church, among my people who do repent and are baptized in my name.”*

Alma 16:223, 224 - *“If ye turn away the needy, and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impart of your substance if ye have, to those who stand in need; . . . your prayer is in vain, and availeth you nothing.”*

Moroni 7:8 - *“Likewise is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray, and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing.”*

3 Nephi 5:97 - 107.

PURITY

Proverbs 22:11 - *“He that loveth pureness of heart, for the grace of his lips the king shall be his friend.”*

***Matthew 5:10** - *“And blessed are all the pure in heart; for they shall see God” (8).*

Luke 6:45 - *“A good man out of the good treasure of his heart, bringeth forth that which is good . . . for of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaketh.”*

Philemon 4:8 - *“Whatsoever things are true, whatsoever things are honest, whatsoever things are just, whatsoever things are pure, whatsoever things are lovely, whatsoever things are of good report; if there be any virtue, and if there be any praise, think on these things.”*

1 Timothy 1:5 - *“Now the end of the commandment is charity out of a pure heart, and of a good conscience, and of faith unfeigned.”*

2 Timothy 2:22 - *“Follow righteousness, faith, charity, peace, with them that call on the Lord out of a pure heart.”*

James 4:8 - *“Cleanse your hands, ye sinners; and purify your hearts, ye doubleminded.”*

1 Peter 1:22 - *“See that ye love one another with a pure heart fervently.”*

Jacob 2:50 - *“All ye that are pure in heart, lift up your heads and receive the pleasing word of God, and feast upon his love; for ye may, if your minds are firm for ever.”*

D&C 56:6 - *“Blessed are the poor, who are pure in heart, whose hearts are broken, and whose spirits are contrite, for they shall see the kingdom of God coming in power and great glory unto their deliverance.”*

D&C 94:5 - *“Let Zion rejoice, for this is Zion, the pure in heart.”*

RECONCILIATION TO GOD

Romans 5:10 - *“For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.”*

***2 Corinthians 5:18** - *“And receiveth all the things of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation.”*

Colossians 1:20, 21 - *“And, having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; . . . And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in your mind by wicked works, yet now hath he reconciled.”*

Corinthians 5:20; Hebrews 2:17.

2 Nephi 7:41, 42 - *“Reconcile yourselves to the will of God, and not to the will of the devil and the flesh; and remember after ye are reconciled unto God, that it is only in and through the grace of God that ye are saved.”*

SACRIFICE

(See Oblation and Offering, also *Bible Helps*, Topical Index.)

Psalms 50:5 - *“Gather my saints together unto me; those that have made a covenant with me by sacrifice.”*

Proverbs 21:3 - *“To do justice and judgment is more acceptable to the Lord than sacrifice.”*

Romans 12:1 - *“I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service.”*

†**Genesis 4:5 - 7; Psalms 4:5; 51:17 - 19; 141:2; Philemon 2: 17; 1 Peter 2:5.**

3 Nephi 4:49, 50 - *“Ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost.”*

2 Nephi 1:72; Alma 16:207, 216; 1 Nephi 1:157; 2:39; Mosiah 1:30.

D&C 59:2 (Broken heart and contrite spirit).

D&C 65:5 (A day of sacrifice and tithing).

D&C 83:3 (Accept offering).

SELF - SACRIFICE AND DENIAL

***Matthew 5:31 - 34** - *“It is better that ye should deny yourselves of these things, wherein ye will take up your Cross. . . . Therefore if thy right eye offend thee, pluck it out and cast it out from thee; . . . Or, if thy right hand offend thee, cut it off and cast it from thee; . . . And now this I speak, a parable concerning your sins”(29).*

***Matthew 10:32 - 34** - *“He who loveth father and mother more than me, is not worthy of me; and he who loveth son or daughter more than me, is not worthy of me. And he who taketh not his cross and followeth after me, is not worthy of me. He who seeketh to save his life shall lose it; and he who loseth his life for my sake shall find it” (37 - 39).*

***Matthew 16:25, 26** - *“If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross and follow me. And now for a man to take up his cross, is to deny himself all ungodliness, and every worldly lust, and keep my commandments” (24).*

Matthew 19:21 - *“Jesus said unto him, If thou wilt be perfect, go, sell that thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven, and come and follow me.”*

Luke 9:23 - *“And he said unto them all, If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross daily, and follow Me.”*

Luke 14:27 - *“And whosoever doth not bear his cross, and come after me, can not be my disciple.”*

John 15:13 - *“Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends.”*

***Romans 8:13** - *“For if ye live after the flesh, unto sin, ye shall die; but if ye through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, ye shall live unto Christ.”*

***Romans 14:15, 21** - *“But if thy brother be grieved with thy meat, thou walkest not charitably if thou eatest. . . . It is good neither to eat flesh, nor to drink wine, nor anything whereby thy brother stumbleth, or is offended, or is made weak.”*

Romans 15:1 - *“We then that are strong ought to bear the infirmities of the weak, and not to please ourselves.”*

1 Corinthians 8:12, 13 - *"But when ye sin so against the brethren, and wound their weak conscience, ye sin against Christ. Wherefore, if meat make my brother to offend, I will eat no flesh while the world standeth, lest I make my brother to offend."*

***1 Corinthians 10:24** - *"Let no man seek therefore his own, but every man another's good."*

Matthew 13:47; *Mark 8:36 - 40; Luke 9:23; *14:26; 1 Corinthians 9:12; Titus 2:12; 1 Peter 2:11; *Revelation 12:11.

Proverbs 23:2; Daniel 10:3; *Matthew 10:32 - 34; *16:25 - 27; *Rom 8:13; 14 - 21; *1 Corinthians 8:13; Titus 2:12.

INSTANCES

Daniel 3:17, 18 - *"If it be so, our God whom we serve is able to deliver us from the burning fiery furnace, and he will deliver us out of thine hand, O king. But if not, be it known unto thee, O king, that we will not serve thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up."*

Matthew 26:36 - *"And he went a little farther, and fell on his face, and prayed, saying, O my Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me; nevertheless, not as I will, but as thou wilt."*

Genesis 44:32; Exodus 32:32; Judges 11:36; 2 Samuel 23:15 - 17; Esther 4:16; 2 Corinthians 8:9; Galatians 1:4; Titus 2:14; Philemon 18.

SANCTIFICATION

Exodus 31:13 - *"For it is a sign between, me and you throughout your generations; that ye may know that I am the Lord that doth sanctify you."*

Joel 1:14 - *"Sanctify ye a fast, call a solemn assembly, gather the elders and all the inhabitants of the land into the house of the Lord your God, and cry unto the Lord."*

John 17:17 - *"Sanctify them through thy truth; thy word is truth."*

Romans 15:16 - *"That the offering up of the Gentiles might be acceptable, being sanctified by the Holy Ghost."*

2 Thessalonians 2:13 - *"God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth."*

***1 Peter 3:15** - *"But sanctify the Lord God in your hearts; and be ready always to give an answer with meekness and fear to every man that asketh of you a reason for the hope that is in you."*

3 Nephi 12:33 - *"Repent, all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day."*

Moroni 10:30 - *"If ye, by the grace of God, are perfect in Christ, and deny not his power, then are ye sanctified in Christ by the grace of God, through Christ the shedding of the blood of Christ, which is in the covenant of the Father, unto the remission of your sins, that ye become holy and without spot."*

D&C 102:9 - *"But firstly, let my army become very great, and let it be sanctified before me, that it may become fair as the sun and clear as the moon, and that her banners may be terrible unto all nations."*

D&C 129:9 - *"Though there may have been differences of opinion, differences have been held in unity of purpose and desire for the good of thy people, and will result in helping to bring to pass a unity of understanding."*

Numbers 7:1; 2 Chronicles 7:16; Isaiah 5:16; Jeremiah 1:5; Ezekiel 20:12; Joel 2:15, 16; John 17:19; Acts 20:32; 26:18; 1 Corinthians 1:2, 30; 1 Thessalonians 4:3; 5:23; 2 Timothy 2:21; Hebrews 2:11; *10:10, 14, 29; 13:12; 1 Peter 1:2; *3:15; Revelation 7:14.

THE CROSS OF CHRIST

Ephesians 2:16 - *“And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby.”*

Hebrews 12:2 - *“Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.”*

†Genesis 7:62; *Matthew 27:34, 39, 44, 45; *Mark 15:24, 29, 34, 36; Luke 23:26; *John 19:17, 19, 25, 31; Galatians 6:14; Philemon 2:8; Colossians 1:20; 2:14; 1 Nephi 3:87; D&C 36:11.

OUR CROSS

Mark 8:36 - *“Whosoever will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow me” (34).*

Mark 16:20 - *“Come, take up the cross, and follow me” (21).*

1 Corinthians 1:17, 18 - *“For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish, foolishness; but unto us which are saved, it is the power of God.”*

***Matthew 16:25, 26; Luke 9:23; 14:27; D&C 56:1; 105: 6.**

SPEECH

GOVERNING THE TONGUE

Ephesians 4:29 - *“Let no corrupt communication proceed out of your mouth, but that which is good to the use of edifying, that it may minister grace unto the hearers.”*

James 1:19 - *“Wherefore, my beloved brethren, let every man be swift to hear, slow to speak, slow to wrath.”*

James 3:5 - 8 - *“Even so the tongue is a little member, and boasteth great things. Behold, how great a matter a little fire kindleth! And the tongue is a fire, a world of iniquity; so is the tongue among our members, that it defileth the whole body, and setteth on fire the course of nature; and it is set on fire of hell. For every kind of beasts, and of birds, and of serpents, and of things in the sea, is tamed, and hath been tamed of mankind; but the tongue can no man tame; it is an unruly evil, full of deadly poison.”*

James 4:11 - *“Speak not evil one of another, brethren.”*

D&C 42:7 - *“Thou shalt not speak evil of thy neighbor nor do him any harm.”*

D&C 85:38 - *“Cease to find fault one with another.”*

STEADFASTNESS

1 Corinthians 16:13 - *“Watch ye, stand fast in the faith, quit you like men, be strong.”*

Colossians 2:6, 7 - *“As ye have therefore received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk ye in him; rooted and built up in him, and established in the faith, as ye have been taught, abounding therein with thanksgiving.”*

Hebrews 10:23 - *“Let us hold fast the profession of our faith without wavering; for he is faithful that promised.”*

***Matthew 10:19; 1 Corinthians 15:58; Colossians 1:23; 2 Thessalonians 2:15; Hebrews 10:23; 13:9; James 1:25.**

Mosiah 3:21 - *"I would that ye should be steadfast and immovable, always abounding in good works."*

Helaman 5:97 - *"Many . . . are firm and steadfast in the faith, and in the things wherewith they have been made free."*

TRANSGRESSION

DEALING WITH TRANSGRESSORS

***Matthew 5:24** - *"But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother, shall be in danger of his judgment; and whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, or 'Rabcha, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say to his brother, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire" (22).*

***Matthew 18:6 - 8.** - *"Woe unto the world because of offences! For it must needs be that offences come; but woe to that man by whom the offence cometh! Wherefore if thy hand or foot offend thee, cut it off and cast it from thee; for it is better for thee to enter into life halt or maimed, rather than having two hands or two feet to be cast into everlasting fire. And if thine eye offend thee, pluck it out and cast it from thee; it is better for thee to enter into life with one eye, rather than having two eyes to be cast into hell fire" (7 - 9).*

Matthew 18:15 - 17 - *"If thy brother shall trespass against thee, go and tell him his fault between thee and him alone; if he shall hear thee, thou hast gained thy brother. But if he will not hear thee, then take with thee one or two more, that in the mouth of two or three witnesses every word may be established. And if he shall neglect to hear them, tell it unto the church."*

***Luke 17:3** - *"Take heed to yourselves. If your brother trespass against you, rebuke him; and if he repent, forgive him."*

***1 Corinthians 5:3, 7** - *"For verily, as absent in body but present in spirit, I have judged already him who hath so done this deed, as though I were present. . . . Purge out therefore the old leaven, that ye may be a new lump."*

2 Thessalonians 3:6 - *"Now we command you, brethren, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that ye withdraw yourselves from every brother that walketh disorderly."*

***Luke 6:41, 42; Romans 16:17; 2 Thessalonians 3:10 - 14.**

Mosiah 11:137 - 139 - *"Whosoever transgresseth against me, him shall ye judge according to the sins which he has committed; and if he confess his sins before thee and me, and repents in the sincerity of his heart, him shall ye forgive, and I will forgive him also; yea, and as often as my people repent, will I forgive them their trespasses against me."*

Moroni 6:7, 8 - *"And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them; and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the church condemn them before the elders; and if they repented not and confessed not, their names were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ; but as oft as they repented, and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven."*

D&C 42:21, 22 - *"If any persons among you shall kill, they shall be delivered up and be delt with according to the laws of the land; for remember that he hath no forgiveness; and it shall be proven according to the laws of the land. . . . If any man or woman shall commit adultery, he or she shall be tried before two elders of the church or more, and every word shall be established against him or her by two witnesses of the church, not of the enemy; but if there are more than two witnesses it is better. . . . And the elders shall lay the case before the church, and the church shall lift up their hands*

against him or her, that they may be dealt with according to the law of God. If a man or woman shall rob, he or she shall be delivered up unto the law of the land. And if he or she shall steal, he or she shall be delivered up unto the law of the land. And if he or she shall lie, he or she shall be delivered up unto the law of the land. If he or she do any manner of iniquity, he or she shall be delivered up unto the law, even that of God."

TWO OR THREE WITNESSES SUFFICIENT

Deuteronomy 17:6 - *"At the mouth of two witnesses, or three witnesses, shall he that is worthy of death be put to death." (Mosaic Law).*

John 8:17 - *"It is also written in your law, that the testimony of two men is true."*

2 Corinthians 13:1 - *"In the mouth of two or three witnesses shall every word be established."*

1 Timothy 5:19 - *"Against an elder receive not an accusation, but before two or three witnesses."*

Hebrews 10:28 - *"He that despised Moses' law died without mercy under two or three witnesses."*

D&C 42:22 - *"And every word against him or her shall be established by two witnesses."*

UNITY

See Priesthood, Charity, Fruits, Gifts of the Spirit, and Love.

Psalms 133:1 - *"Behold, how good and how pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in unity!"*

Isaiah 52:8 - *"For they shall see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion."*

Amos 3:3 - *"Can two walk together, except they be agreed?"*

John 17:11, 21 - 23 - *"Holy Father, keep through thine own name those whom thou hast given me, that they may be one, as we are. . . . That they all may be one; as thou, Father, art in me, and I in thee, that they also may be one in us; that the world may believe that thou hast sent me. And the glory which thou gavest me I have given them; that they may be one, even as we are one; I in them, and thou in me, that they may be made perfect in one."*

Acts 4:32 - *"And the multitude of them that believed were of one heart and of one soul; neither said any of them that aught of the things which he possessed was his own; but they had all things common."*

Romans 12:16 - *"Be of the same mind one toward another. Mind not high things, but condescend to men of low estate. Be not wise in your own conceits."*

1 Corinthians 1:10 - *"Now I beseech you, brethren, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that ye all speak the same thing, and that there be no divisions among you; but that ye be perfectly joined together in the same mind and in the same judgment."*

***Ephesians 4:3 - 5** - *"Endeavoring to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace, in one body, and one Spirit, even as ye are called in one hope of your calling; one Lord, one faith, one baptism."*

1 Peter 3:8 - *"Finally, be ye all of one mind, having compassion one of another; love as brethren, be pitiful, be courteous."*

Acts 2:1; Romans 14:19; *15:5; 1 Corinthians 12:12, 13; 2 Corinthians 13:11; *Philemon 1:27; 2:2; 3:16, 17.

Mosiah 9:54 - *"And he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another, but that they should look forward with one eye, having one faith and one baptism; having their hearts knit together in unity and in love, one towards another."*

D&C 129:9 - *"Though there may have been differences of opinion, these differences have been held in unity of purpose and desire for the good of my people, and will result in helping to bring to pass a unity of understanding."*

WEAPONS AND WARFARE OF THE SAINTS

2 Corinthians 10:4, 5 - *"For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strongholds; casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God."*

Ephesians 6:14 - 17 - *"Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness; and your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace; above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God."*

1 Thessalonians 5:8 - *"But let us, who are of the day, be sober, putting on the breastplate of faith and love; and for a helmet the hope of salvation."*

1 Timothy 1:18 - *"This charge I commit unto thee, son Timothy, according to the prophecies which went before on thee, that thou by them mightest war a good warfare."*

1 Timothy 6:12 - *"Fight the good fight of faith, lay hold on eternal life, whereunto thou art also called, and hast professed a good profession before many witnesses."*

D&C 71:2 - *"There is no weapon that is formed against you shall prosper; and if any man lift his voice against you, he shall be confounded in mine own due time."*

2 Timothy 2:3 - *"Thou therefore endure hardness, as a good soldier of Jesus Christ."*

2 Timothy 4:7 - *"I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith."*

3 Nephi 10:25 - *"No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper."*

WORD OF WISDOM

STRONG DRINK AND TOBACCO CONDEMNED

Leviticus 10:9 - *"Do not drink wine or strong drink, thou, nor thy sons with thee, when ye go into the tabernacle of the congregation, lest ye die; it shall be a statute forever throughout your generations."*

Judges 13: 4 - *"Now therefore beware, I pray thee, and drink not wine nor strong drink."*

Isaiah 5:11, 22 - *"Woe unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink; that continue until night, and wine inflame them!"*

Luke 1:15 - *"For he shall be great in the sight of the Lord, and shall drink neither wine nor strong drink."*

1 Samuel 1:15; Isaiah 28:7; Daniel 1:8, 16; 1 Corinthians 5:11; *1 Peter 4:3.

D&C 86:1 - *"I have warned you, and forewarn you, by giving unto you this word of wisdom by revelation, that inasmuch as any man drinketh wine or strong drink among you, behold, it is not good, neither meet in the sight of your Father, . . . And again, strong drinks are not for the belly, but for the washing of your bodies. And again, tobacco is not for the body, neither for the belly, and is not good for man, but is an herb for bruises, and all sick cattle."*

D&C 119:3 - *"Avoid the use of tobacco and be not addicted to strong drink in any form."*

WORD OF GOD

REVERENCE AND OBEDIENCE REQUIRED

Exodus 23:21 - *"Beware of him, and obey his voice, provoke him not; for he will not pardon your transgressions: for my name is in him."*

Deuteronomy 18:19 - *"Whosoever will not hearken unto my words which he shall speak in my name, I will require it of him."*

1 Samuel 15:22 - *"Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams."*

***Matthew 7:30** - *"It is not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, that shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven" (21).*

John 12:48 - *"He that rejecteth me, and receiveth not my words, hath one that judgeth him: the word that I have spoken, the same shall judge him in the last day."*

2 Corinthians 2:9 - *"For to this end also did I write, that I might know the proof of you, whether ye be obedient in all things."*

2 Corinthians 10:5 - *"Bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ."*

Hebrews 5:9 - *"And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him."*

James 1:21, 22 - *"Receive with meekness the engrafted word, which is able to save your souls. But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves."*

1 Peter 1:22, 25 - *"Seeing ye have purified your souls in obeying the truth through the Spirit. . . . But the word of the Lord endureth forever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you."*

Psalms 19:7; Isaiah 8:20; 55:4; *Romans 6:17; Hebrews 2:1 - 3; James 1:25; 1 Peter 1:22.

1 Nephi 4:39 - *"Whoso would hearken unto the word of God. . . . and hold fast unto it, would never perish."*

1 Nephi 4:42 - *"Give heed to the word of God, and remember to keep his commandments always, in all things."*

Jacob 2:10 - *"Feasting upon the pleasing word of God."*

Jacob 4:11 - *"After ye have been nourished by the good word of God all the day long, will ye bring forth evil fruit?"*

Moroni 6:5 - *"And their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God, to keep them in the right way."*

ZEAL

Psalms 69:9 - *"The zeal of thine house hath eaten me up" (see John 2:16, 17)*

Psalms 119:139 - *"My zeal hath consumed me, because mine enemies have forgotten thy words."*

Ecclesiastes 9:10 - *"Whatsoever thy hand findeth to do, do it with thy might."*

***Matthew 5:19** - *"Let your light so shine before this world, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father who is in heaven" (16).*

***Luke 22:33** - *"And he said unto him being aggrieved, Lord, I m ready to go with you, both into prison, and unto death."*

***John 2:16, 17** - *"Make not my Father's house a house of merchandise. And his disciples remembered that it was written, The zeal of thy house hath eaten me up."*

Romans 10:2 - *"I bear them record that they have a zeal of God, but not according to knowledge."*

Galatians 4:18 - *"But it is good to be zealously affected always in a good thing."*

Titus 2:14, 15 - *"Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify unto himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works. These things speak, and exhort."*

Jude 3 - *"It was needful for me to write unto you, and exhort you that ye should earnestly contend for the faith which was once delivered unto the saints."*

Revelation 3:15, 16 - *"I know thy works, that thou art neither cold nor hot; I would thou wert cold or hot. So then because thou art lukewarm, and neither cold nor hot, I will spew thee out of my mouth."*

2 Corinthians 7:11; 9:2; Philemon 3:6; Revelation 3:19.

Chapter Nine

THE CHURCH OF JESUS CHRIST

For the teaching of the church, see Chapter Eight, "The Gospel of Jesus Christ." For the leadership, see Chapter Ten, "Priesthood."

NAME AND IDENTIFICATION

GOD'S PEOPLE ARE CALLED SAINTS

Psalms 30:4 - *"Sing unto the Lord, O ye saints of his."*

Psalms 31:23 - *"O love the Lord, all ye his saints."*

Psalms 37:28 - *"For ... forsaketh not his saints."*

Psalms 50:5 - *"Gather my saints together unto me."*

Psalms 89:5, 7 - *"In the congregation of the saints... in the assembly of the saints."*

Psalms 116:15 - *"Precious in the sight of the Lord is the death of his saints."*

Romans 1:7 - *"Beloved of God, called saints."*

1 Corinthians 1:2 - *"To them that are sanctified in Christ Jesus, called to be saints."*

2 Thessalonians 1:10 - *"He shall come to be glorified in his saints."*

Jude 3 - *"The faith which was once delivered to the saints."*

Deuteronomy 33:2, 3; Daniel 8:13; Ephesians 1:1; Philemon 1:1; Colossians 1:2; 1 Thessalonians 3:13. Jude 14; Revelation 5:8; 11:18; 13:10; 14:12; 19:8.

CHURCH MEMBERS CALLED SAINTS

Psalms 34:9; 97:10; 132:9, 16; 149:1, 5, 9; Zechariah 14:5; Matthew 27:56; Acts 9:32, 41; 26:10;

Romans 15:25, 26, 31; 16:2, 15; 1 Corinthians 14:33; 16:1, 15; 2 Corinthians 1:1; 13:13; *1 Timothy 5:10; Hebrews 6:10.

NAMES APPLIED TO THE CHURCH OR GOD'S PEOPLE IN THE JEWISH OR OLD TESTAMENT

Congregation

Exodus 12:3, 6, 19, 47; 16:1, 2, 9, 10, 22; Leviticus 4:13, 15 (The congregation.... congregation of Israel).

Psalms 149:1 (Congregation of saints).

Numbers 27:17; Deuteronomy 23:1, 2, 3; Joshua 22:16 (Congregation of the Lord).

Nehemiah 13:1 (Congregation of God).

Assembly

Numbers 10:2, 3; 20:8; Deuteronomy 5:22; Psalms 89:7; 111:1 (Assembly; ... assembly of the saints; ... assembly of the upright).

Branch

Isaiah 4:2; 11:1; 60:21; Jeremiah 23:5; 33:15; Zechariah 3:8; 6:12 (Branch; ... branch of the Lord).

Flock

Isaiah 40:11; 63:11; Jeremiah 13:17; 23:2, 3; Ezekiel 34:3, 6, 8, 15 (Flock; ... the Lord's flock).

Sheep

Psalms 79:13; 95:7; Jeremiah 23:1; 50:6, 17; Ezekiel 34:6, 11, 12; Zechariah 13:7 (Sheep; ... sheep of his hand; ... my sheep; ... sheep of my pasture).

Saints

1 Samuel 2:9; Psalms 37:28; 50:5; 89:5; 149:5; Daniel 7:18, 22, 25, 27 (Saints; . . . his saints; . . . My saints; ... the saints; ... saints of the Most High).

Inheritance

Exodus 34:9; Deuteronomy 4:20; 1 Kings 8:51; Psalms 28:9; 78:71; Isaiah 19:25 (Thine inheritance; ... people of inheritance; ... his inheritance; ... mine inheritance) Kingdom
Exodus 19:6; Daniel 7:22, 27 (Kingdom).

Special

Isaiah 62:12 (The holy people; the redeemed; sought out).

Heritage

Jeremiah 12:8, 9; 50:11 ; Joel 2:17; 3:2; Micah 7:14, 18 (Mine heritage; ... thine heritage; ... my heritage; ... his heritage).

Other References

†Genesis 7:23, 25, 26, 34, 38, 54, 59, 70, 72, 77; Psalms 48:11; 146:10; Isaiah 1:27; 51:16; 52:1 (Zion).

CHRISTIAN NAMES OF THE CHURCH

Body

Romans 12:5; 1 Corinthians 10:16, 17; 12:12, 27; Ephesians 1:22, 23; 3:6; 4:4; 5:30; Colossians 1:18, 24 (One body in Christ; . . . body of Christ; . . . one body; . . . the church; . . . his body; . . . the body, the church; his body's sake, the church).

Church

Matthew 16:18; 18:17; Acts 15:22; Ephesians 5:23, 27; Hebrews 12:23 (My church;..... the church;..... the whole church; . . . Christ head of church;..... glorious church;..... church of the Firstborn).

Acts 20:28; 1 Corinthians 1:2; 10:32; 11:22; 15:9; 11 Corinthians 1:1; Galatians 1:13; 1 Timothy 3:15 (The church of God; . . . church of the living God).

Romans 16:16; 1 Corinthians 11:16; 14:33 (The churches of Christ; . . . churches of God; . . . churches of the saints). **Romans 16:4** (churches of the Gentiles).

Family

Ephesians 3:15 (Whole family in heaven and earth).

Flock

Matthew 26:28; Luke 12:35; Acts 20:28, 29; 1 Peter 5:2, 3 (Flock; ... little flock; ... flock of God; ... God's heritage)

House - Building

1 Corinthians 3:9 (God's husbandry, God's building).

Hebrews 3:6 (Christ's own house).

1 Timothy 3:15; Hebrews 10:21; 1 Peter 2:5 (House of God; ... spiritual house).

Household

Ephesians 2:19 (Household of God).

Temple

Ephesians 2:21 (An holy temple).

1 Corinthians 3:16, 17; 2 Corinthians 6:16 (The temple of God; ... temple of the living God).

The Kingdom

It is well here to understand that while "the church" and "the kingdom" have some areas in common, they are not entirely synonymous. Some in the church may not yet truly be "born of the Spirit" (John 3:3 - 5). *"Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven."* - **Matthew 7:30**.

***Matt, 6:38; 12:23; 21:31** (The Kingdom of God.) ***Luke 17:21**.

Matthew 3:28; 4:16; 5:2; 10:6; 13:22, 30, 32, 46, 47 (The kingdom of heaven),

Saints

Acts 9:13; *Romans 1:7; 8:27; 1 Corinthians 6:2; Ephesians 4:12; 2 Thessalonians 1:10; Jude 3; Revelation 13:10; 19:8 (Thy saints; . . . called saints; ... the saints; . . . his saints; saints).

Sheep

Matthew 10:6; 25:32, 33; 26:31; Mark 14:27; John 10:3, 4, 8, 11 - 16, 27; 21:16; Hebrews 13:20 (Lost sheep; . . . his sheep; . . . the sheep; . . . his own sheep; . . . my sheep; other sheep).

BRIDE

John 3:29; Revelation 21:2, 9; 22:17 (The bride; ... a bride).

Ephesians 5:23 - 25, 30 - 32; Revelation 19:7; 21:9 (Wives compared to church; . . . his wife; . . . the Lamb's wife).

Of God

Alma 1:10; 1:28 - 57; 2:4; 3:3, 7; 21:39; 15:30; 17:7; Helaman 2:24, 44 (Church of God).

1 Nephi 3:144, 227, 230 (Saints of God).

1 Nephi 3:221, 222, 226, 227, 230 (Church of Lamb of God).

Of Christ

3 Nephi 12:13, 18, 19; 13:36; 4 Nephi 1:28, 31; Moroni 6:4 (Church of Christ).

Of Jesus

4 Nephi 37 (People of Jesus).

Disciples

3 Nephi 12:14; 4 Nephi 1:6, 14, 15, 32, 41, 54; Mormon 4:12 (Disciples of Jesus).

MISCELLANEOUS

4 Nephi 1:40, 41 (Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, and Zoramites).

Mosiah 9:39 (Fold of God).

Mosiah 9:5 5; 11:96, 100, 103 (Children of God).

D&C 16:4, 5 *“Take upon you the name of Christ, and speak the truth in soberness, and as many as repent, and are baptized in my name, which is Jesus Christ, and endure to the end, the same shall be saved. Behold, Jesus Christ is the name which is given whereby man can be saved; wherefore, all men must take upon them the name which is given of the Father, for in that name shall they be called at the last day; wherefore, if they know not the name by which they are called, they can not have place in the kingdom of my Father . . . and I, Jesus Christ, your Lord and your God, have spoken it.”*

D&C 17:1, 13, 18, 19, 20, 24, 25 (Church of Christ).

D&C 17:1, 19, 21, 22, 23; 19:3 (Church of Jesus Christ).

D&C 77:4; 104:9; 90:4 (Church of Firstborn).

CHURCH ORGANIZATION

THE CHURCH IN THE TIME OF JESUS

Matthew 16:19 - Jesus said, *“I will build my church”* (18).

Matthew 18:17 - Jesus said, *“If he shall neglect to hear them, tell it unto the church.”* The church was functioning as an organization at that time.

ANTIQUITY OF THE GOSPEL

Mark 1:1 - *“The beginning of the gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God.”*

Mark 1:12 - *“Jesus came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of the kingdom of God”* (14).

Galatians 3:8 - *“Preached before the gospel unto Abraham.”*

POWER AND WORK

FUNCTIONS OF THE CHURCH

Matthew 28:18, 19 - *“Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost; teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you; and, lo, I am with you always, unto the end of the world”* (19, 20).

Romans 3:2 - *“Chiefly because that unto them were committed the oracles of God.”*

Romans 10:14, 15 - *“How then shall they call on him in whom they have not believed? and how shall they believe in him of whom they have not heard? and how shall they hear without a preacher? And how shall they preach, except they be sent?”*

James 5:14, 15 - *“Is any sick among you let him call for the elders of the church; and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord; and the prayer of faith shall save the sick, and the Lord shall raise him up, and if he have committed sins, they shall be forgiven him.”*

1 Peter 2:5 - *“Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.”*

Matthew 16:20; Mark 16:14; Acts 20:28; *Romans 9:4; 1 Corinthians 12:14; 2 Corinthians 12:19; Ephesians 1:22; 2:20 - 22; 4:11, 12; Colossians 1:24. D&C 43:3; 44:2; 53:2; 105:11.

(Also see Assembly, Baptism, Laying on of Hands, Lord's Supper, Marriage, Prayer, Preaching, Stewardship, and Zion.)

THE ENDURANCE OF THE CHURCH

Matthew 16:19 - Jesus said, *"I will build my church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it" (18).*

Mosiah 11:166 - *"For the Lord hath said, This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people."*

Chapter Ten

AUTHORITY AND PRIESTHOOD

AUTHORITY

THE IMPORTANCE OF AUTHORITY

The vital place of authority is seen in all realms of human experience.

"At least nine tenths of our knowledge is based on authority. All our historical knowledge, most of our geographical knowledge, an overwhelming proportion of our scientific knowledge, is founded, not on personal research or personal experience and observation, but on the testimony of others as to what they have seen or experienced." - The Outlook., September 28, 1907, page 154.

The need of divine authority to build the church was recognized by those in the sixteenth century of whom Mosheim's *Ecclesiastical History* states:

"Some of this class of people. . . indulged the hope that God himself would in his own time erect for himself a new church, free from every blemish and impurity; and that he would raise up certain persons, and fill them with heavenly light for the accomplishment of this great object." - Book 4, Century 16, Section 3, Part 2, chapter 3.

Ruter's *History of the Church* mentions this need of authority:

"Some form of government is absolutely necessary, since without it no discipline or order could be preserved, and no religion could long subsist. From the very first, therefore, we find in the Church of Christ a regular chain of authority and subordination. . . . The authority exercised by the apostles, either collectively, in what may be termed their council or conference, or in their individual capacity, we find from various passages of the New Testament to have been considerable and extensive." - Century 1, chapter 3, page 25.

COLLATERAL READING,

It would be impossible here because of lack of space to give all Scriptures relating to priesthood. For a fuller treatment the reader is referred to *The Priesthood Manual*, published by Herald House, Independence, Missouri. A fine discussion of the subject will be found in Chapter VII, "Priesthood," of the book *Fundamentals*, by F. Henry Edwards.

AUTHORITY OF THE PRIESTHOOD

Matthew 16:20 - *"And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven; and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth, shall be bound in heaven; and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth, shall be loosed in heaven" (19).*

Matthew 18:18 - *"Whatsoever ye shall bind on earth, shall be bound in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth, shall be loosed in heaven."*

***Luke 9:1** - *"And he gave them power and authority over all devils, and to cure diseases."*

***Luke 10:9, 20** - *"And heal the sick who are therein, and say, The kingdom of God is come nigh unto you. . . . Behold, I will give unto you power over serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy; and nothing shall by any means hurt you" (9, 19).*

John 20:23 - *"Whosoever sins ye remit, they are remitted unto them; and whosoever sins ye retain, they are retained."*

Acts 10:38 - *"How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power; who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him."*

***1 Corinthians 5:4, 5** - *"And have the Spirit, with the power of our Lord Jesus Christ, to deliver such a one unto Satan for the destruction of the flesh."*

1 Timothy 1:20 - *"Whom I have delivered unto Satan, that they may learn not to blaspheme."*

†Genesis 6:7; 14:26 - 36; 1 Thessalonians 1:6.

D&C 83:6 - *"All they who receive this priesthood receive me, saith the Lord, for he that receiveth my servants receiveth me."*

D&C 1:2.

MUST BE CALLED AND SENT OF GOD

Numbers 3:10 - *"Thou shalt appoint Aaron and his sons, and they shall wait on their priest's office and the stranger that cometh nigh shall be put to death."*

2 Chronicles 26:18 - *"It appertaineth not unto thee, Uzziah, to burn incense unto the Lord, but to the priests the sons of Aaron, that are consecrated to burn incense: go out of the sanctuary; for thou hast trespassed. "*

Isaiah 48:16 - *"And now the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me."*

Jeremiah 28:15 - *"Hear now, Hananiah: The Lord hath not sent thee; but thou makest this people to trust in a lie."*

John 7:18 - *"He that speaketh of himself seeketh his own glory; but he that seeketh his glory that sent him, the same is true, and no unrighteousness is in him. "*

John 8:42 - *"I proceeded forth and came from God; neither came I of myself, but he sent me."*

John 13:16 - *"The servant is not greater than his lord; neither he that is sent greater than he that sent him."*

John 15:16 - *"Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit, and that your fruit should remain."*

John 17:18 - *"As thou hast sent me into the world, even so have I also sent them into the world."*

Acts 13:2 - *"The Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them",*

Romans 10:14, 15 - *"How shall they hear without a preacher? and how shall they preach except they be sent?"*

Hebrews 3:1, 2 - *"Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Christ Jesus; who was faithful to him that appointed him."*

Hebrews 5:4, 5, 10 - *“And no man taketh this honor unto himself, but he that is called of God, as was Aaron. So also Christ glorified not himself to be made a high priest; . . . Called of God a high priest after the order of Melchisedec.”*

Jeremiah 14:14; 23:21; *Matthew 10:35; John 20:21; Acts 1:24; 9:17; *Romans 1:1; *13:1; *1 Corinthians 1:26; 3:5; *7:29; Galatians 1:1; 2 Timothy 1:9; Revelation 22:6, 16.

Moroni 2:1 - *“The word of Christ, which he spake unto his disciples, the twelve whom he had chosen, as he laid his hands upon them.”*

D&C 10:8 - *“Behold, I command you, that you need not suppose that you are called to preach until you are called: wait a little longer.”*

D&C 92:1, 2 - *“There are many who have been ordained among you, whom I have called, but few of them are chosen; . . . I design to endow those whom I have chosen with power from on high.”*

D&C 120:5 - *“He that heareth him that is sent heareth the Lord who sent him, if he be called of God and be sent by the voice of the church.”*

D&C 17:1; 119:8.

ORDINATION BY THE LAYING ON OF HANDS

(See Chapter Eight: “The Gospel of Jesus Christ,” topic, “Mode: The Laying on of Hands,” page 166.)

CHOICE AND CALLING OF MINISTERS

Jeremiah 1:5 - *“Before I formed thee in the belly I knew thee; and before thou camest forth out of the womb I sanctified thee, and I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations.”*

***Matthew 22:14** - *“For many are called, but few chosen; wherefore all do not have on the wedding garment.”*

John 1:6 - *“Then was a man sent from God, whose name was John.”*

***1 Corinthians 1:26** - *“For ye see your calling, brethren, how that not many wise men after the flesh, not many mighty, not many noble, are chosen.”*

Ephesians 1:4 - *“According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love.”*

Luke 6:13; Romans 8:28.

AUTHORITY REQUIRED TO MINISTER AND PROPHECY

Numbers 3:10 - *“And thou shalt appoint Aaron and his sons, and they shall wait on their priest’s office; and the stranger that cometh nigh shall be put to death.”*

1 Samuel 13:9, 13, 14 - *“And Saul said, Bring hither a burnt offering to men, and peace offerings. And he offered the burnt offering. . . . And Samuel said unto Saul, Thou hast done foolishly; thou hast not kept the commandment of the Lord thy God. . . . now thy kingdom shall not continue.”*

2 Chronicles 26:17, 18 - *“Azariah the priest went in after him, and with him four - score priests of the Lord, that were valiant men; and they withstood Uzziah the king, and said unto him, It appertaineth not unto thee, Uzziah, to burn incense unto the Lord, but to the priests, the sons of Aaron, that are consecrated to burn incense; go out of the sanctuary; for thou hast trespassed.”*

Jeremiah 23:21 - *“I have not sent these prophets, yet they ran; I have not spoken to them, yet they prophesied.”*

John 3:28 - *“John answered and said, A man can receive nothing, except it be given him from heaven” (27).*

John 8:42 - *“Jesus said unto them, If God were your Father, ye would love me; for I proceeded forth and came from God; neither came I of myself, but he sent me.”*

Numbers 16:1 - 33; Jeremiah 14:14; 29:9; *Romans 1:1; 10:15; Hebrews 5:4, 5.

SUPPORT OF MINISTERS PROVIDED FOR IN THE GOSPEL

†**Luke 12:33** - *“And ye are sent unto them to be their ministers, and the laborer is worthy of his hire.”*

1 Corinthians 9:11 - 14 - *“If we have sown unto you spiritual things, is it a great thing if we shall reap your carnal things? If others be partakers of this power over you, are not we rather? Nevertheless we have not used this power; but suffer all things, lest we should hinder the gospel of Christ. Do ye not know that they which minister about holy things live of the things of the temple? and they which wait at the altar are partakers with the altar? Even so hath the Lord ordained that they which preach the gospel should live of the gospel.”*

Galatians 6:6 - *“Let him that is taught in the word communicate unto him that teacheth in all good things.”*

2 Thessalonians 3:8, 9 - *“Neither did we eat any man’s bread for naught; but wrought with labor and travail night and day, that we might not be chargeable to any of you; not because we have not power, but to make ourselves an ensample unto you to follow us.”*

1 Timothy 5:18 - *“For the scripture saith, Thou shalt not muzzle the ox that treadeth out the corn. And, the laborer is worthy of his reward.”*

2 Timothy 2:6 - *“The husbandman that laboreth must be first partaker of the fruits.”*

THE TWO DIVISIONS OF PRIESTHOOD

D&C 104:1 - *“There are, in the church, two priesthoods, namely: the Melchisedec, and the Aaronic, including the Levitical priesthood. Why the first is called the Melchisedec priesthood, is because Melchisedec was such a great high priest: before his day it was called the holy priesthood, after the order of the Son of God, but out of respect or reverence to the name of the Supreme Being, to avoid the too frequent repetition of his name, they, the church, in ancient days, called that priesthood after Melchisedec, or the Melchisedec priesthood.”*

Verse 2 - *“All other authorities, or offices in the church are appendages to this priesthood.”*

THE MELCHISEDEC PRIESTHOOD ORIGIN

Genesis 14:17 - *“Melchizedek, king of Salem. the priest of the most high God” (18).*

Psalms 110:1, 4 - *“The Lord said unto my Lord. . . Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchizedek.”* This is understood to refer to Christ, as the following passage indicates.

Hebrews 5:5, 6 - *“So also Christ glorified not himself, to be made a high priest; but he that said unto him, Thou art my Son, today have I begotten thee. As he saith also in another place, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.”*

Here the Melchisedec order is indicated as a high priesthood.

Hebrews 7:11, 15, 17 - *“If therefore perfection were by the Levitical priesthood (for under it the people received the law), what further need was there that another priest should rise after the order of Melchisedec?”*

Hebrews 8:6 - *“But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant.”*

Alma 9:63, 70 - *“The Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach those things unto the people. . . . Which order was from the foundation of the world.”*

D&C 83:2 - *“Which Abraham received the priesthood from Melchisedec; who received it through the lineage of his fathers. . . . which priesthood continueth in the church of God in all generations, and is without beginning of days or end of years.”*

D&C 104:9 - *“The power and authority of the higher, or Melchisedec, priesthood, is to hold the keys of all the spiritual blessings of the church.”*

D&C 84:3.

ANTIQUITY OF THE MELCHISEDEC PRIESTHOOD

***Genesis 14:17, 18, 26 - 29** - *“And Melchizedek, King of Salem, brought forth bread and wine; and he break bread and blest it; and he blest the wine, he being the priest of the most high God, and he gave to Abram. . . . Now Melchizedek was a man of faith, who wrought righteousness. And thus, having been approved of God, he was ordained an high priest after the order of the covenant which God made with Enoch, it being after the order of the Son of God; which order came, not by man, nor the will of man; neither by father nor mother; neither by beginning of days nor end of years; but of God; and it was delivered unto men by the calling of his own voice, according to his own will, unto as many as believed on his name” (18 - 20).*

***Numbers 16:10** - *“And he hath brought thee near to him, and all thy brethren the sons of Levi with thee; and seek ye the high priesthood also?”*

***Hebrews 7:1 - 3** - *“For this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of the most high God, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings, and blessed him; to whom also Abraham gave a tenth part of all; first being by interpretation King of righteousness, and after that also King of Salem, which is, King of peace; for this Melchizedek was ordained a priest after the order of the Son of God.”*

Alma 9:54, 60 - 73; 10:1 - 17. Psalms 110:4; Hebrews 5:1 - 4; 7:22, 27; *8:3, 4. D&C 42:8; 72:1; 83:2, 4.

ELDERS BEFORE AND IN THE DAYS OF MOSES

†Genesis 6:7 - *“Now this same priesthood which was from the beginning, shall be in the end of the world also.”*

Genesis 50:7 - *“And Joseph went up to bury his father; and with him went up . . . all the elders of the land of Egypt.”*

Exodus 3:16 - *“Go, and gather the elders of Israel together.”*

Exodus 4:29 - *“And Moses and Aaron went and gathered together all the elders of the children of Israel.”*

†Genesis 6:24, 70; Exodus 12:21; 18:12; 24:1, 9; 28:1, 41; Numbers 11:16, 25.

MELCHISEDEC PRIESTHOOD IN THE EARLY CHRISTIAN CHURCH

Hebrews 3:1 - *“Consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Christ Jesus.”*

***Hebrews 7:3** - *“For this Melchizedek was ordained a Priest after the order of the Son of God, . . . all those who are ordained unto this priesthood are made like unto the Son of God, abiding a priest continually.”*

Hebrews 7:12 - *“For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the law.”*

1 Peter 2:5 - *"Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ."*

***Revelation 1:6** - *"And unto him who loved us, be glory; who washed us from our sins in his own blood, and hath made us kings and priests unto God, his Father" (5, 6).*

Revelation 5:9, 10 - *"For thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood, out of every kindred, and tongue and people, and nation; and hast made us unto our God kings and priests."*

John 17:18; 20:21; Acts 11:30; 14:23; 15:4, 6, 22; 16:4; 20:17; 21:18; 1 Corinthians 12:28; 1 Timothy 5:1, 17; Hebrews 5:1; James 5:14; 1 Peter 5:1 - 3.

AARONIC PRIESTHOOD

ORIGIN

Exodus 28:1 - *"And take thou unto thee Aaron thy brother, and his sons with him, from among the children of Israel, that he may minister unto me in the priest's office."*

Exodus 29:9 - *"The priest's office shall be theirs for a perpetual statute: and thou shalt consecrate Aaron and his sons."*

Exodus 40:13, 15 - *"And thou shalt put upon Aaron the holy garments, and anoint him, and sanctify him; that he may minister unto me in the priest's office; for their anointing shall surely be an everlasting priesthood throughout their generations."*

Numbers 18:6 - *"And I, behold, I have taken your brethren the Levites from among the children of Israel . . . to do the service of the tabernacle of the congregation."*

Exodus 30:30; Numbers 3:9, 10; 8:10, 14, 15, 18, 20; Luke 1:5.

D&C 83:3 - *"And the Lord confirmed a priesthood also upon Aaron and his seed throughout all their generations, which priesthood also continueth and abideth forever."*

D&C 104:10 - *"The power and authority of the lesser, or Aaronic, priesthood is, to hold the keys of the ministering of angels, and to administer in outward ordinances."*

DUTIES AND RIGHTS OF LEVITICAL PRIESTHOOD

Numbers 1:51 - *"And when the tabernacle setteth forward, the Levites shall take it down; and when the tabernacle is to be pitched, the Levites shall set it up."*

Numbers 18:2 - 5 - *"And thy brethren also of the tribe of Levi, the tribe of thy father . . . shall keep thy charge, and the charge of all the tabernacle."*

Numbers 18:20, 21, 24, 30, 31 - *"And the Lord spake unto Aaron, Thou shalt have no inheritance in their land, neither shalt thou have any part among them; I am thy part and thine inheritance among the children of Israel. And, behold, I have given the children of Levi all the tenth in Israel for an inheritance, for their service which they serve, even the service of the tabernacle of the congregation. . . . But the tithes of the children of Israel, which they offer as a heave offering unto the Lord, I have given to the Levites to inherit; therefore I have said unto them, Among the children of Israel they shall have no inheritance. . . . Therefore thou shalt say unto them, When ye have heaved the best thereof from it, then it shall be counted unto the Levites as the increase of the threshing - floor, and as the increase of the winepress. And ye shall eat it in every place, ye and your households; for it is your reward for your service in the tabernacle of the congregation."*

Mark 2:24 - *"He went into the house of God, in the days of Abiathar the high priest, and did eat the shew bread, which is not lawful to eat, but for the priests" (26).*

***Luke 1:5, 8, 9** - *"A certain priest named Zacharias, of the course of Abia; . . . And while he executed the priest's office before God, in the order of his priesthood, according to the law (his lot was to burn incense when he went into the temple of the Lord)."*

***Luke 17:14** - *"And he said unto them, Go show yourselves unto the priests. And it came to pass, as they went, they were cleansed."*

John 1:20 - *"And this is the record of John, when the Jews sent priests and Levites from Jerusalem to ask him, Who art thou?" (19).*

Hebrews 7:5 - *"They that are of the sons of Levi, who receive the office of the priesthood, have a commandment to take tithes of the people according to the law."*

Hebrews 7:11 - *"If therefore perfection were by the Levitical priesthood (for under it the people received the law), what further need was there that another priest rise after the order of Melchisedec, and not be called after the order of Aaron?"*

PRIESTHOOD OFFICES

1 Corinthians 12:28 - *"And God hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues."*

Ephesians 4:11, 12 - *"And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers; for the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ."*

Matthew 10:1 - 4 (Twelve apostles chosen).

Luke 10:1, 2 (Seventy sent out).

1 Peter 5:1 - 4 (Duty and call of elders).

Acts 20: 17, 28 (Elders).

1 Timothy 5:17 - *"Let the elders that rule well be counted worthy."*

Acts 14:23 - *"Ordained them elders in every church."*

Titus 1:5 - *"Ordain elders in every city."*

Philemon 1:1 (Bishops and deacons).

1 Timothy 3:1 - 4 (Office of a bishop).

THE FIRST PRESIDENCY INDICATIONS OF A PRESIDENCY IN THE NEW TESTAMENT CHURCH

James, the brother of the Lord, was one of three men in the New Testament church to bear this name. He was sometimes called "James the just." He did not come to prominence in the church until after the Ascension of the Christ. Because he was the Lord's brother and because of certain Hebrew customs regarding the right of a younger brother surviving an older one, and for other considerations this James rose in authority in the church.

Paul must have considered him a person of importance, for he mentions seeing James in Jerusalem, after the three years that Paul spent in Arabia following his conversion (Galatians 1:19).

It is believed that this is the James to whom Peter referred after his miraculous experience (Acts 12: 17).

A group of three men apparently presided over the church and even Paul, who was inclined to challenge the authority of others (Galatians 2:6; 2:11) admitted their administrative position when he wrote, *“And when James, Cephas, and John, who seemed to be pillars, perceived the grace that was given unto me, they gave to me and Barnabas the right hands of fellowship.”* - **Galatians 2:9**. His acceptance of their recognition was also a token of his acceptance of their authority.

This James is believed to be the one who spoke for the presiding group in Acts 15:13 - 19. James also apparently sent out representatives (Galatians 2:12) who were recognized by both Peter and Paul.

The position of James as the presiding authority is indicated in Acts 21:17 - 26.

Thus, some infer that James was president of the church, and that Peter and John were his counselors.

For this identification of James, see Funk and Wagnalls *New Standard Bible Dictionary*, third edition, 1936, pages 410 - 411. Also see page 57, where this comment is made: *“In the case of James, while he was not a mission worker, it is clear that he could not have come to his position at the head of the Jerusalem Church . . . without some appointment by the Church as its representative, which would involve, though in a still wider sense, the general idea behind the usage of the word [apostle].”*

FORMATION OF THE PRESIDENCY

D&C 99:6 - *“The president of the church, who is also president of the council, is appointed by revelation, and acknowledged, in his administration, by the voice of the church; and it is according to the dignity of his office, that he should preside over the high council of the church; and it is his privilege to be assisted by two other presidents, appointed after the same manner that he himself was appointed.”*

D&C 104:11 - *“Of the Melchisedec priesthood, three presiding high priests, chosen by the body, appointed and ordained to that office, and upheld by the confidence, faith, and prayer of the church, form a quorum of the presidency of the church.”*

FUNCTIONS OF THE PRESIDENT

D&C 107: 39 - *“I give unto you, my servant Joseph, to be a presiding elder over all my church, to be a translator, a revelator, a seer, and a prophet.”*

BEAR THE KEYS OF THE KINGDOM

D&C 87:1 - *“Thou art blessed from henceforth that bear the keys of the kingdom given unto you.”*

PRESIDE OVER THE CHURCH

D&C 104:42 - *“The duty of the president of the high priesthood is to preside over the whole church, and to be like unto Moses. Behold, here is wisdom, yea, to be a seer, a revelator, a translator, and a prophet; having all the gifts of God which he bestows upon the head of the church.”*

FUNCTIONS OF COUNSELORS TO THE PRESIDENT

D&C 87:3 - *“Thy brethren Sidney Rigdon and Frederick G. Williams (Counselors to Joseph Smith, the president of the church) . . . are accounted as equal with thee in holding the keys of this last*

kingdom; as also through your administration the keys of the school of the prophets . . . that through your administration, they may receive the word, and through their administration, the word may go forth unto the ends of the earth.”

FUNCTIONS OF THE FIRST PRESIDENCY THE CARE OF THE CHURCH

D&C 122:2 - *“The burden of the care of the church is laid on him who is called to preside over the high priesthood of the church, and on those who are called to be his counselors; and they shall teach according to the spirit of wisdom and understanding, and as they shall be directed by revelation, from time to time.”*

PRESIDENTS OF THE HIGH PRIESTHOOD

D&C 80:1 - *“The keys of the kingdom, which belongeth always unto the presidency of the high priesthood.”*

D&C 104:4 - *“The presidency of the high priesthood, after the order of Melchisedec, have a right to officiate in all the offices in the church. “*

D&C 122:2 - *“The burden of the care of the church is laid on him who is called to preside over the high priesthood of the church, and on those who are called to be his counselors; and they shall teach according to the spirit of wisdom and understanding, and as they shall be directed by revelation, from time to time.”*

D&C 104:5 - *“High priests . . . under the direction of the presidency.”*

DIRECT THE TWELVE

D&C 104:12 - *“The twelve are a traveling, presiding high council, to officiate in the name of the Lord, under the direction of the presidency of the church.”*

DIRECT THE STANDING MINISTRY

D&C 122:8 - *“Leaving the burden of care in organized districts, or conferences to the standing ministry, under the presidency of the church.”*

PRESIDE OVER HIGH COUNCIL

D&C 99:6 - *“The president of the church, who is also president of the council, is appointed by revelation . . . he should preside over the high council of the church; and it is his privilege to be assisted by two other presidents, appointed after the same manner that he himself was appointed.” He may preside without them, and they may preside in his absence.*

DIRECTION OF FINANCIAL ARRANGEMENTS

D&C 48:2 - *“Financial arrangements to be “by the presidency and the bishopric.”*

APPOINT BISHOPS

D&C 68:2 - *“Bishops ... shall be appointed by the first presidency of the Melchisedec priesthood.”*

APOSTLES THE ORIGINAL TWELVE

Matthew 10:2 (Those chosen by Jesus) (2 - 4.).

Matthew 10:6 - 7 - *“And as ye go, preach, saying, The kingdom of heaven is at hand. Heal the sick; cleanse the lepers; raise the dead; cast out devils; freely ye have received, freely give”* (7, 8).

Matthew 18:18 - *“Verily, I say unto you, Whatsoever ye shall bind on earth, shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth, shall be loosed in heaven.”*

1 Corinthians 12:28 - *“And God hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues.”*

Ephesians 4:11 - *“And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers.”*

Ephesians 4:12 - *“For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ.”*

***Mark 16:13 - 19; Acts 1:8; 4:33; 5:1 - 12; 6:1 - 6; 8:14 - 17; 16:4, 5; 2 Corinthians 11:28,**

APOSTOLIC SUCCESSION; VACANCIES FILLED (More Apostles Than Twelve)

***Luke 6:13 - 16** - *“And when it was day, he called his disciples; and of them he chose twelve, whom also he named apostles. Simon whom he also named Peter, and Andrew his brother, James and John, Philip and Bartholomew, Matthew and Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, and Simon called Zelotes. And Judas the brother of James, and Judas Iscariot, who also was the traitor.”*

Acts 1:26 - *“They gave forth their lots; and the lot fell upon Matthias; and he was numbered with the eleven apostles.”*

Acts 12:1, 2 - *“Now about that time Herod the king stretched forth his hands to vex certain of the church. And he killed James the brother of John with the sword.”*

Acts 13:2, 3 - *“As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them. And when they had fasted and prayed, and laid their hands on them, they sent them away.”*

***Acts 14:14** - *“When the apostles, Barnabas and Paul, heard this, they rent their clothes.”*

Romans 16: 7 - *“Salute Andronicus and Junia, my kinsmen, and my fellow prisoners, who are of note among the apostles.”*

There is some doubt about the meaning of this passage. Does it mean that “they were notable apostles,” or that “the apostles had observed them”? Funk and Wagnalls *Bible Dictionary* says that “only the accusative form is found in Romans 16:7 which may represent either the feminine, Junia, or a contraction of a masculine name Junianus. In view of the large number of names of women and of Christian households in the this chapter, the former seems most likely.”

But in another section (Under “Apostle”) the text seems to accept the idea that Junia was an apostle.

***1 Thessalonians 1:1** - *“Paul, and Silvanus, and Timotheus, servants of God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.”*

1 Thessalonians 2:6 - *“Nor of men sought we glory, neither of you, nor yet of others, when we might have been burdensome, as the apostles of Christ.”*

***1 Corinthians 1:1; Galatians 1:1, 19; *2:6 - 9.**

1 Nephi 3:75, 78, 88, 114 - 116 - *“And I beheld that we went forth ministering unto the people, in power and great glory. . . . And I also beheld twelve others following him. . . . And after he was slain, I saw the multitudes of the earth, gathered together to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for thus were the twelve called by the angel of Lord. . . . And the angel spake unto me, saying, Behold the twelve disciples of the Lamb, who are chosen to minister unto thy seed. . . . Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel . . . and these twelve ministers whom thou beholdest shall judge thy seed.”*

3 Nephi 5:44 - 56; 8:58 - 65; 6:1 - 3; 7:13; 8:28, 32; 9:4. 4 Nephi 1:16.

D&C 16:5 - *“Behold, there are others who are called to declare my gospel, both unto Gentile and unto Jew; yea, even twelve; and the twelve shall be my disciples, and they shall take upon them my name.”*

D&C 104:11 - *“The twelve traveling counselors are called to be the twelve apostles, or special witnesses of the name of Christ, in all the world; thus differing from other officers in the church in the duties of their calling.”*

D&C 17:8; 28:3; 99:13; 104:11, 12, 30; 105:1, 7, 8, 12; 107:40; 116:3; 117:3, 9; 118:3; 120:3, 4; 122:2, 5, 6; 123:13 - 15, 22, 23, 24; 124:3, 4; 126:10; 130:4; 133:2.

FALSE APOSTLES

2 Corinthians 11:13; Revelation 2:2; D&C 64:7.

OTHERS, NOT OF THE TWELVE, SOMETIMES CALLED APOSTLES

D&C 83:10 - *“You are mine apostles, even God’s high priests.”*

APOSTLES’ COMMISSION

Mark 16:14 - Jesus gave the twelve the great commission, *“Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature” (15)*

***Matthew 19:28** - Jesus: *“Ye who have followed me, shall, in the resurrection, when the Son of Man shall come sitting on the throne of his glory, ye shall also sit upon twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel.”*

Book of Mormon. It will be noted that references to the “apostles” generally indicate those of the church in Palestine. Here they are often called “the disciples,” or “the twelve.” The word “apostle” is not indexed in the Book of Mormon between the first book of Nephi, and Mormon 4:80. The visit of Christ and the appointing of the twelve on this continent is recorded in 3 Nephi.

DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES TO ALL THE WORLD

D&C 16:5 - *“The twelve . . . are called to go into all the world to preach my gospel unto every creature.”*

PERFORM THE ORDINANCES

D&C 17:8 - *“An apostle is an elder, and it is his calling to baptize, and to ordain other elders, priests, teachers, and deacons, and to administer bread and wine. . . . and to confirm those who are baptized into the church . . . and to take the lead in all meetings.”*

AUTHORITY

D&C 104:5 - *“High priests [apostles are high priests before ordained as apostles] after the order of the Melchisedec priesthood, have a right to officiate in their own standing, under the direction of the presidency, in administering spiritual things, and also in the office of an elder, priest (of the Levitical order), teacher, deacon, and member.”*

THE QUORUM

D&C 104:11 - *“The twelve . . . form a quorum equal in authority and power to the three presidents previously mentioned.”*

COUNCILORS - WITNESSES

D&C 104:11 - *“The twelve traveling councilors are called to be the twelve apostles, or special witnesses of the name of Christ, in all the world; thus differing from other officers in the church.”*

TRAVELING HIGH COUNCIL

D&C104:12 - *“The twelve are a traveling, presiding high council, to officiate in the name of the Lord, under the direction of the presidency of the church . . . to build up the church and regulate all the affairs of the same, in all nations.”*

DIRECT SEVENTY

D&C 104:13 - *“The seventy are to act in the name of the Lord, under the direction of the twelve.”*

D&C 104:17 - *“It is the duty of the twelve, in all large branches of the church, to ordain evangelical ministers, as they shall be designated unto them by revelation.”*

COUNCIL ON CHURCH AFFAIRS

D&C 122:13 - *“The twelve should remain at Lamoni, and continue in council with the presidency and the bishop, and his counselors if practicable, a sufficient time after the adjournment of conference to counsel together, and agree on the things of the law and the general affairs of the church.”*

HISTORICAL NOTES ON APOSTOLIC SUCCESSION

On the subject of apostolic succession, Dr. Morgan Dix is quoted:

*“When our Lord Jesus Christ gave orders to the apostles to go forth and convert the nations, he said, ‘I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world.’ It is plain that this promise was incapable of fulfillment unless in a line of successors, with whom from that day to the last Christ should be personally present. In the sacred college there was one vacant place; as a matter of course that place must be filled. The call of St. Matthias was therefore a critical event. It meant the continuance of the apostolic office; it was the beginning of an apostolic succession.” - New York Times, Feb. 25, 1889, quoted in *Presidency and Priesthood*, pages 46, 47.*

Concerning this Mosheim says:

“The first care of the apostles after the Saviour’s ascension, was to complete the number of twelve apostles established by Christ, by electing a more worthy person to the place of Judas, who had laid violent hands on himself.” - Book 1 Century 1, Part 1, chapter 4, pages 45, 46.

Eusebius, church historian of the fourth century remarks:

“In the execution of this work, we shall be happy to rescue from oblivion the successions, if not of all, at least of the most noted apostles of our Lord, . . . as I have not yet been able to find that any of the ecclesiastical writers have directed their efforts to present any thing complete in this department of writing.” - *Ecclesiastical History*, Book 1, chapter 1, page 2. (Cruse, 1897. Ed.).

Ruter’s *History of the Christian Church* informs us:

“From the very first, therefore, we find in the Church of Christ a regular chain of authority and subordination. In the appointment of the twelve apostles, and in the ordination of the seventy disciples, we plainly discern a regular and delegated authority, a constitution and a connected body.” - Century 1, chapter 3, page 25.

COMMENT ON THE WORD “APOSTLE”

“In the New Testament it is used specifically for the Twelve, whom Jesus sent forth as his witnesses (Mark 3:14). As thus restricted, Paul appropriates the title to himself, as one who had been divinely commissioned to go forth and preach the Gospel to the Gentiles and, therefore, was fully equal to the Twelve (Galatians 1:1, 11 - 16; 2:10).

“Beyond this restricted use, the term is applied in Acts to Paul and Barnabas (14:4, 14), evidently as those who by divine command had been sent forth by the Antioch Church to take the Gospel further into Gentile lands (Acts 13:1 - 3). It is not certain that Paul considers his co - workers, Silvanus and Timothy (1 Thessalonians 1:1) or Apollos (1 Corinthians 3:23 - 49) as ‘Apostles’; nor that in 1 Corinthians 15:7 he had in mind a body of Apostles, apart from the Twelve . . . yet his reference (Romans 16:7) to Andronicus and Junias would show that the term came to be used more widely than its first restricted reference to the Twelve and Paul. This is confirmed by Paul’s reference to James, the Lord’s brother, as an apostle (Galatians 1:19).

“As to the basis on which Andronicus and Junias were reckoned as apostles, they may have been sent forth, commissioned, to evangelistic service by some church in the East.” - Funk & Wagnalls *New Standard Bible Dictionary*, third edition, 1936, page 57, heading, “Apostle” (references to A. V. of Bible).

BISHOPS

Philemon 1:1 - *“To all the saints in Christ Jesus which are at Philippi, with the bishops and deacons.”*

QUALIFICATIONS

1 Timothy 3:1 - 7 - *“If a man desire the office of a bishop, he desireth a good work. A bishop then must be blameless, the husband of one wife, vigilant, sober, of good behavior, given to hospitality, apt. to teach; not given to wine, no striker, not greedy of filthy lucre; but patient, not a brawler, not covetous; one that ruleth well his own house, having his children in subjection with all gravity. . . . Moreover he must have a good report of them which are without.”*

Titus 1:7 - *“Blameless, as the steward of God.”*

D&C 68:2 - *“Bishops . . . shall be high priests who are worthy, and they shall be appointed by the first presidency . . . except they be literal descendants of Aaron and if they be literal descendents of Aaron, they have a legal right to the bishopric, if they are the firstborn among the sons of Aaron; for the firstborn holds the right of presidency over this priesthood. . . . No man has a legal right to this office, to hold the keys of this priesthood, except he be a literal descendant and the firstborn of Aaron; but as a high priest of the Melchisedec priesthood has authority to officiate in all the lesser offices, he may officiate in the office of bishop when no literal descendant of Aaron can be found.”*

D&C 104:32 - *“A bishop must be chosen from the high priesthood, unless he is a literal descendant of Aaron . . . a high priest that is after the order of Melchisedec, may be set apart unto the ministering of temporal things.”*

ORDINATION

D&C 104:8 - *“Provided he is called and set apart and ordained unto this power by the hands of the presidency of the Melchisedec priesthood.”*

DUTIES

JUDICIAL

D&C 104:32 - *“To be a judge in Israel, to do the business of the church, to sit in judgment upon transgressors, upon testimony.”*

PRESIDE OVER AARONIC PRIESTHOOD

D&C 104:8 - *“The second priesthood is called the priesthood of Aaron. . . . The bishopric is the presidency of this priesthood, and holds the keys of authority of the same.”*

RECEIVE “SUBSTANCE” FOR THE POOR

D&C 42:8 - *“Impart of your substance unto the poor, and they shall be laid before the bishop of my church and his counsellors.”*

IN CHARGE OF STOREHOUSE

D&C 51:4 - *“Let the bishop appoint a storehouse unto this church, and let all things, both in money and meat, which is more than is needful for the want of this people, be kept in the hands of the bishop.”*

D&C 72:3 - *It is “the duty of the bishop . . . to keep the Lord’s storehouse; to receive the funds of the church . . . to take an account of the elders.”*

D&C 106:1 - *“I require all their surplus property to put into the hands of the bishop of my church in Zion, or the building of mine house, and for the laying of the foundation of Zion, and for the priesthood . . . and this shall be the beginning of the tithing of my people; and after that, those who have thus been tithed, shall pay one tenth of all their interest annually”*

APPOINT BISHOP’S AGENTS

D&C 117:10 - *“The bishop of my church may also choose and appoint bishop’s agents.”*

DIRECT THE GATHERING

D&C 128:1 - *“The increasing desire for gathering together, and the necessity for obtaining places for settlement in the regions round about. . . require that the bishopric be authorized to take such measures as will bring to pass the organization of those who are desirous and willing to form parts in colonization under terms of associations.”*

INTERPRETATION OF FINANCIAL LAW

D&C 129:8 - *“The church has been directed to accede to the rendition of the bishopric with respect to the temporal law; and until such heed is paid to the word which has been given, and which is in accordance with other revelations given to the church . . . the church cannot receive and enjoy the blessings which have been looked for when Zion should be fully redeemed.”*

EVANGELISTS

Ephesians 4:11 - *“And he gave some . . . evangelists.”*

Acts 21:8 - *“The house of Philip the evangelist.”*

2 Timothy 4:5 - *“Do the work of an evangelist.”*

EVANGELICAL MINISTERS

D&C 125:3 - *“The patriarch is an evangelical minister. The duties of this office are to be an evangelical minister; to preach, teach, expound, exhort, to be a revivalist, and to visit branches and districts as wisdom may direct, invitation, request, or the Spirit of God determine and require; to comfort the saints; to be a father to the church; to give counsel and advice to individuals who may seek for such; to lay on hands for the conferment of spiritual blessings, and if so led, to point out the lineage of the one who is blessed.*

4. *“He is to be free from responsibility - ministerial - as a traveling minister, and from the care of local branch or church and district affairs. When traveling and preaching, holding revival meetings, he is to labor in connection with the branch and district officers, not subject to the ministerial control of the missionary in charge, except he should transcend his bounds and teach false doctrine or be found in transgression. He is not to meddle with branch affairs or district affairs. He is not to listen to complaints made by individuals to him, but if persons insist upon presenting their troubles, he is to request them and require them to make them in writing. . . . which it will be his duty to present to the branch or district officers. He is not to be put in charge of either branch or district.*

D&C 104:17 - *“It is the duty of the twelve in all large branches of the church, to ordain evangelical ministers, as they shall be designated unto them by revelation.”*

D&C 126:3 - *“To minister in spiritual blessings to the church.”*

D&C 125:5 - *“The presiding patriarch . . . when patriarchs meet in council, is to preside. . . . He may be asked for counsel, but will not have either voice or vote, except by courtesy, having no direct control of quorums.”*

HIGH PRIESTS IN EARLY CHURCH

The first Christians, mostly Jews, appear to have recognized the office of High Priest in the church as a divinely appointed order. Naturally it is mentioned but a few times in the scanty writings left us, which is not strange in view of what Dr. Stanley alleges, that “of all the offices in the early Church,”

the origin of that of Deacon “is the only part of the institution of the Christian ministry of which we have a full description.” - *Christian Institutions*, pages 173, 174.

It should be conceded, if these early ministers who learned from the apostles themselves of their associates knew the titles of their own offices, which seems reasonable to assume, there were high priests in the church of that period, by whatever names they were called in later centuries. The ecclesiastical historian, Theodoret, who lived in the fourth and fifth centuries, is quoted as saying of Ignatius, a contemporary of the apostles:

“That he (Ignatius) received the gift of the high priesthood from the hand of the great Peter.” - *Presidency and Priesthood*, page 41.

Clement, an associate of Paul (see Philemon 4:3), and who Tertullian states was ordained Bishop of Rome by Peter, instructs the priests concerning the care of Christ’s ministers:

“And the same care must be had of the persons who minister unto Him: for the Chief Priest has his proper services; and to the priests their proper place is appointed: and to the Levites appertain their proper ministries; and the layman is confined within the bounds prescribed to laymen.” - *The Christian Fathers*, by Dr. Carmichael, page 22.

What Dr. Mosheim regards as wishful thinking by ministers of the second century, is more logically explained by their knowledge of scriptural teaching. He says:

“The *bishops* now wished to be thought to correspond with the high priests of the Jews; the *presbyters* were said to come in place of the priests; and the *deacons* were made parallel with the Levites.” - Part II, chapter II, Section 4.

It is remarked by Mosheim that the New Testament expressed parts of the Christian religion in terms of the Jewish law or with reference to Mosaic rites, and then he observes:

“The majority decided that such phraseology was not figurative, but accordant with the nature of things, and to be understood in its proper sense. The bishops were at first innocently called *high priests* and the presbyters, *priests*, and the deacons, *Levites*.” - *Ibid.*, Chapter IV, Section 4.

Dr. Smith remarks on the later Christian use of the terms used concerning the priesthood that were employed under the Mosaic Covenant:

“It was thought of a succeeding age that the old classification of the high priest, priests, and Levites was reproduced in the bishops, priests, and deacons of the Christian Church.” - *Dictionary of the Bible*, Article “Priest,” page 549.

May it not be more reasonable to recognize that after the church began to depart from the faith in various matters of faith and practice, several names were either added or substituted in the priesthood that at first were unknown. The title of Pope is an instance of this kind.

While several writers in the third century wrote of various bishops as being like *fathers* to their church or appointed jurisdiction, it was not until late in the fourth century that a bishop of Rome first applied to himself alone the title of Pope, and it was several centuries later that this title became permanently established.

IN LATTER DAYS

D&C 17:17 - “High priest is to be ordained by the direction of a high council, or general conference.”

D&C 99 (This section is a record of the meeting of twenty - four high priests at Kirtland, Ohio, February 17, 1834, as a “high council” or “general council.” It gives important instructions regarding the work of the high priests on the council.)

D&C 120:2 (The president of a branch should be a high priest, if one is available. The high priest may serve as president of a district.)

D&C 125:10 (Direction is here given for a high priest to preside over stakes).

D&C 83:22 (High priests may travel).

D&C 123:15 (When high priests are needed in missionary service abroad; they should labor under the direction of the twelve).

D&C 104:5 (High priests may officiate in any lesser office of both Aaronic and Melchisedec priesthood).

The high priest may serve as a bishop (104:32); as evangelist (129:7); as apostle and in the presidency.

SEVENTIES OLD TESTAMENT

Numbers 11:16, 17 - *“And the Lord said unto Moses, Gather unto me seventy men of the elders of Israel, whom thou knowest to be the elders of the people, and officers over them; and bring them into the tabernacle of the congregation, that they may stand there with thee. . . .And they shall bear the burden of the people with thee, that thou bear it not thyself alone.”*

NEW TESTAMENT

Luke 10:1 - *“The Lord appointed other seventy also, and sent them two and two before his face into every city and place, whither he himself would come.”*

FUNCTIONS OF MODERN SEVENTIES

D&C 104:11 - *“The seventy are also called to preach the gospel, and to be especial witnesses unto the Gentiles and in all the world - thus differing from other officers in the church in the duties of their calling; and they form a quorum equal in authority to that of the twelve especial witnesses, or apostles. . . . And every decision made by either of these quorums must be by the unanimous voice of the same; that is, every member in each quorum must be agreed to its decisions, in order to make their decisions of the same power or validity one with the other.”*

D&C 107:44 - *“Seventies, which quorum is instituted for traveling elders to bear record of my name in all the world, wherever the traveling high council, my apostles, shall send them to prepare a way before my face. The difference between this quorum and the quorum of elders is, that one is to travel continually, and the other is to preside over the churches.”*

D&C 121:5 - *“The seventy may select from their number seven; of which number those now being of the seven presidents of seventy shall be a part; who shall form the presidency of seven presidents of seventy as provided in my law.”*

D&C 124:6 - *“The seven presidents of the seventy shall preside over the whole number of the seventy when assembled in council together; the senior, or chosen president of the seven presidents, shall preside over the six other presidents in their councils as presidents of the seventy; and when either quorum is sitting in council, as a quorum, then its chosen president shall preside over its sittings. When any quorum of the seventy may be sitting, any one, or all of the seven presidents, may at their request, or by invitation of such quorum, be present and take part in the deliberations of such*

council, but the president of such quorum but the president of such quorum only shall preside, except by consent of the quorum obtained by vote properly taken."

D&C 120:3 - *"The seventy when traveling by the voice of the church, or sent by the twelve to minister the word where the twelve can not go, are in the powers of their ministration apostles - those sent - and in meetings where no organization exists should preside, if no member of the twelve or presidency be present."*

D&C 120:10 - *"The presidents of seventy are instructed to select from the several quorums of elders such as are qualified and in a condition to take upon them the office of seventy."*

D&C 123:15 (Seventies are to labor under the direction of the twelve).

ELDERS

OLD TESTAMENT

Numbers 11:16 - *"Elders of Israel . . . elders of the people, and officers over them."*

Deuteronomy 31:9 - *"And Moses wrote this law . . . unto all the elders of Israel."*

NEW TESTAMENT

Titus 1:5 - *"Thou shouldest set in order the things that are wanting, and ordain elders in every city."*

1 Peter 5:1 - 3 - *"The elders which are among you I exhort. . . . feed the flock of God which is among you, taking the oversight thereof"*

MODERN DUTIES

D&C 17:8, 9 - *"The duty of the elders . . . to baptize, and to ordain other elders, priests, teachers, deacons, and to administer bread and wine - the emblems of the flesh and blood of Christ - and to confirm those who are baptized into the church, by the laying on of hands for the baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost, according to the Scriptures; and to teach, expound, exhort, baptize, and watch over the church; and to confirm the church by the laying on of the hands, and the giving of the Holy Ghost, and to take the lead of all meetings.*

"The elders are to conduct the meetings as they are led by the Holy Ghost, according to the commandments and revelations of God."

D&C 104:5 - 7 - *"High priests . . . have a right to officiate in their own standing, under the direction of the presidency, in administering spiritual things, and also in the office of an elder, priest (of the Levitical order), teacher, deacon, and member. An elder has a right to officiate in his stead when the high priest is not present. The high priest and elder are to administer in spiritual things, agreeably to the covenants and commandments of the church; and they have a right to officiate in all these offices of the church when there are no higher authorities present."*

D&C 17:19 - *"Every member of the church of Christ having children, is to bring them unto the elders before the church, who are to lay their hands upon them in the name of Jesus Christ, and bless them in his name."*

D&C 104:31 - *"There must needs be presiding elders, to preside over those who are of the office of an elder."*

D&C 120:2 - *"A branch may be presided over by. . . an elder. . . Districts may be presided over by . . . an elder."*

D&C 42:12 - *"Whosoever among you are sick... The elders of the church, two or more, shall be called, and shall pray for, and lay their hands upon them in my name."*

James 5:14, 15 - *“Is any sick among you? let him call for the elders of the church; and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord; and the prayer of faith shall save the sick, and the Lord shall raise him up; and if he have committed sins, they shall be forgiven him.”*

D&C 42:22, 23 (This passage describes the organization and functioning of an elder’s court, for the trying of offenses against the code of morals by members of the church).

D&C 104:32 (Bishop to choose his counselors among the elders).

D&C 83:22 (Elders may travel)

OFFICES IN THE AARONIC OORDER

PRIESTS

NEW TESTAMENT

Acts 6: 7 - *“The word of God increased; and the number of the disciples multiplied in Jerusalem greatly; and a great company of the priests were obedient to the faith.”*

MODERN

D&C 17:10 - *“The priest’s duty is to preach, teach, expound, exhort, and baptize, and administer the sacrament, and visit the house of each member, and exhort them to pray vocally and in secret, and attend to all family duties: and he may also ordain other priests, teachers, and deacons; and he is to take the lead of meetings when there is no elder present. . . . In all these duties the priest is to assist the elder if the occasion requires.”*

D&C 17:10, 22 (The priest is the only member of the Aaronic order who may baptize or administer the sacrament).

D&C 104:31 (A priest is to preside over a quorum meeting of priests).

D&C 83:22 (A priest may travel).

D&C 111:1 (A priest may perform a marriage ceremony).

TEACHERS

NEW TESTAMENT

1 Corinthians 12:28 - *“And God hath set some in the church, . . . thirdly, teachers.”*

Ephesians 4:11 - *“And he gave some . . . pastors and teachers.”*

MODERN

D&C 17:11 - *“The teacher’s duty is to watch over the church always, and be with, and strengthen them, and see that there is no iniquity in the church, neither hardness with each other; neither lying, backbiting, nor evil speaking; and see that the church meet together often, and also see that all the members do their duty, and he is to take the lead of meetings in the absence of the elder or priest, and is to be assisted always, in all his duties in the church, by the deacons, if occasion requires; but neither teachers nor deacons have authority to baptize, administer the sacrament, or lay on hands; they are, however, to warn, expound, exhort, and teach, and invite all to come unto Christ.”*

The teacher may preside: over a branch (D&C 120:2), or over a quorum of teachers (104:31).

A special publication, *The Ministry of the Teacher*, is available. The accepted interpretation of D&C 42:5, with General Conference Resolution 449, permits the teacher to preach in his own branch.

DEACONS
NEW TESTAMENT

Philemon 1:1 - *"Saints, . . . bishops and deacons.*

1 Timothy 3:8 - *"Likewise must the deacons be grave, not doubletongued, not given to much wine, not greedy of filthy lucre."*

1 Timothy 3:10 - *"Let them use the office of a deacon, being found blameless."*

MODERN

D&C 17:11 (Teacher is to be assisted always, if occasion requires, by the deacon).

D&C 17:12 - (To be ordained "according to the gifts and callings of God unto him").

D&C 104:31 (A deacon to preside over meetings of the deacons).

D&C 104:38 - *"The duty of a president over the office of a deacon, is to preside over twelve deacons, to sit in council with them, and to teach them their duty - edifying one another."*

D&C 120:2 - *"A branch may be presided over by a . . . deacon, chosen and sustained by the vote of the branch."*

D&C 83:22 - *"A deacon is a standing minister unto the church."*

(For other information on the work of the deacon, the reader is referred to *The Ministry of the Deacon*.)

Chapter Eleven
APOSTASY AND RESTORATION
APOSTASY OF THE CHURCH AFTER THE DAYS OF CHRIST
SCRIPTURES ON THE APOSTASY

Isaiah 24:5 - *"The earth also is defiled under the inhabitants thereof; because they have transgressed the laws, changed the ordinance, broken the everlasting covenant."*

Daniel 7:21, 25 - *"I beheld, and the same horn made war with the Saints, and prevailed against them. . . . And he shall speak great words against the Most High, and shall wear out the saints of the Most High, and think to change times and laws; and they shall be given into his hand until a time and times and the dividing of times."*

Matthew 11:12 - *"And from the days of John the Baptist until now, the kingdom of heaven suffereth violence, and the violent take it by force."*

John 12:35 - *"Then Jesus said unto them, Yet a little while is the light with you. Walk while ye have the light, lest darkness come upon you; for he that walketh in darkness knoweth not whither he goeth."*

Acts 20:29, 30 - *"For I know this, that after my departing shall grievous wolves enter in among you, not sparing the flock. Also of your own selves shall men arise, speaking perverse things, to draw away disciples after them."*

***2 Thessalonians 2:3** - *"Let no man deceive you by any means; for there shall come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition."*

2 Timothy 4:3 - *"For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but after their own lusts shall they heap to themselves teachers, having itching ears."*

***2 Peter 2:1, 2** - *"But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in abominable heresies, even denying the Lord that*

ought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction. And many shall follow their pernicious ways; by reason of whom the way of truth shall be evil spoken of."

***1 John 4:3** - *"And every spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is not of God; and this is that spirit of antichrist, whereof ye have heard that it should come; and even now it is already in the world."*

***Revelation 12:4, 5** - *"And the dragon stood before the woman which was delivered, ready to devour her child after it was born. And the woman fled into the wilderness, where she had a place prepared of God, that they should feed her there a thousand and two hundred and threescore years."*

Revelation 13:7 - *"And it was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them; and power was given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations."*

2 Timothy 1 - 5; Jude 18.

HISTORICAL NOTES ON APOSTASY

Mosheim says: "The Christian church was scarcely formed when in different places, there started up certain pretended reformers, who not satisfied with the simplicity of that religion that was taught by the apostles, meditated changes of doctrine and worship." - 1 Cent., part 2, chapter 5.

Again he says: "There is no institution so pure and excellent which the corruption and folly of man will not in time alter for the worse, and load with additions foreign to its nature and original design. Such, in a particular manner, was the fate of Christianity. In this century many unnecessary rites and ceremonies were added to the Christian worship, the introduction of which was extremely offensive to wise and good men." - 2 Cent., part 2, chapter 4.

John Wesley: "The gifts of the Holy Spirit were no longer to be found in the Christian church; because the Christians had turned heathens again, and had only a dead form left." - 94th Sermon. John Wesley, in his 94th Sermon: "It does not appear that these extraordinary gifts of the Holy Ghost were common in the church for more than two or three centuries. We seldom hear of them after that fatal period when Emperor Constantine called himself a Christian, and from a vain imagination of promoting the Christian cause thereby, heaped riches and power and honor upon the Christians in general, but in particular upon the Christian clergy. . . . The cause of this was not (as has been vulgarly supposed) because there was no more occasion for them because all the world had become Christian. This is a miserable mistake; not a twentieth part of it was then nominally Christian."

John Wesley says: "The times that we have reason to believe are at hand - if they are not already begun, are what many pious men have termed the latter day glory, meaning the time wherein God would gloriously display his power and love in the fulfillment of the promise that the knowledge of the Lord shall cover the earth as the waters cover the sea. The generality of Christians can see no signs of the glorious day that is approaching; but how is this to be accounted for?" - 71st Sermon. Sir Isaac Newton said: "About the time of the end, in all probability, a body of men will be raised up who will turn their attention to the prophecy; and insist upon their literal fulfillment in the midst of much clamor and opposition." - William Newton, *Lectures on Daniel*, page 201.

Alexander Campbell said: "The primitive gospel in its effulgence and power is yet to shine out in its original splendor to regenerate the world." - Haiden's History page 37.

“But the preparation of a people for the coming of the Lord must be the result of the restoration of the ANCIENT GOSPEL and ORDER OF THINGS.” - *Ibid.*, page 292, published by Standard Publishing Company, Cincinnati, Ohio.

Revelation Roger Williams: - “There can be no recovery out of that apostasy till Christ shall send forth new apostles to plant churches anew.”

FULLNESS OF TIMES

†**Luke 3:8** - *“Until the fullness of time, and the law and the testimony shall be sealed, and the keys of the kingdom shall be delivered up again unto the Father.”*

***Luke 21:23, 24** - *“And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations; and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled. Now these things he spake unto them, concerning the destruction of Jerusalem” (24).*

Romans 11:25 - *“For I would not, brethren, that ye should be ignorant of this mystery, lest ye should be wise in your own conceits, that blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fullness of the Gentiles be come in.”*

Ephesians 1:10 - *“That in the dispensation of the fullness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him.”*

Galatians 4:4.

D&C 26:3 - *“Unto whom I have committed the keys of my kingdom, and a dispensation of the gospel for the last times; and for the fullness of times, in which I will gather together in one all things, both which are in heaven and which are on earth.”*

D&C 76:7 - *“Who are cast down to hell and suffer the wrath of Almighty God until the fullness of times, when Christ shall have subdued all enemies under his feet, and shall have perfected his work.”*

D&C 105:12 - *“For unto you . . . is the power of this priesthood given, for the last days and for the last time, in the which is the dispensation of the fullness of times.”*

D&C 107:13 - *“For I deign to reveal unto my church things which have been kept hid from before the foundation of the world; things that pertain to the dispensation of the fullness of times.”*

D&C 110:18, 20 - *“Things which never have been revealed from the foundation of the world, but have been kept hid from the wise and prudent, shall be revealed unto babes and sucklings in this the dispensation of the fullness of times. . . . The voice of Peter, James, and John. . . . declaring themselves as possessing the keys of the kingdom, and of the dispensation of the fullness of times.”*

MERIDIAN OF TIME

†**Genesis 5:43** - *“For they would not hearken unto his voice, nor believe on his Only Begotten Son, even him whom he declared should come in the meridian of time; who was prepared from before the foundation of the world.”*

†**Genesis 6:60, 65** - *“The name of his Only Begotten is the Son of Man, even Jesus Christ, a righteous judge, who shall come in the meridian of time. . . . This is the plan of salvation unto all men, through the blood of mine Only Begotten, who shall come in the meridian of time.”*

†**Genesis 7:52, 53** - *“When shall the blood of the righteous be shed, that all they that mourn may be sanctified, and have eternal life? And the Lord said, It shall be in the meridian of time; in the days of wickedness and vengeance.”*

***Hebrews 9:26** - *“For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world; but now once in the meridian of time hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.”*

D&C 17:5 - *“That as many as would believe and be baptized, in his holy name, and endure in faith to the end, should be saved: not only those who believed after he came in the meridian of time in the flesh, but all those from the beginning.”*

D&C 39:1 - *“Jesus Christ. . . the same which came in the meridian of time unto my own, and my own received me not.”*

DAYS COUNTED FOR YEARS

Numbers 14:34 - *“After the number of days in which he searched the land, even forty days, each day for a year, shall ye bear your iniquities, even forty years, and ye shall know my breach of promise.”*

Ezekiel 4:4 - 6 - *“Lie thou also upon thy left side, and lay the iniquity of the house of Israel upon it; according to the number of the days that thou shalt lie upon it thou shalt bear their iniquity. For I have laid upon thee the years of their iniquity, according to the number of the days, three hundred and ninety days; so shalt thou bear the iniquity of the house of Israel. And when thou hast accomplished them, lie again on thy right side, and thou shalt bear the iniquity of the house of Judah forty days; I have appointed thee each day for a year.*

Daniel 7:25 - *“And they shall be given into his hand until a time and times and the dividing of times.”*

Daniel 8:14 - *“And he said unto me, Unto two thousand and three hundred days; then shall the sanctuary be cleansed.”*

Daniel 9:24 - 27 - *“Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression. . . . Unto the Messiah the Prince, shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks. . . . And after threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off. . . . And he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week.”*

Daniel 12:7, 11, 12 - *“And sware by him that liveth forever, that it shall be for a time, times, and a half; and when he shall have accomplished to scatter the power of the holy people, all these things shall be finished. . . . And from the time that the daily sacrifice shall be taken away, and the abomination that maketh desolate set up, there shall be a thousand two hundred and ninety days. Blessed is he that waiteth, and cometh to the thousand three hundred and five and thirty days.”*

Revelation 11:2 - *“But the court which is without the temple, leave out, and measure it not; for it is given unto the Gentiles; and the holy city shall they tread under foot forty and two months.”*

***Revelation 12:5, 14** - *“And the woman fled into the wilderness, where she had a place prepared of God, that they should feed her there a thousand and two hundred and threescore years. . . . That she might flee into the wilderness, into her place; where she is nourished for a time, and times, and half a time, from the face of the serpent” (6, 14).*

Revelation 13:5 - *“And there was given unto him a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies; and power was given unto him to continue forty and two months.”*

VARIABLE MEANING OF “DAY”

(In all of the following texts “day” is from the Hebrew *Yowm* which Dr. Strong states is “a space of time defined by an associated term.” Always used in the early chapters of Genesis, and mostly used throughout the Old Testament.)

Genesis 1:8, 11, 17, 21 - *“The evening and the morning were the first day . . . the evening and the morning were the second day . . . the evening and the morning were the third day . . . the evening and the morning were the fourth day” (5, 8, 13, 19).*

***Genesis 2:4** - *“The generations of the heaven, and of the earth, when they were created in the day that I the Lord God made the heaven and the earth.”*

1 Samuel 8:18 - *"Ye shall cry out in that day because of your king which ye shall have chosen you; and the Lord will not hear you in that day."*

Psalms 110:3 - *"Thy people shall be willing in the day of thy power."*

Psalms 137:7 - *"Remember, O Lord, the children of Edom in the day of Jerusalem."*

***Isaiah 4:1** - *"In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious, and the fruit of the earth excellent and comely to them that are escaped of Israel" (2).*

Isaiah 11:10 - *"In that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious."*

Isaiah 27:12, 13 - *"It shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall beat off from the channel of the river unto the stream of Egypt, and ye shall be gathered one by one, O ye children of Israel . . . and shall worship the Lord in the holy mount at Jerusalem."*

Ezekiel 34:12 - *"So will I seek out my sheep, and will deliver them out of all places where they have been scattered in the cloudy and dark day."*

Nahum 2:3; Zechariah 2:11; 3:10; *4:10; 8:9; 14:9; *Luke 13:32; John 8:56.

VARIOUS MEANINGS OF YOWM (HEBREW FOR DAY)

In Genesis 18:11; 24:1; Zechariah 8:4, it is translated "age."

In 1 Kings 14:19, 29, it is rendered "chronicles."

In Genesis 26:8; Numbers 20:15; Deuteronomy 10:10; Joshua 11:18; 1 Samuel 7:2, it is "time."

In Joshua 24:7; 2 Chronicles 15:3, it is "season."

In Genesis 29:14; Leviticus 25:8, it is "space."

In Exodus 13:10; Leviticus 25:29; Judges 17:10, it is "year" (Authorized Version).

MISSION OF JOHN THE BAPTIST

***Matthew 3:29** - *"For I am he who was spoken of by the prophet Esaias, saying, The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord and make his paths straight" (3).*

***Matthew 11:15** - *"And if ye will receive it, verily, he was the Elias, who was for to come and prepare all things" (14).*

***Matthew 17:10** - *"Elias truly shall first come, and restore all things, as the prophets have written" (11).*

***Mark 9:3** - *"And there appeared unto them Elias and Moses, or in other words, John the Baptist and Moses and they were talking with Jesus" (4).*

***Luke 1:15 - 17** - *"For he shall be great in the sight of the Lord, and shall drink neither wine nor strong drink; and he shall be filled with the Holy Ghost, even from his mother's womb. And many of the children of Israel shall he turn to the Lord their God; and he shall go before the Lord in the spirit and power of Elias, to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the disobedient to the wisdom of the just, to make ready a people prepared for the Lord."*

***Luke 7:26 - 28** - *"But what went ye out for to see? A prophet? Yea, I say unto you, and much more than a prophet. This is the one of whom it is written, Behold I send my messenger before thy face, who shall prepare thy way before thee. For I say unto you, Among those who are born of women, there is not a greater prophet than John the Baptist."*

***John 1:21 22** - *"And he confessed, and denied not that he was Elias; but confessed saying; I am not the Christ. And they asked him, saying; How then art thou Elias? And he said, I am not that Elias who was to restore all things" (20, 21).*

John 10:41 - "And many resorted unto him, and said, John did no miracle; but all things that John spake of this man were true."

***Mark 9:9 - 11; *John 1:28.**

APOSTASY OF THE PRIMITIVE CHURCH HISTORICAL NOTES

History shows that the apostasy from the original faith was gradual and covered a period of several centuries, becoming more heretical after a number of centuries had passed away, involving many controversies and schisms in the church. Many of the following historical quotations are from Mosheim's *Institutes of Ecclesiastical History*, Dr. Murdock's translation being used because of its recognized fidelity to the original work and general superiority.

Of The first century, Mosheim states in Part II, chapter V, of his history:

"Christian churches had scarcely been gathered and organized, when here and there men rose up, who, not being contented with the simplicity and purity of that religion which the apostles taught, sought out new inventions, and fashioned religion according to their own liking." - Section 1.

"So long as the greater part of the apostles were alive, to watch over the churches, these innovators were not very successful, and seem to have had no great number of followers. But gradually, they acquired more influence; and before the decease of all those whom *Christ* had himself instructed, they laid the foundations of those sects, which afterwards exceedingly disturbed the Christian community and gave rise to so many contests." - Section 2.

"The sacred Scriptures themselves - to say nothing of other ancient documents - put it beyond controversy, that even in the *first* century, in various places, men infected with Gnostic leprosy began to erect societies distinct from the other Christians; . . . Under the appellation of Gnostics, are included all those in the first ages of the church, who modified the religion of *Christ*, by joining with it the Oriental philosophy, in regard to the source of evil, and the origin of this material universe." - Section 3.

"Hence there necessarily arose among them a multitude of opinions, which were extremely foreign from the precepts of Christ. Their belief, that the world was not created by the supreme God in whom is all perfection, but by one or more inferior deities of a bad or at least of an imperfect character, would not allow them to admit the divine authority of the O. T. scriptures; and it led some of them to venerate and extol the *serpent*, the prime author of sin among men, and likewise several of the vilest persons mentioned in the Jewish scriptures." - Section 5.

"If those now mentioned are excluded from the number of the *heretics* of the first century, the first place among the Christian sects, and also among those denominated Gnostics, seem to belong to the *Nicolaitans*, of whom *Jesus Christ* himself expressed his detestation, Apoc. ii., 6, 14, 15." - Section 15.

Of the second century, he informs us in Part II, chapter III:

"From this venerable simplicity, insensibly, there was a considerable departure; . . . many principles also were imprudently adopted, which were derived from philosophy, and that too not of the most solid character. This change arose from two principal causes. The first lay in the disposition of certain teachers, who wished to make Christianity appear in harmony with the decisions of philosophy, and who thought it elegant to state Christian precepts in the language of philosophers, jurists, and rabbis. The other cause is found in the discussions with the opposers and corrupters of the truth." - Section 2.

“It is certain that to religious worship, both public and private, many rites were added, without necessity and to the great offence of sober and good men. . . . *First*, there is good reason to suppose the Christian bishops purposely multiplied sacred rites for the sake of rendering the Jews and the pagans more friendly to them.” - Chapter IV, Sections 1, 2.

Of the third century, he says in Part II, Chapter I:

“Gradually the friends of philosophy and literature acquired the ascendancy. To this issue *Origen* contributed very much; for having early imbibed the principles of the new Platonism, he inauspiciously applied them to theology, and earnestly recommended them to the numerous youth who attended on his instructions. . . . Some also of the disciples of *Plotinus*, connected themselves with the Christians, yet retained the leading sentiments of their master.” - Section 5.

“Yet while the ancient mode of church government seemed in general to remain unaltered, there was a gradual deflection from its rules, and an approximation towards the form of a monarchy. For the bishops claimed much higher authority and power than before, and encroached more and more upon the rights not only of the brotherhood, but also of the presbyters. . . . This change in the form of ecclesiastical government was followed by a corrupt state of the clergy. For although examples of primitive piety and virtue were not wanting, yet many were addicted to dissipation, arrogance, voluptuousness, contention, and other vices. . . . The *presbyters* imitated the example of their superiors, and neglecting the duties of their office, lived in indolence, and pleasure.” - Chapter II, Sections 3, 4.

“That the Saviour is to reign a thousand years among men, before the end of the world, had been believed by many in the preceding century, without offence to any: all, however, had not explained the doctrine in the same manner, nor indulged hopes of the same kind of pleasures during that reign. In this century the millenarian doctrine fell into disrepute, through the influence especially of *Origen*, who strenuously opposed it, because it contravened some of his opinions.” - Chapter III, Section 12.

“All the monuments of this century which have come down to us, show that there was a great increase of ceremonies. . . . *Secondly*: the use of incense was now introduced, at least into many churches. . . . To the celebration of the Lord’s supper, those who conducted religious worship annexed longer prayers and more of ceremony; . . . But all believed it absolutely necessary to the attainment of salvation; and therefore they universally wished infants to partake of it. . . . In the *sign of the cross*, they supposed there was great efficacy against all sorts of evils, and particularly against the machinations of evil spirits; and therefore no one undertook anything of much moment, without first crossing himself.” - Chapter IV, Sections 1, 2, 3, 5.

Of the fourth century, Part 1 states:

“It is very evident that the victories of *Constantine* the Great, and both the fear of punishment and the desire of pleasing the Roman emperors, were cogent reasons, in the view of whole nations as well as of individuals, for embracing the Christian religion.” - Section 23.

In Part II, chapter 2, he remarks:

“Hence, at the close of this century, only the shadow of the ancient form of church government remained; and the former rights of the presbyters and the people were engrossed chiefly by the bishops; while those of the whole church passed into the hands of the emperors or their provincial governors and magistrates.” - Section 2.

“Yet the number of the bad began gradually to increase, so that the truly pious and godly appeared more rare. . . . But as the times continually waxed worse and worse, the more honorable and

powerful could sin with impunity, and only the poor and the unfortunate felt the severity of the laws." - Chapter III, Section 17.

Concerning *Aeries* and others who opposed superstition and errors, he states:

"He seems to have aimed to reduce religion to its primitive simplicity, . . . There were various persons of this sort in the fourth century, who were disgusted with the progress of superstition and of errors respecting the true nature of religion, and who opposed the general current; but the only fruit of their labor was, that they were branded with infamy." - Sections 21, 22.

"For the Christian bishops introduced, with but slight alterations, into the Christian worship, those rites and institutions by which formerly the Greeks, Romans, and other nations had manifested their piety and reverence towards their imaginary deities; supposing that the people would more readily embrace Christianity, . . ." - Chapter IV, Section 1.

In Chapter V, Mosheim further declares:

"The history of Christianity under *Constantius* (C. 352 - 362), presents the picture of a most stormy period, and of a war among brethren, which was carried on without either religion, or justice, or humanity." - Section 14.

In a footnote (33), Athanasius, Sozmen, and others are cited in proof of the above, with the statement that:

"But the Christians, who from the principles of their holy religion should have been united in the closest bonds of brotherhood and in unbroken peace, were engaged in unceasing war, during the reign of these emperors. The victorious party bore down upon the vanquished with false accusation, banishments, deprivations of office, anathemas of councils, artifice and violence." - *Ibid.*, footnote.

Of the fifth century, in Part II, chapter III, we read:

"Many of those however, who attempted to explain and illustrate these doctrines, opened the way rather for disputation than for a rational faith and a holy life; for they did not so much explain, as involve in greater obscurity and darken with ambiguous terms and incomprehensible distinctions, the deep mysteries of revealed religion. . . . The superstitious notions and human devices, by which religion was before much clogged, were very considerably augmented. The aid of departed saints was implored with supplications by vast multitudes, and no one censured this absurd devotion. . . . These unembodied spirits were supposed very frequently to visit and to be much attached to the places where their bodies were buried. And this opinion, derived to Christians from the Greeks and Romans, drew a great conflux of supplicants to the sepulchres of the saints." - Sections 1, 2.

The following extracts are taken from the sermons of John Wesley:

"The gifts of the Holy Spirit were no longer to be found in the Christian Church, because the Christians had turned heathens again, and had only a dead form left." - Sermon 94.

All the following are from Sermon Sixty - six, preached from 2 Thessalonians 2:7:

"How early and how powerfully did the 'mystery of iniquity' work in the church at Corinth. Not only schisms, heresies, animosities, fierce and bitter contentions, but actual, open sins. We meet with abundant proof that in all the churches the tares grew up with the wheat, and that the 'mystery of iniquity' did every work in a thousand forms. When James wrote his epistle the tares had produced a plentiful harvest. There was envy, strife, confusion and every evil work. Whoso reads with attention will be inclined to believe that the tares had well nigh choked the wheat, even at this early period, and that, among the most of them, no more than the form of godliness was left."

Quoting 2 Peter 2:1 - 3, he says:

“Nor does this apostle mention them as infecting any one particular church only, but as a general plague which even then was dispersed far and wide among the Christians to whom he wrote. We easily infer what was the state of the church in general from that of the seven churches in Asia; all but Philadelphia and Smyrna were corrupted so that many of them were not a lot better than the present races of Christians, and our Lord then threatened what he has long since performed, ‘to remove the candlestick from them.’

“Such is the authentic account of the mystery of iniquity working even in the apostolic church, given not by Jews, nor by heathens, but by themselves.

“We have been apt to imagine that the primitive church was all excellence, and perfection; and such without doubt it was on the ‘Day of Pentecost’; but how soon did the fine gold become dim; how soon was the wine mixed with water; how little time before the Christians were scarcely to be distinguished from the heathens.

“And if so bad in the first century, we can not suppose it to have been any better in the second; undoubtedly it grew worse and worse. Cyprian, bishop of Carthage in the third century, gives an account of his time, which in reading one would be apt to imagine was concerning the present century, so totally void of true religion that the Christians of Africa were exactly like the Christians of England today. The converts practiced all kinds of abominations exactly as they did before conversion, in no way differing in their tempers, or in their lives.

“A Christian nation, a Christian city (according to the ancient pattern), was no longer to be found. Has the case altered since the reformation? How little are any of these reformed Christians better than the heathen? Have they more (I will not say communion with God - although there is no Christianity without it), but have they more justice, mercy, and truth, than the inhabitants of China and Hindostan?

“I doubt whether you ever knew a Christian in your life. I believe that you never did, and perhaps you never will; for you will not find them in the great and gay world, and none are Christians but they that walked as Christ walked; though they are called Christians, yet they are as far from it as hell is from heaven.”

Professor Swing of Chicago gave expression to the following views at the time the Presbyterians dedicated their new church after the great fire, namely February 1, 1874, as in a scrap cut by the writer from the paper that gave his sermon the next day:

“This kingdom of the Lord has either by accident or design, been broken up into many fragments, and we meet today in the name of only one of these numerous and widely scattered parts. . . . Until the wise men have shown us that all these sects must be resolved into one let us feel that we are only one among a multitude of these kingdoms of God. This house which we dedicate to God this day, wears the name of Presbyterian on its party flag, not because the kingdom of Christ is Presbyterian, but because our form of church government and of thought are cast in the Presbyterian mold.”

“Conventions of delegates from several churches assembled for deliberations, were called by the Greeks *Synods*, and by the Latins Councils; and the laws agreed upon in them were called *canons*, that is, *rules*. These councils - of which no vestige appears before the middle of this [2nd] century, changed nearly the whole form of the church.” - Mosheim’s *Ecclesiastical History*, Book 1, Part 2, chapter 2, page 117.

“In the Russo - Greek Church there exist some sects without priests, because in their idea the gift of consecration by laying on of hands, which had continued from the apostles down to Nikon (q. v.),

had been lost by the apostasy of Nicon, and of the clergy seduced by him, and thus all genuine priesthood had become impossible." - McClintock and Strong's *Cyclopedia*, Volume 4, page 522.

In the Roman church, apostasy was fostered by the acts of Justin II, who ruled from 565 to 578, of which a *History of the Church*, published in London in 1854, declares: "He was dissolute, utterly abandoned to luxury and inordinate pleasures: and to such a degree was he inflamed with desire for the property of others, as to convert everything into a means of unlawful gain; standing in no awe of the Deity even in the case of bishoprics, but making them a matter of public sale to any purchasers that offered." Of his conduct, a work by Professor Stebbing states: "His reign was one of continued infamy; and it would be difficult to determine by which he was most degraded - his avarice, his cruelty or his licentiousness." - *History of the Christian Church*, Volume 1, page 303. When Simon (Acts 8:18) offered money for the divine power of the sacred office, Peter replied: "Thy money perish with thee."

Of the sixth century we read: "In the different kingdoms of the western empire different modes were adopted for adjusting the appointments to clerical offices. A custom prevailed in France for the monarch to dispose of ecclesiastical appointments by sale." - Ruter's *Church History*, page 125.

Another historian states: "Before the close of the sixth century, the world was at ease, and superstition had made most rapid strides. The great mass of ministers were excessively ignorant, and led away themselves by the phantasies, did little but delude and destroy the people. A thousand rites were performed; each one of which was supposed to have some wonderful power. A thousand rites were produced, whose touch, it was said, could heal the body and the mind." - Marsh's *Ecclesiastical History*, page 213.

Ruter's *History* also declares: "The union of the church with the state, the power bestowed on the clergy, and the encouragement given to monkery, were fruitful sources of many evils. It was in this century, and chiefly by these measures, that a foundation was laid for the great apostasy so conspicuous during the dark ages in the raise and establishment of the papal power." - Century 4, chapter 1, page 69.

From *Hireling Ministry None of Christ's* the statement of Roger Williams (1652) is quoted as follows: "In the poor small span of my life, I desired to have been a diligent and constant observer, . . . and yet cannot, in the holy presence of God, bring in the result of a satisfactory discovery, that either the begetting ministry or the apostles or messengers to the nations, or the feeding or nourishing ministry of teachers, according to the first institution of the Lord Jesus, are yet restored and extant." - Cramp's *Baptist History*, page 462.

One of his biographers sets forth this conviction of Roger Williams:

"He denied that any ministry now exists which is authorized to preach the gospel to the impenitent, or to administer the ordinances. He believed that these functions belonged to the apostolic race of ministers, which was interrupted and discontinued when the reign of Antichrist commenced, and which will not, as he thought, be restored, till the witnesses shall have been slain and raised again." - *Ibid.*, page 462.

Cave's *Primitive Christianity* states concerning changes that the church made in the order and rank of ministerial offices:

"For the understanding of this it is necessary to know, that when Christianity came to be fully settled in the world, they contrived to model the external government of the church, as near as might be to the civil government of the Roman empire." - Volume I, Part I, chapter 8, page 162. (This suggests the "image of the beast" of Revelation 13:14, 15.)

IMAGES AND IDOLS

The Christians of the first three centuries strictly condemned the use or making of images for worship. But from the fifth century onward, the matter became a source of bitter contention.

Neander's *Church History* of the first period states:

"Those who exercised trades contrary to the general and recognized principles of Christianity, were not admitted to baptism, before they had pledged themselves to relinquish them. . . . Among these trades were reckoned all which had the smallest connection of any kind whatever with idolatry, and might contribute to its furtherance, . . . Many who wished to continue these trades, as a means of subsistence, excused themselves under the plea, that they were no worshippers of idols, and that they considered these images not as objects of religion, but as mere objects of art; but in those days it must have argued great lukewarmness in religious feeling, to separate religion and art so sophistically." - Section III, page 161.

In the fourth century, the Emperor Constantine promoted the use of relics and images in various churches, and it was professed that his mother had found the cross on which Christ was crucified.

Ruter's *Church History* informs us:

"A degree of respect, not less superstitious than that paid to the wood of the cross, was demonstrated by Constantine toward the image of Christ, which he commanded to be made of the most precious materials, and to be placed in the most superb apartment of the imperial palace. The invocation of saints arose in this century." - Chapter II, page 75.

Concerning the fifth century and later, Tytler's *General History* states:

"The most obstinate source of controversy in those ages was the worship of images; a practice which was at first opposed by the clergy, but was afterwards, from interested motives, countenanced and vindicated by them. It was, however, long a subject of division in the church." - Section VI, paragraph 3, page 115.

From the seventh century it increased, and Montagu is quoted in *Presidency and Priesthood*:

"The fatuous superstition of that age is perhaps more fitly illustrated by the third canon of the Eighth General Council, which was held in Constantinople in A. D. 870. 'We decree that the holy image of our Lord Jesus Christ, the liberator and Saviour of all men, shall be adored equally with the Book of the Holy Gospels. . . . The same rule applies to the image of Mary, his pure mother and the mother of God; so it does, also, to the images of the holy angels, and also to the images of the most praiseworthy apostles, and prophets, and martyrs, and holy men, and to images of all the saints; we must honor and adore all those images also.'" - Page 349.

In 813 the Armenian Emperor Leo began to reign, and soon forbade image worship and banished some of the chief church dignitaries who had promoted it; but after his death in 822, his successor recalled many of them. Dr. Dupin's *History of the Church*, Second Edition, remarks concerning his and later acts in the matter:

"He left all men free to worship or not worship images, and published a Regulation, forbidding the abuses he pretended had been introduced in worshipping images, as the taking of crosses out of churches to put images in their places; the paying of adoration to the images themselves; the clothing of statues; the taking of them for Godmothers to children; . . . He also ordered all images that were in low places to be removed, and those which were raised high to remain, that they might serve instead of books to ignorant people, but would not allow them to be worshipped, nor

candles to be lighted to their honor, or incense to be offered to them. . . . It is to be here observed, that the controversy touching the use and worship of images, occasioned a division at that time in the Western, as well as in the Eastern Church. The Pope and the Romans adhered to the decree of the Council of Nice; Claudius Clement, a Spanish priest, disciple to Felix of Urgel, and afterwards bishop of Turin, believed, with the Iconoclasts, that they ought to be removed out of the churches. . . but young Michael coming to the Empire in 841, under the guardianship of his mother Theodota, held a Council at Constantinople, in which the Iconoclasts were condemned, the worship of images restored according to the decree of the Council of Nice, and John, Patriarch of Constantinople, who favored the Iconoclasts, was deposed. Methodius was put in his place. It does not appear that there was any controversy afterwards in the West about images.” - Volume III, chapter 1, pages 3 4.

In Volume II, Book III, Mosheim’s *History* notes the cause of this innovation:
 “The occasion of introducing images into churches, was in a great measure the ignorance of the people, which rendered pictures a help to them; whence they have been called the *people’s Bible*.”
 - Part II, chapter III, footnote 20 to Section 9.

RESTORATION OF THE KINGDOM IN THE LAST DAYS

Isaiah 11:12 - *“And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.”*

Daniel 2:44 - *“And in the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed; and the kingdom shall not be left to other people, but it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever.”*

***Matthew 20:6 - 9** - *“And about the eleventh hour he went out, and found others standing idle, and said unto them, Why stand ye here all the day idle? They said unto him, Because no man hath hired us. He said unto them, Go ye also into the vineyard; and whatsoever is right ye shall receive.”*

***Matthew 22:8, 9** - *“Then said he to his servants, The wedding is ready; but they who were bidden were not worthy. Go ye therefore into the highways, and as many as ye shall find, bid to the marriage.”*

***Matthew 24:32** - *“And again, this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world, for a witness unto all nations, and then shall the end come, or the destruction of the wicked” (14).*

Ephesians 1:10 - *“That in the dispensation of the fullness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him.”*

Revelation 14:6, 7 - *“And I saw another angel fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people, saying with a loud voice, Fear God, and give glory to him; for the hour of his judgment is come; and worship him that made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and the fountains of water.”*

Revelation 18:4 - *“And I heard another voice from heaven, saying, Come out of her, my people, that ye be not partakers of her sins, and that ye receive not of her plagues.”*

Revelation 19:9 - *“And he saith unto me, Write, Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb.”*

Isaiah 2:2 - 4; 5:26; 18:3; 49:22; 66:19, 20; Micah 4:1 - 3.

1 Nephi 3:187 - *“Blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost.”*

1 Nephi 4:16 - *“Then shall the fullness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentile, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed.”*

3 Nephi 7:31 - *"In the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fullness of these things shall be made known unto them."*

1 Nephi 3:19, 152; 6:52 - 56; 7:13 - 15; 2 Nephi 5:16 - 22; 12:42 - 44; 3 Nephi 9:57 - 59, 65 - 68, 85 - 87.

A LATTER - DAY APOSTASY

Jeremiah 17:5, 6 - *"Thus saith the Lord; Cursed be the man that trusteth in man, and maketh flesh his arm; and the man whose heart departeth from the Lord. For he shall be like the heath in the desert, and shall not see when good cometh; but shall inhabit the parched places in the wilderness, in a salt land and not inhabited."*

***2 Thessalonians 2:3, 4** - *"Let no man deceive you by any means; for there shall come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition; who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshiped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, showing himself that he is God."*

***1 Timothy 4:1 - 3** - *"Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils; speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared as with a hot iron; forbidding to marry, and commanding to abstain from meats, which God hath created to be received with thanksgiving of them which believe and know the truth."*

2 Timothy 3:1 - 9 - *"This know also, that in the last days perilous times shall come. For men shall be lovers of their own selves. . . . Without natural affection, truce - breakers, false accusers, incontinent, fierce, despisers of those that are good, traitors, heady, high - minded, lovers of pleasures more than lovers of God; having a form of godliness, but denying the power thereof; from such turn away. For of this sort are they which creep into houses, and lead captive silly women laden with sins, led away with divers lusts, ever learning, and never able to come to the knowledge of the truth. Now as Jannes and Jambres withstood Moses, so do these also resist the truth; men of corrupt minds, reprobate concerning the faith. But they shall proceed no further; for their folly shall be manifest unto all men, as theirs also was."*

2 Timothy 4:3, 4 - *"For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but after their own lusts shall they heap to themselves teachers, having itching ears; and they shall turn away their ears from the truth, and shall be turned unto fables."*

***2 Peter 2:1, 2** - *"But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in abominable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction. And many shall follow their pernicious ways; by reason of whom the way of truth shall be evil spoken of."*

Jude 1:18, 19 - *"Mockers in the last time, who should walk after their own ungodly lusts. . . . Sensual."*

D&C 38:4 - *"And now I show unto you a mystery, a thing which is had in secret chambers, to bring to pass even your destruction, in process of time, and ye knew it not, but now I tell it unto you."*

D&C 64:7 (Could remain in Zion if faithful [1831]. Rebellious be "plucked up," "sent away.")

D&C 83:8 (Saints in Zion to be judged and scourged).

D&C 98:1 - 3 (Driven from Zion because of transgression).

D&C 107:10 (Commanded to build a temple. Sufficient time granted to do so).

D&C 107:11 (Rejection as church on noncompliance).

D&C 107:14 (Promises [to reveal, etc.] ignored, if unfaithful).

SOME EVIDENCES

“Now hear it, O inhabitants of the earth, Jew and Gentile, saint and sinner! When our father Adam came into the garden of Eden, he came into it with a *celestial* body, and brought Eve, *one of his wives*, with him. He helped to make and organize this world. . . . HE IS OUR FATHER AND OUR GOD, AND THE ONLY GOD WITH WHOM WE HAVE TO DO.” - *Journal of Discourses*, Volume 1, page 50.

“I could tell you much more about this; but were I to tell you the whole truth, blasphemy would be nothing to it, in the estimation of the superstitious and overrighteous of mankind.” - *Journal of Discourses*, Volume 1, page 51.

“This revelation has been in my possession *many years*, and who *has known it*? None but those who should know it. I keep a patent lock on my desk, and there does not anything *leak out* that should not.” - Supplement, Volume 15, page 31, *Millennial Star*, *Advocate*, Volume 1, number 10, page 104.

“Well, he gets his endowment, and what for? To go to California and reveal everything he can, and stir up wickedness and prepare himself for hell.” - *Journal of Discourses*, Volume 2, page 144.

“Let me give you the definition in brief: Your endowment is, to receive all those ordinances in the house of the Lord which are necessary for you, after you have departed this life, to enable you to walk back to the presence of the Father, passing the angels who stand as sentinels, being enabled to give them the key words, the signs and tokens, pertaining to the holy priesthood, and gain your eternal exaltation in spite of earth and hell.” - *Journal of Discourses*, Volume 2, page 31.

Kirtland Endowment, *Millennial Star*, Volume 15, pages 723 - 729.

Journal of History, Volume 18, pages 43 - 72, 159 - 188.

“If I have any knowledge touching the condition of this people at the present time, and the way they - are taught, led, counseled, and dictated by those who go before them to open up the way, it is directly opposite of that we saw in the days of Joseph the Prophet.” - *Journal of Discourses*, Volume 1, page 78.

Compare Acts 2:1 - 3.

HERESIES

Galatians 1:7, 8 - “*But there be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ. But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.*”

***2 Peter 2:1** - “*But there were false, prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in abominable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them and bring upon themselves swift destruction.*”

***Matthew 15:8; *1 Timothy 4:1 - 3; 2 Tim 3:1 - 7; Jude 4; Revelation 2:14, 15.**

WARNING

Titus 3:9, 10 - “*But avoid foolish questions, and genealogies, and contentions, and striving about the law; for they are unprofitable and vain. A man that is a heretic, after the first and second admonition, reject.*”

D&C 119:4 - “*That the work of restoration to which the people of my church are looking forward may be hastened in its time, the elders must cease to be overcareful concerning the return of those who were once of the faith but were overcome in the dark and cloudy day, fearing lest they should bring in hidden heresies to the overthrowing of the work; for verily, there are some who are chosen vessels to do good.*”

2 John 1:7 - 10.

FULLNESS OF THE GENTILES

Luke 21:23 - *"Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled" (24).*

***Luke 21:25** - *"In the generation in which the times of the Gentiles shall be fulfilled, there shall be signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars; and upon the earth distress of nations with perplexity, like the sea and the waves roaring."*

***Luke 21:32** - *"Verily I say unto you, this generation, the generation when the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled, shall not pass away till all be fulfilled."*

Romans 11:25 - *"For I would not, brethren, that ye should be ignorant of this mystery, lest ye should be wise in your own conceits, that blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fullness of the Gentiles be come in."*

Romans 15:11, 12; Revelation 7:9; 14:6.

RESTORATION OF LATTER DAYS EXPECTED

Looked forward to by many religious leaders and Bible students.

A book issued in 1534 on *Restitution*, by Rothmann, is cited by Bax as follows:

"The world, declares Rothmann, has fallen from the truth, in that it has been misled by the papacy and by the so - called Evangelical teachers, but the time is at hand when Christ shall restore the world lost in sin and this restitution or restoration of the world shall take place by means of the lowly and unlearned." - *Rise and Fall of the Anabaptists*, page 260.

Near the latter part of the 17th century, Sir Isaac Newton predicted:

"About the time of the end, in all probability, a body of men will be raised up who will turn their attention to the prophecies, and insist upon their literal fulfillment in the midst of much clamor and opposition." - *Lectures on Daniel*, page 201.

Poiret's work, translated from the French in 1713, declares:

"In the world's sixth, which is its old age, it shall by the favor of Jesus Christ receive one more Dispensation of his Grace, which will be the last the wicked world is ever to expect. It will consist, as the former did, in appearing, revelation and re - establishment of some ordinances." - *Economy of the Restoration of Man*, Volume 4, page 205.

About the middle of the 17th century, Roger Williams held:

"He conceived that the church of Christ has so fallen into apostasy as to have lost both its right form and the due administration of the ordinances, which could only be restored by some new apostolic or specially commissioned messenger from above. . . . He conceived that the apostasy of anti - christ hath so far corrupted all that there can be no recovery out of that apostasy till Christ shall send forth anew." - *Struggles and Triumphs of Religious Liberty*, pages 238, 239, quoted in *Presidency and Priesthood*, pages 109, 110.

Taking for a text Matthew 16:3, John Wesley preached Sermon Seventy - one, on "The Signs of the Times," and the following extracts are taken from it:

“The times that we have reason to believe are at hand - if they are not already begun - are what many pious men have termed the time of the Latter Day Glory; meaning the time wherein God would gloriously display his power and love in the fulfillment of the promise that ‘the knowledge of the Lord shall cover the earth as the waters cover the sea.’ The generality of Christians can see no signs of the glorious day that is approaching; but how is this to be accounted for? How is it that men who can now ‘discern the face of the sky,’ who are not only great philosophers but great divines, as eminent as ever the Sadducees or Pharisees were, do not discern the signs of the glorious times, which if not begun *are nigh even at the door.*”

“And yet the wise men of the world, men of learning and renown, cannot understand what we mean by talking of an extra - ordinary work of God. They cannot discern the signs of these times. They see no signs at all of God’s arising to maintain his own cause, and set up his kingdom over all the earth.”

“What could God have done which he hath not done to convince you that the day is coming, that the time is at hand when he will fulfill His glorious promise. and will arise to maintain his own cause and set up his kingdom.”

Early in the 19th century, Alexander Campbell declared:

“But the preparation of a people for the coming of the Lord must be the result of the restoration of the ancient gospel and order of things.” - *The Christian System*, page 311.

He is further quoted by Hayden as saying:

“The promise is that ‘at evening - time it shall be light.’ The primitive gospel, in its effulgence and power, is yet to shine out in its original splendor to regenerate the world.” - *History of the Disciples in the Western Reserve*, page 36.

NAUVOO TEMPLE UNFINISHED

As the revelation given in January, 1841, (D&C 107:10, 11) provided that if the Nauvoo temple was not built within the appointed time, (during which baptisms for the dead should be acceptable to the Lord), the church would be rejected, some facts of historic interest in this respect are given. A revelation stating the critical situation was given October 31, 1841, by Presiding Patriarch Hyrum Smith:

“‘Thus saith the Lord;’ ‘there shall not be a General Assembly for a General Conference assembled together until the house of the Lord shall be finished, and the baptismal font, and if we are not diligent the church shall be rejected and their dead also’, ‘Saith the Lord.’ - *Times and Seasons*, Volume 3, page 589 (also see *Church History*. Volume 2, page 551).

On December 13, 1841, the Twelve wrote an epistle to the Saints, with the warning:

“The building of the temple of the Lord, in the city of Nauvoo, is occupying the first place in the exertions and prayers of many of the saints at the present time, knowing as they do, that if this building is not completed speedily, ‘*we shall be rejected as a church with our dead,*’ for the Lord our God hath spoken it.” - *Times and Seasons* Volume 3, page 625 (also *Church History*, Volume 2, page 559).

It was well understood that to finish the temple was imperative; yet, while a Masonic lodge building and many other constructions were completed, the Nauvoo Temple was still left unfinished after the death of Joseph Smith, for on August 15, 1844, an epistle from the Twelve, signed by its president, announced:

“The temple must be completed by a regular system of tithing, according to the commandments of the Lord.” - *Times and Seasons*, Volume 5, page 619 (also *Church History*, Volume 2, page 560).

In spite of this announcement, the temple had not been completed more than a year and four months later when the church was preparing to abandon Nauvoo. Officials had an editorial issued in the *Times and Seasons* in January, 1846, stating of the temple:

“The attic story was finished in December, and if the Lord continues to favor us, the first story above the basement will be completed ready for meeting in the month of February.” - Volume. 6, page 1096 (also *Church History*, Volume 3, page 132).

In defiance of the “Thus saith the Lord” of October 31, 1841, forbidding the holding of a General Conference until the temple should be finished (noted above), several such conferences were held, one, on October 6, 1845, being held in the unfinished temple itself, of which the *Church History* states:

“The General Conference convened in the unfinished temple October 6, 1845, and continued over the 8th.” - Volume 3, page 127.

In addition to this, the temple was desecrated by being used as a workshop before the end of 1845, as mentioned by Governor Ford:

“During the winter of 1845 - 46 the Mormons made the most prodigious preparations for removal. All the houses in Nauvoo, and even the temple, were converted into workshops; and before spring, more than twelve thousand wagons were in readiness.” - *History of Illinois*, page 412 (also *Church History*, Volume 3, page 164).

Answering reports that the temple was finished, Joseph Smith, son of the Joseph Smith who was killed June 27, 1844, stated in 1871 that it was burned unfinished:

“It has been stated by those whose duty it was to know, that the Temple at Nauvoo was finished, ‘completed as Joseph designed.’ This statement is not true. In no sense can it be said truthfully, that any part of the Temple at Nauvoo was completed, with the possible exception of the main assembly room into which the front doors opened.” - *Church History*, Volume 3, page 667.

Concerning work done on it before it was burned, he further stated:

“The corner stone was laid April 6, 1841, and the burning occurred October 8, 1848. The saints, however, left Nauvoo in 1846, no work probably being done upon the Temple after the spring or summer of that year.” - *Ibid.*, page 668 (*Saints’ Herald*, Volume 19, page 18).

In the United States Circuit Court, Western District of Missouri, Western Division, at Kansas City, evidence in Case No. 1720, called the Temple Lot Case, was presented in 1893 - In this case, James Whitehead, the private secretary of Joseph Smith from early June, 1842, until said Smith’s death, June 27, 1844, said:

“I have been in the temple at Nauvoo many times; I used to measure the stone work, and carpenter work, and all that. There was a font in the temple for the Baptism for the dead. It stood on Twelve (12) oxen, cut out of stone. It never was used, because Joseph Smith was killed and the temple was never finished.” - *Plaintiff’s Abstract of Evidence*, published at Lamoni, Iowa, 1893, pages 34, 35.

John W. Brackenbury, who lived in Nauvoo about seven years, testified in the case:

“I remember about the Temple at Nauvoo; it was never finally completed. I was at Nauvoo from the time I first went there, in the spring of 1839, until sometime in 1846, we left at the time of the hegira from Nauvoo. I was there once since that time. I forget whether it was in 1849 or 1850. No,

sir, the temple was not finished, and when I went back there that time the temple was torn down. When I was there in 1846, it was not finished." - *Ibid.*, page 232.

Answering some erroneous statements, Alexander H. Smith, brother of Joseph Smith whose statement appears above, and who had lived at Nauvoo, supports the above:

"The upper auditorium; the plastering was not done, the floor was only the rough boards, intended only for the lining, was laid, and from this floor upward the stairs, except in the tower, or circular main stairs, were also temporary; the upper floor which was to have been divided into numerous rooms was laid, and partitioned off with cotton factory cloth, and used for some purposes before the saints were driven away. I was told that, the cloth of those partitions was subsequently used for wagon covers, by the saints on their journey across the plains. To my knowledge the temple never was finished, and those who have been led to believe it was, have been deceived. I make this statement freely for the benefit of the present and future generations." - *Church History*, Volume 2, pages 564, 565.

In view of these statements by men of well - known veracity, it may be noted that Brigham Young agrees with their testimony in remarks made at St. George Temple, January 1, 1877, concerning the temple in Nauvoo:

"We built one in Nauvoo. I could pick out several before me now that were there when it was built, and know just how much was finished and what was done. It is true we left brethren there with instructions to finish it, and they got it nearly completed before it was burned; but the saints did not enjoy it. Now we have a temple which will all be finished in a few days, and of which there is enough completed to commence work therein, which has not been done since the days of Adam, that we have any knowledge of." - *Journal of Discourses*, Volume 18, page 304; (*Church History*, Volume 2, page 566).

Chapter Twelve
THE KINGDOM OF GOD
KINGDOM OF GOD
(Also called Kingdom of Heaven)
ENDURES FOREVER

Psalms 145:13 - *"Thy kingdom is an everlasting kingdom and thy dominion endureth throughout all generations."*

Isaiah 9:7 - *"Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end."*

Daniel 2:44 - *"In the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed."*

Daniel 4:34 - *"I praised and honored him that liveth for ever, whose dominion is an everlasting dominion, and his kingdom is from generation to generation."*

2 Nephi 7:44 - *"That ye may be received into the eternal kingdom of God."*

PREACHED BY JOHN, JESUS, AND HIS DISCIPLES

Matthew 3:1, 2 - *"Came John the Baptist, preaching in the wilderness of Judea, and saying, Repent ye: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand" (27, 28)."*

Mark 1:14, 15 - *"Jesus came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of the kingdom of God, and saying, The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand" (12, 13).*

***Luke 4:43** - *“And he said unto them, I must preach the kingdom of God to other cities also: for therefore am I sent.”*

***Luke 8:1** - *“He went throughout every city and village, preaching and showing the glad tidings of the kingdom of God: and the twelve who were ordained of him, were with him.”*

Luke 9:12 - *“Then he called his twelve disciples, . . . together, And he sent them to preach the kingdom of God, and to heal the sick.”*

***Luke 9:11** - *“And he received them, and spake unto them of the kingdom of God, and healed them that had need of healing.”*

Luke 9:60 - *“Jesus said unto him, Let the dead bury their dead: but go thou and preach the kingdom of God.”*

***Acts 1:3** - *“He showed himself alive after his passion by many infallible proofs, . . . speaking of the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.”*

Acts 8:12 - *“When they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized.”*

Acts 19:8 - *“He went into the synagogue, and spake boldly for the space of three months, disputing and persuading the things concerning the kingdom of God.”*

Acts 28:23 - *“There came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God.”*

REQUIREMENTS FOR ENTERING THE KINGDOM

***Matthew 19:24, 26** - *“It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle, than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God . . . but if they will forsake all things for my sake, with God whatsoever things I speak are possible.”*

***Matthew 21:31, 32** - *“The publicans and harlots shall go into the kingdom of God before you. For John came unto you in the way of righteousness, and bare record of me, and ye believed him not; but the publicans and the harlots believed him; and ye, afterward, when ye had seen me, repented not, that ye might believe him”*

Mark 10:12, 13 - *“Suffer the little children to come unto me, and forbid them not; for of such is the kingdom of God. Verily I say unto you, Whosoever shall not receive the kingdom of God as a little child, he shall not enter therein” (14, 15).*

***Mark 10:23** - *“Children, how hard is it for them who trust in riches to enter into the kingdom of God!” (24).*

Luke 9:62 - *“No man having put his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the kingdom of God.”*

***John 3:5** - *“Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water, and the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.”*

Acts 14:22 - *“Exhorting them to continue in the faith, and that we must through much tribulation enter into the kingdom of God.”*

***Matthew 5:21, 22; Galatians 5:19 - 21; 2 Peter 1:10, 11.**

1 Nephi 4:58 - *“There can not any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God.”*

NATURE OF THE KINGDOM

***Matthew 5:5** - *“Blessed are the poor in spirit, who come unto me; for theirs is the kingdom of heaven” (3).*

Mark 4:21 - *"So is the kingdom of God; as if a man should cast seed into the ground; and should sleep and rise, night and day, and the seed should spring and grow up, he knoweth not how" (26, 27).*

Mark 4:25 - *"It is like a grain of mustard seed, which, when it is sown in the earth, is less than all the seeds that be in the earth; but, when it is sown, it groweth up, and becometh greater than all herbs, and shooteth out great branches; so that the fowls of the air may lodge under the shadow of it" (31, 32).*

Mark 9:47 - *"It is better for thee to enter into the kingdom of God, with one eye, than having two eyes to be cast into hell fire."*

***Luke 6:20** - *"And he lifted up his eyes on his disciples, and said, Blessed are the poor; for theirs is the kingdom of God."*

Luke 13:20, 21 - *"Whereunto shall I liken the kingdom of God? It is like leaven, which a woman took and hid in three measures of meal, till the whole was leavened."*

Luke 18:16 - *"Suffer little children to come unto me, and forbid them not; for of such is the kingdom of God."*

John 3:3 - *"Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God."*

John 18:36 - *"My kingdom is not of this world: if my kingdom were of this world, then would my servants fight, that I should not be delivered to the Jews; but now is my kingdom not from hence."*

Romans 14:17 - *"For the kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but righteousness, and peace, and joy in the Holy Ghost."*

1 Corinthians 4:20 - *"For the kingdom of God is not in word, but in power."*

1 Corinthians 6:9, 10 - *"The unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived; neither fornicators, nor idolators, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind, nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God."*

1 Corinthians 15:50 - *"Flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God; neither doth corruption inherit incorruption."*

***Matthew 13:22 - 29; *13:46 - 48; Galatians 5: 19 - 21.**

(Also see Church, Functions of the Church.)

NEARNESS OR ACCESSIBILITY OF THE KINGDOM

Matthew 4:16 - *"From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand" (17).*

Matthew 10:6 - *"And as ye go, preach, saying, The kingdom of heaven is at hand" (7).*

Matthew 12:23 - *"But if I cast out devils by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God is come unto you" (28).*

Matthew 23:10 - *"Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For ye shut up the kingdom of heaven against men; for ye neither go in yourselves, neither suffer ye them that are entering to go in" (13).*

Mark 12:39 - *"When Jesus saw that he answered discreetly, he said unto him, Thou art not far from the kingdom of God" (34).*

***Luke 16:18** - *"Since that time, the kingdom of God is preached, and every man who seeketh truth presseth into it" (16).*

***Luke 17:20, 21** - *"The kingdom of God cometh not with observation; neither shall they say, Lo, here! or, Lo, there! For, behold, the kingdom of God has already come unto you."*

Colossians 1:13 - *"Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the kingdom of his dear Son."*

***Colossians 4:11** - *"These only are my fellowworkers in the kingdom of God, which have been a comfort unto me."*

Revelation 1:9 - *"I John, who also am your brother, and companion in tribulation, and in the kingdom and patience of Jesus Christ."*

D&C 140:5 - *"The work of preparation and the perfection of my Saints go forward slowly, and Zion's conditions are no further away nor any closer than the spiritual condition of my people justifies; but my word shall not fail, neither will my promises, for the foundation of the Lord standeth sure."*

***Luke 7:28; 10:9 - 11; *11:21; *12:34; *19:11 - 26; *Hebrews 12:28. D&C 32:2; 39:5; 65:1; 96:1.**

TRIUMPHANT KINGDOM TO COME

Daniel 7:13, 14, 18 - *"One like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven. . . . And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed. . . . But the saints of the Most High shall take the kingdom, and possess the kingdom for ever."*

Micah 4:7, 8 - *"The Lord shall reign over them in mount Zion from henceforth, even for ever . . . the kingdom shall come to the daughter of Jerusalem."*

Matthew 16:31 - *"There be some standing here, which shall not taste of death, till they see the Son of man coming in his kingdom" (28).*

Luke 21:31 - *"So likewise ye, when ye see these things come to pass, know ye that the kingdom of God is nigh at hand."*

Luke 22:18 - *"I will not drink of the fruit of the vine, until the kingdom of God shall come."*

2 Timothy 4:18 - *"The Lord shall deliver me from every evil work, and will preserve me unto his heavenly kingdom."*

2 Peter 1:11 - *"An entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ."*

***Revelation 11:15** - *"The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdom of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever."*

DISCIPLES AUTHORIZED TO BUILD THE KINGDOM

***Matthew 6:33** - *"Seek ye first to build up the kingdom of God, and to establish his righteousness" (33).*

Matthew 16:19, 20 - *"I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it. And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven" (18, 19).*

***Luke 10:17** - *"He that heareth you heareth me; and he that despiseth you despiseth me; and he that despiseth me despiseth him that sent me" (16).*

***Luke 12:34, 35** - *"Therefore seek ye to bring forth the kingdom of God, and all these things shall be added unto you. Fear not, little flock, for it is your Father's good pleasure to give you the kingdom" (31, 32).*

Luke 22:28, 29 - *"Ye are they which have continued with me in my temptation; and I appoint unto you a kingdom, as my Father hath appointed unto me."*

***Colossians 4:11** - *"These only are my fellowworkers in the kingdom of God, which have been a comfort unto me."*

***Hebrews 12:28** - *"Wherefore we receiving a kingdom which cannot be moved, should have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear."*

John 17:18; 20:21. D&C 94:3; 101:10; 102:2; 103:1; 107:40; 110:10, 14, 20.

TAKEN FROM THE JEWS AS A NATION AND GIVEN TO THE GENTILES

***Matthew 21:45, 53** - *"Therefore say I unto you, The kingdom of God shall be taken from you, and given to a nation bringing forth the fruits thereof. . . . And the kingdom of God shall be taken from them, and shall be given to a nation bringing forth the fruits thereof" (meaning the Gentiles) (43).*

***Mark 12:10** - *"What shall therefore the lord of the vineyard do? Lo, he will come and destroy the husbandmen, and will give the vineyard unto others" (9).*

Acts 13:46 - *"It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you; but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles."*

Acts 28:28 - *"Be it known therefore unto you, that the salvation of God is sent unto the Gentiles, and that they will hear it."*

***Romans 11:17 - 24**

RICHES IN RELATION TO THE KINGDOM

Jacob 2:23, 24 - *"Before ye seek for riches, seek ye for the kingdom of God. And after ye have obtained a hope in Christ, ye shall obtain riches, if ye seek them; and ye will seek them, for the intent to do good; to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the captive, and administer relief to the sick, and the afflicted."*

THE KINGDOM OF GOD IN THE FUTURE

1 Nephi 4:52 - 63 - *"The day should come that they must be judged of their works . . . if they should die in their wickedness, they must be cast off. . . . And if their works have been filthiness . . . they can not dwell in the kingdom of God . . . there can not any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore, there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy. And there is a place prepared, yea, even that awful hell . . . and the devil is the foundation of it. Wherefore, the final state of the souls of men is to dwell in the kingdom of God, or to be cast out . . . the wicked are rejected from the righteous and also from that tree of life, whose fruit is most precious and most desirable above all other fruits: and it is the greatest of all the gifts of God."*

ZION

TAKEN TO HEAVEN

†Genesis 7:78 - *"And it came to pass, that Zion was not, for God received it up into his own bosom; and from thence went forth the saying, Zion is fled."*

†Genesis 14:34 - *"And his people wrought righteousness, and obtained heaven, and sought for the city of Enoch which God had before taken, separating it from the earth, having reserved it unto the latter days, or the end of the world."*

†Genesis 7:23 - 28, 30, 38; †9:22, 23; *Psalms 14:7. D&C 36:3, 6, 9; 77:1.

TO COME FROM HEAVEN

†**Genesis 7:70 - 72** - *“There shall be my tabernacle, and it shall be called Zion; a New Jerusalem. And the Lord said unto Enoch, Then shalt thou and all thy city meet from there; and we will receive them into our bosom; . . . And there shall be mine abode, and it shall be Zion, which shall come forth out of all the creations which I have made; and for the space of a thousand years shall the earth rest.”*

***Isaiah 60:14 - 22; Hebrews 12:22; Revelation 14:1; Ether 6:3. D&C 36:12, 13; 108:5.**

ZION, JERUSALEM

Zechariah 1:17 - *“Cry yet, saying, Thus saith the Lord of hosts; My cities through prosperity shall yet be spread abroad; and the Lord shall yet comfort Zion, and shall yet choose Jerusalem.”*

Zechariah 9:9 - *“Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion; shout, O daughter of Jerusalem; behold, thy King cometh unto thee; he is just, and having salvation; lowly, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass.”*

2 Samuel 5:7 - *“Zion, the same is the city of David.”*

1 Kings 8:1 - *“The city of David which is Zion.”*

JERUSALEM AND MT. ZION

2 Kings 19:31 (Out of Jerusalem and out of Mt. Zion).

Psalms 48:2 (City of the great king).

Isaiah 24:23; *37:32; Micah 4:7 (The Lord reign in Mt. Zion).

Isaiah 33:5 (Fills Zion with righteousness).

1 Chronicles 11:5; Psalms 2:6; 20:2; 87:2; Zechariah 2:7 - 10. Ether 6:4, 5.

ZION OF LAST DAYS, A NEW JERUSALEM

†**Genesis 7:70** - *“Be looking forth for the time of my coming; for there shall be my tabernacle, and it shall be called Zion; a New Jerusalem.”*

†**Genesis 9:21** - *“Covenant, which I made. . . . that, when men should keep all my commandments, Zion should again come on the earth.”*

†**Genesis 14:34** - *“And sought for the city of Enoch which God had before taken, separating it from the earth, having reserved it unto the latter days, or the end of the world.”*

Psalms 2:6, 7 - *“Yet have I set my king upon my holy hill of Zion. I will declare the decree: the Lord hath said unto me, Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee.”*

Psalms 132:13 - *“For the Lord hath chosen Zion; he hath desired it for his habitation.”*

Joel 3:16 - *“The Lord also shall roar out of Zion, and utter his voice from Jerusalem; and the heavens and the earth shall shake.”*

Zechariah 1:17 - *“The Lord shall yet comfort Zion, and shall yet choose Jerusalem.”*

Isaiah 18:1 - 7; Amos 1:2; Micah 4:2; Zechariah 2:7, 10; *Romans 11:26.

2 Nephi 10:1, 2, 4 - *“But if they [the Gentiles] will repent, and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant, and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob. . . . They shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem; . . . And then shall the power of heaven come down among them; and I also will be in the midst.”*

Ether 6:4, 8 - *“Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land. . . . And it shall be a land of their inheritance, and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old.”*

3 Nephi 9:58, 59.

D&C 83:2 - *“The city New Jerusalem shall be built by the gathering of the saints, beginning at this place, even the place of the temple, which temple shall be reared in this generation.”*

D&C 64:8 - *“Behold, I say unto you that Zion shall flourish, and the glory of the Lord shall be upon her; and she shall be an ensign unto the people.”*

D&C 45:13 - *“And it shall come to pass, among the wicked that every man that will not take up his sword against his neighbor must needs flee unto Zion for safety. . . . and it shall be the only people that shall not be at war one with another.”*

D&C 58:3, 4, 15.

2 Nephi 7:17 - 20 - *“But behold, this land, saith God, shall be a land of thine inheritance; and the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land. And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles: and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles. And I will fortify this land against all other nations; and he that fighteth against Zion, shall perish, saith God.”*

D&C 45:12 - *“It shall be called New Jerusalem, a land of peace, a city of refuge, a place of safety for the saints of the most high God and the glory of the Lord shall be there.”*

D&C 94:5 - *“Surely Zion is the city of our God; and surely Zion can not fall, neither be moved out of her place, for God is there, and the hand of the Lord is there, and he hath sworn by the power of his might to be her salvation, and her high tower; therefore verily thus saith the Lord, Let Zion rejoice, for this is Zion, THE PURE IN HEART.”*

D&C 98:4, 10 - *“They that remain and are pure in heart shall return and come to their inheritances; they and their children, with songs of everlasting joy; to build up the waste places of Zion. . . . And let honorable men be appointed, even wise men, and send them, to purchase these lands; and every church in the eastern countries when they are built up, if they will hearken unto this counsel, they may buy lands and gather together upon the land, and in this way they may establish Zion. There is even now ready in store a sufficient, yea, even abundance, to redeem Zion, and establish her waste places, no more to be thrown down, were the churches, who call themselves after my name, willing to hearken to my voice.”*

Ether 5:3, 6, 10. D&C 49:5; 62:2; 63:8; 68:4; 72:3; 87:8; 97:4; 1004 3, 5; 107:1; 108:4, 6.

CONDITIONS IN ZION

2 Nephi 11:106, 109, 118 - *“He commanded that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold, priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain, and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion. . . . But the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money, they shall perish. . . . And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision.”*

Isaiah 34:8; *52:7; 62:11.

1 Nephi 3:187; 2 Nephi 5:31, 33; 12:30; 3 Nephi 9:86.

2 Nephi 11:109 - *“The laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money, they shall perish.”*

Chapter Thirteen
THE TEMPORAL LAW
GOD'S OWNERSHIP OF ALL THINGS

Psalms 24:1 - *"The earth is the Lord's, and the fulness thereof; the world, and they that dwell therein."*

Luke 12:22, 23 - *"But God said unto him, Thou fool, This night thy soul shall be required of thee; then whose shall those things be which thou hast provided? So is he that layeth up treasure for himself, and is not rich toward God" (20, 21).*

Mosiah 2:37 - *"How much more just will be your condemnation, for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you, but to God, to whom also, your life belongeth."*

CONSECRATION

See Offering and Sanctification.

Matthew 6:19 (Lay not treasures on earth).

Mark 10:23 (Hardly shall rich men enter heaven) (24).

Romans 12:1 - *"I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service."*

1 Corinthians 10:31 - *"Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God."*

***Hebrews 13:5** - *"Let your consecrations be without covetousness; and be content with giving such things as ye have; for he hath said, I will never leave thee, nor forsake thee."*

D&C 42:8, 11 - *"And behold, thou wilt remember the poor, and consecrate of thy properties for their support, that which thou hast to impart unto them, with a covenant and a deed which can not be broken. . . . for I will consecrate of the riches of those who embrace my gospel, among the Gentiles, unto the poor of my people who are of the house of Israel."*

D&C 102:4 - *"The lands which I have consecrated for the gathering together of my saints."*

Psalms 51:7; *2 Corinthians 8:5; Hebrews 10:20; D&C 42:9, 19; 82:2; 107:13; 100:5, 6; 101:11; 102:8; 129:8.

THE CONSECRATION OF THE LAND

2 Nephi 7:30, 31 - *"Wherefore, I will consecrate this land unto thy seed, and they who shall be numbered among thy seed, for ever, for the land of their inheritance: for it is a choice land."*

THE CONSECRATION OF SERVICE

2 Nephi 14:12 - *"Ye must pray always, and not faint: that ye must not perform anything unto the Lord, save in the first place ye shall pray unto the Father in the name of Christ, that he will consecrate thy performance unto thee, that thy performance may be for the welfare of thy soul."*

THE CONSECRATION OF PRAYERS

2 Nephi 15:4 - *"I know that the Lord God will consecrate my prayers, for the gain of my people."*

THE CONSECRATION OF PRIESTHOOD

Alma 10:103 - *"And Alma established a church in the land of Sidom, and consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized."*

OBLATIONS

Isaiah 19:20, 21 - *“He shall send them a saviour, and a great one, and the Egyptians shall know the Lord in that day, and shall do sacrifice and oblation.”*

Ezekiel 20:40 - *“In mine holy mountain, in the mountain of the height of Israel, saith the Lord God, there shall all the house of Israel, all of them in the land, serve me: there will I accept them, and there will I require your offerings, and the firstfruits of your oblations.”*

Daniel 9:21 - *“While I was speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation.”*

D&C 59:2 - *“On this, the Lord’s day, thou shalt offer thine oblations, and thy sacraments, unto the Most High, confessing thy sins unto thy brethren, and before the Lord.”*

OBSERVED UNDER MOSAIC LAW

Leviticus 2:2 - 13; 3:1; 7:14; 29:18; Numbers 18:9; 31:50; 2 Chronicles 31:14; Isaiah 1:13; 40:20; 66:3; Jeremiah 14:12; Ezekiel 44:30; 45:1 - 16; 48:9 - 21; Daniel 9:27.

OFFERING

D&C 107:15 - (When the saints try with their might to do a work and are prevented the Lord accepts their offering).

D&C 102:5.

SPIRITUAL OFFERING

Psalms 51:17 - *“The sacrifices of God are a broken spirit; a broken and a contrite heart, O God, thou wilt not despise.”*

Romans 12:1 - *“I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service.”*

Jeremiah 33:11; Hebrews 13:15.

SACRIFICE IN OFFERING A TYPE OF CHRIST

†Genesis 4:7 - *“And then the angel spake, saying, This thing is a similitude of the sacrifice of the Only Begotten of the Father, which is full of grace and truth.”*

Psalms 40:6 - 8 - *“Sacrifice and offering thou didst not desire; mine ears hast thou opened; burnt offering and sin offering hast thou not required. Then said I, Lo, I come; in the volume of the book it is written of me, I delight to do thy will, O my God.”*

***Hebrews 10:1, 12** - *“For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices, which they offered continually year by year make the comers thereunto perfect. . . . But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God.”*

***John 1:29; 1 Corinthians 5:7; 2 Corinthians 5:21; Ephesians 5:2; *Hebrews 7:1 - 13; 8; 9:19 - 28; 10:1 - 20; 13:11 - 13; 1 Peter 1:18 - 20; Revelation 13:8.**

OBLATIONS IN THE PRIMITIVE CHURCH

Of the first century, Mosheim states:

“The people supplied the funds necessary for the support of the teachers, the deacons and the poor, for the public exigencies and for unforeseen emergencies. These funds consisted of voluntary contributions in every species of goods, made by individuals according to their ability, at their public

meetings; and hence they were called oblations.” - *Ecclesiastical History, Book 1, Century 1, Part II, chapter II, Section 6.*

“For the churches had no revenues, except the voluntary contributions of the people, or the oblations;” - *Ibid.*, Section 12.

“The prayers of Christians were followed by *oblations* of bread, wine, and other things, for the support of the ministers of the church and the *poor.*” - *Ibid.*, chapter IV, Section 7.

Concerning oblations in the *first century*, Ruter states:

“The scanty revenues of the ministers arose at first entirely from their share of the *oblations*, or voluntary gifts, which were presented according to the generosity or ability of the *congregation.*” - *History of the Church*, page 26.

“The prayers formed a considerable part of public worship. To this succeeded the *oblations*, and the distribution of the Lord's Supper. - *Ibid.*, page 27.

Of Century II, Moshem informs us:

“The holy *scriptures* were read; short *discourses* on Christian duties were addressed to the people; *hymns* were sung; and at last, the *Lord's supper* and the love - feasts were celebrated, the oblations of the people affording them the materials.” - Part II, chapter IV, Section 8.

Justin Martyr states of their practice after the Communion of bread and wine:

“But we, after these things, henceforward always remind one another of them; and those of us who have the means, assist all who are in want; and we are always together; and in all our oblations we bless the Maker of all things, through His Son Jesus Christ, and through the Holy Ghost” - “First Apology,” Paragraph 67.

Irenaeus (born A.D. 130) shows that oblations were required of Christians:

“And the class of oblations in general has not been set aside; for there were both oblations there (among the Jews) and there are oblations here (among the *Christians*).” - *Ante - Nicene, Nicene and Post - Nicene Fathers, Volume 1*, page 484.

The Apostolic Constitutions (A.D. 300) state that though Christians are freed by the Lord from sacrificing animals:

“Yet He nowhere freed you from those oblations which you owe to the priests, nor from doing good to the poor.” - Volume VII, page 413.

CARE OF THE POOR

See Consecration and Storehouse.

Matthew 19:21 - “Sell what thou hast and give to the poor.”

Mark 10:21 - “Give to the poor and thou shalt have treasure.”

Luke 4:18 - “The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor.”

***Luke 6:20** - “Blessed are the poor, theirs is the kingdom.”

Luke 14:13 - “When thou makest feast, call the poor.”

Luke 18:22 - “Distribute unto the poor.”

Romans 15:26 - “Contribute for the poor saints.”

Galatians 2:10 - “We should remember the poor.”

1 John 3:17 - “But whoso hath this world's good, and seeth his brother have need, and shutteth up his bowels of compassion from him, how dwelleth the love of God in him?”

D&C 56:5, 6 - *“Woe unto you rich men, that will not give your substance to the poor, for your riches will canker your souls; and this shall be your lamentation in the day of visitation, and of judgment, and of indignation: The harvest is past, the summer is ended, and my soul is not saved. Woe! unto you poor men, whose hearts are not broken, whose spirits are not contrite, and whose bellies are not satisfied, and whose hands are not stayed from laying hold upon other men’s goods, whose eyes are full of greediness, who will not labor with their own hands! But blessed are the poor, who are pure in heart, whose hearts are broken, and whose spirits are contrite, for they shall see the kingdom of God coming in power and great glory unto their deliverance; for the fatness of the earth shall be theirs.”*

D&C 58:3 - *“Firstly, the rich and the learned, the wise and the noble; and after that cometh the day of my power; then shall the poor, the lame, and the blind, and the deaf, come in unto the marriage of the Lamb.”*

D&C 102:2 - *“They have not learned to be obedient to the things which I require at their hands, but are full of all manner of evil, and do not impart of their substance, as becometh saints, to the poor and afflicted among them, and are not united according to the union required by the law of the celestial kingdom; and Zion can not be built up unless it is by the principles of the law of the celestial kingdom.”*

Mosiah 2:28 - 30, 32, 34 - *“And also, ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish. Perhaps thou shalt say, The man has brought upon himself his misery; therefore I will stay my hand, and will not give unto him of my food, nor impart unto him of my substance, that he may not suffer, for his punishments are just. . . . For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same being, even God, for all the substance which we have; for both food, and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind?”*

Mosiah 2:40, 41 - *“And again, I say unto the poor, ye who have not and yet have sufficient, that ye remain from day to day; I mean all you who deny the beggar, because ye have not; I would that ye say in your hearts, that I give not because I have not; but if I had, I would give. And now, if ye say this in your hearts, ye remain guiltless, otherwise ye are condemned, and your condemnation is just; for ye covet that which ye have not received.*

Mosiah 2:43, 44 - *“I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor, every man according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick, and administering to their relief, both spiritually and temporally, according to their wants, and see that all these things are done in wisdom and order.”*

Alma 1:40 - *“And they did impart of their substance every man according to that which he had, to the poor, and the needy, and the sick, and the afflicted; and they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat and comely.”*

Matthew 5:44; *Luke 3:11; Acts 6:1, 3; Romans 12:8, 13, 20; 1 Corinthians 16:1, 2; 2 Corinthians 9:7; Galatians 2:10; James 1:27; 2:5, 6. D&C 34:4; 36:2; 83:19, 23; 82:2; 85:4; 101:2.

Mosiah 2:28 - 49; 9:60 - 62; Alma 1:45, 46; Jacob 2:22, 25.

RIGHTEOUS, RICH

Jacob 2:24 - *“And after ye have obtained a hope in Christ, ye shall obtain riches, if ye seek them; and ye will seek them, for the intent to do good; to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the captive, and administer relief to the sick, and the afflicted.”*

Alma 22:17 - 20 - *“And in these prosperous circumstances were the people of Nephi, in the commencement of the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceeding rich.”*

***Genesis 13:1 - 4; Psalms 112:1 - 3; Proverbs 3:16; 8:18; 10:22; 24:4; *Mark 10:22 - 26; *Luke 18:24 - 27; 1 Timothy 6:17 - 19.**

IN THE PRIMITIVE CHURCH

Concerning the poor of the church in the first century, Mosheim’s *History states*:

“Among the virtues for which this primitive church of Christ was distinguished, the care of the poor and needy is most conspicuous. For the rich liberally supplied the wants of all the brotherhood, and with such promptitude and tenderness that, Luke says, *They had all things common*, Acts 2:44; 4:32.” - Part I, chapter IV, Section 5.

Mosheim also informs us concerning this century, that:

“The people supplied the funds necessary for the support of the teachers, the deacon’s and the poor, for the public exigencies and for unforeseen emergencies. These funds consisted of voluntary contributions in every species of goods, made by individuals according to their ability, at their public meetings. . . . Among all members of the church of whatever class or condition, there was the most perfect equality.” - Part II, chapter II, Sections 6, 7.

In chapter IV, Mosheim further states:

“The prayers of Christians were followed by *oblations* of bread, wine, and other things, for the support of the ministers of the church and the poor. For every Christian who had any thing to spare, brought his gift and offered it in a sense to the Lord” - *Ibid.*, Section 7.

Of Christians during the first three centuries, Neander informs us:

“The care of providing for the support and maintenance of the stranger, the poor, and the sick, of the old men, widows, and orphans, and of those who were imprisoned for the faith’s sake, devolved on the whole community. This was one of the chief purposes for which voluntary contributions at the times for assembling for divine service were established, and the charity of individuals outstripped even this.” - *Church History*, Section III, page 156.

TITHING

***Genesis 14:20** - *“And Abraham gave him tithes of all he had taken.”*

†Genesis 14:39 - *“Wherefore, Abram paid unto him tithes of all that he had, of all the riches which he possessed, which God had given him more than that which he had need.”*

Malachi 3:8, 10 - *“Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say, Wherein have we robbed thee? in tithes and offerings. . . .Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in mine house, and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing, that there shall not be room enough to receive it.”*

***Matthew 23:20** - *“For you pay tithe of mint, and anise, and cummin; and have omitted the weightier things of the law; judgment, mercy, and faith; these ought ye to have done, and not to leave the other undone” (23).*

Luke 18:11 - 14 - *“The Pharisee stood and prayed thus with himself; God, I thank thee that I am not as other men. . . . I fast twice in the week; I give tithes of all that I possess. But the publican, standing afar off, would not lift up so much as his eyes unto heaven, but smote upon his breast, saying, God, be merciful to me a sinner. I tell you, this man went down to his house justified, rather than the other.”*

Hebrews 7:5, 6, 8 - *“They that are of the sons of Levi, who receive the office of the priesthood, have a commandment to take tithes of the people according to the law, But he whose descent is not counted from them received tithes of Abraham, And here men that die receive tithes; but there he receiveth them, of whom it is witnessed that he liveth.”*

Leviticus 27:30 - 33; Numbers 18:24 - 28; Deuteronomy 12:6, 17; 14:22 - 28; 26:22; Mosaic Law.

1 Corinthians 16:1, 2 - *“Collection for the saints.”*

Alma 10:8; 3 Nephi 11:11, 13.

D&C 64:5 - *“Behold, now it is called today (until the coming of the Son of Man), and verily it is a day of sacrifice, and a day for the tithing of my people; for he that is I tithed shall not be burned” (at his coming).*

D&C 106:1, 2 - *“After that, those who have thus been tithed, shall pay one tenth of all their interest annually and this shall be a standing law unto them for ever, for my holy priesthood, saith the Lord.”*

D&C 94:3; 114:1; 122:5; 129:8.

A LAW OF GOD

***Genesis 14:39** - *“Wherefore, Abram paid unto him tithes of all that he had, of all the riches which he possessed, which God had given him more than that which he had need” (20).*

Genesis 28:22 - *“And of all that thou shalt give me I will surely give the tenth unto thee.”*

Leviticus 27:30, 32 - *“And all the tithe of the land, whether of the seed of the land, or of the fruit of the tree, is the Lord’s; it is holy unto the Lord. . . . And concerning the tithe of the herd, or of the flock, even of whatsoever passeth under the rod, the tenth shall be holy unto the Lord.”*

Deuteronomy 14:22 - *“Thou shalt truly tithe all the increase of thy seed, that the field bringeth forth year by year.”*

Deuteronomy 26:12 - *“When thou hast made an end of tithing all the tithes of thine increase the third year, which is the year of tithing, and hast given it unto the Levite, the stranger, the fatherless, and the widow, that they may eat within thy gates, and be filled.”*

Proverbs 3:9 - *“Honor the Lord with thy substance, and with the firstfruits of all thine increase.”*

Malachi 3:8, 10 - *“Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say, Wherin have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings. . . . Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse. . . . and prove men now herewith, saith the Lord of hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing, that there shall not be room enough to receive it.”*

***Luke 11:43** - *“But I say unto you, Woe be unto you, Pharisees! For ye tithe mint, and rue, and all manner of herbs, and pass over judgment, and the love of God; these ought ye to have done, and not to leave the other undone” (42).*

Hebrews 7:2, 4, 9 - *“To whom also Abraham gave a tenth part of all; first being by interpretation King of righteousness, and after that also King of Salem, which is, King of peace; Unto whom even the patriarch Abraham gave the tenth of the spoils. . . . And as I may so say, Levi, also, who receiveth tithes, paid tithes in Abraham.”*

Numbers 18:24, 26 - 32; 18:8 - 19; Nehemiah 10:34 - 39; Matthew 23:20; Luke 18:12; *1

Corinthians 16:1, 2; 2 Corinthians 8:12.

Alma 10:8, 9 - *“And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes: . . of one tenth part of all that he possessed. Now these ordinances were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order.”*

Jacob 2:22 - 24; Mosiah 9:60 - 64; 3 Nephi 11:11 - 15, 28, 29.

D&C 64:5 - *“Behold, now it is called today, (until the coming of the Son of Man), and verily it is a day of sacrifice, and a day for the tithing of my people.”*

D&C 106:1 - *“And after that, those who have thus been tithed, shall pay one tenth of all their interest annually; and this shall be for a standing law unto them forever.”*

D&C 94:3; 106:2; 114:1; 122:5; 126:10; 129:8.

TITHING IN EARLY CHURCH

McClintock and Strong's *Cyclopaedia* informs us concerning tithes:

“This obligation has been put forward in ecclesiastical legislation from the earliest period. The Apostolic Canons, the Apostolic Constitutions, St. Cyprian on the Unity of the Church, and the works of Ambrose, Chrysostom, Augustine, and the other fathers of both divisions of the church, abound with allusions to it. In the early Christian Church, the custom of consecrating to religious purposes a tenth of the income was voluntary, and it was not made obligatory until the Council of Tours in 567. The 2nd Council of Macon, in 585, enjoined the payment of tithes under pain of excommunication.”
- Volume 10, Article “Tithes.”

Mosheim states concerning tithes in the second century:

*“In the Greek and Oriental churches, tithes began to be claimed earlier than among the Latins; and probably in the second century, for the Greek writers of the *third* century, and the apostolic constitutions, (which seem to contain ecclesiastical laws of the *Greek* church), mention tithes as a thing then well known.”* - Part II, chapter II, Footnote to Section 3.

Cyprian (born A. D. 200) complains of those who did not pay tithes in his day:

“But now we do not even give the tenths from our patrimony; and while our Lord bids us sell we rather buy and increase our store. Thus has the vigor of faith dwindled away among us; thus has the strength of believers grown weak.” - *Ante - Nicene, Nicene and Post Nicene Fathers*, Volume V, page 429.

The Apostolic Constitutions (A. D. 300) command concerning tithes:

“Of the first fruits and tithes, and after what manner the Bishop is himself to partake of them, or distribute them to others. Let him use those tenths and the firstfruits, which are given according to the command of God, as a man of God; as also let him dispense in a right manner the free will offerings, which are brought in on account of the poor, to the orphans, the widows, the afflicted, and strangers in distress, as having that God for the examiner of his accounts, who has committed the disposition to him.” - Volume VII, page 408.

Ambrose (4th Cent.) states the tithing law as follows: *“God has reserved the tenth part to Himself, and therefore it is not lawful for a man to retain what God has reserved for Himself. To thee He has given nine parts, for Himself He has reserved the tenth part.”* - *“Sermon 34”* by Ambrose.

STEWARDSHIP

Genesis 39:4; 41:40; 43:19 - *“Joseph in Egypt.”*

***Luke 12:49** - *“And the Lord said, I speak unto those whom the Lord shall make rulers over his household, to give his children their portion of meat in due season” (42).*

Romans 14:12 - *“So then every one of us shall give account of himself to God.”*

1 Corinthians 4:2 - *“Moreover it is required of stewards, that a man be found faithful.”*

Titus 1:7 - *“For a bishop must be blameless, as the steward of God; not self-willed, not soon angry, not given to wine, no striker, not given to filthy lucre.”*

Matthew 18:23 - 34; 21:36; 24:52; Luke 12:55 - 57; 19:15; seq.; Acts 20:28; 1 Corinthians 4:1; 1 Thessalonians 2:4; 1 Timothy 1:11; 1 Peter 4:10; 5: 2. Mormon 3:22. D&C 42:9, 19; 51:1 - 5; 64:8; 69:2; 70:1 - 3; 72:1 - 4; 77:1 - 4; 81:1 - 6; 101:1 - 13.

D&C 42:14 - *“Thou shalt stand in the place of thy stewardship; thou shalt not take thy brother’s garment; thou shalt pay for that which thou shalt receive of thy brother.”*

D&C 77:1, 2 - *“It must needs be that there be an organization of my people, in regulating and establishing the affairs of the storehouse for the poor of my people. . . .wherefore a commandment I give unto you, to prepare and organize yourselves by a bond of everlasting covenant that can not be broken.”*

D&C 81:4 - *“And you are to be equal, or in other words, you are to have equal claims on the properties, for the benefit of managing the concerns of your stewardships, every man according to his wants and needs, inasmuch as his wants are just.”*

D&C 101:10 - *“And if the properties are mine then ye are stewards, otherwise ye are no stewards.”*

D&C 101:13 - *“Verily I say unto you, concerning your debts, Behold, it is my will that you should pay all your debts; and it is my will that you should humble yourselves before me, and obtain this blessing by your diligence and humility.”*

D&C 118:4 - *“Let no one deceive himself that he shall not account for his stewardship unto me.”*

THE GATHERING

Genesis 12 - Abraham.

Genesis 19 - Lot.

***Exodus 11 - 14** seq. Israel from Egypt.

Ezra and Nehemiah - Israel from Babylon.

Isaiah 11; Ezekiel 37 - Israel to be gathered again.

IN LATTER DAYS

†Genesis 7:70 - *“Righteousness and truth will I cause to sweep the earth as with a flood, to gather out mine own elect from the four quarters of the earth, unto a place which I shall prepare; . . . and it shall be called Zion; a New Jerusalem.”*

Genesis 49:10 - *“The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be.”*

Psalms 50:4, 5 - *“He shall call to the heavens from above, and to the earth, that he may judge his people. Gather my saints together unto me; those that have made a covenant with me by sacrifice.”*

Isaiah 66:18 - *“It shall come, that I will gather all nations and tongues; and they shall come, and see my glory.”*

Micah 4:1, 2 - *“In the last days it shall come to pass, that the mountain of the house of the Lord shall be established in the top of the mountains, and it shall be exalted above the hills; and people shall flow unto it. And many nations shall come, and say, Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways and we will walk in his paths; for the law shall go forth of Zion, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.”*

Zechariah 2:10, 11 - *“Sing and rejoice, O daughter of Zion: for, lo, I come, and I will dwell in the midst of thee, saith the Lord. And many nations shall be joined to the Lord in that day, and shall be my people.”*

***Matthew 24:28, 40** - *“Behold, wheresoever the carcass is, there will the eagles be gathered together; so likewise shall mine elect be gathered from the four quarters of the earth. . . and he shall send his angels before him with the great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together the remainder of his elect from the four winds; from one end of heaven to the other”* (28, 31).

Matthew 25:32, 33 - *“When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory: and before him shall be gathered all nations”* (31, 32).

***Luke 17:37, 38** - *“Wheresoever the body is gathered; or, in other words, withersoever the saints are gathered, thither will the eagles be gathered together; or, thither will the remainder be gathered together. This he spake, signifying the gathering of his saints; and of angels descending and gathering the remainder unto them”* (37).

Ephesians 1:9, 10 - *“Having made known unto us the mystery of his will, . . . that in the dispensation of the fullness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ.”*

2 Thessalonians 2:1 - *“Now we beseech you, brethren, by the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, and by our gathering together unto him.”*

D&C 28:2 - *“Ye are called to bring to pass the gathering of mine elect, . . . wherefore the decree hath gone forth from the Father that they shall be gathered in unto one place, upon the face of this land.”*

D&C 45:7 - *“And the Saints that have slept shall come forth to meet me in the cloud; . . . and your redemption shall be perfected, and the saints shall come forth from the four quarters of the earth.”*

D&C 45:14 - *“And it shall come to pass that the righteous shall be gathered out from among all nations, and shall come to Zion singing, with songs of everlasting joy.”*

D&C 58:12 - *“Let the work of the gathering be not in haste, nor by flight, but let it be done as it shall be counseled by the elders of the church at the conferences, according to the knowledge which they receive from time to time.”*

D&C 98:9 - *“Therefore, a commandment I give unto all the churches, that they shall continue to gather together unto the places which I have appointed; nevertheless, as I have said unto you in a former commandment, let not your gathering be in haste, nor by flight; but let all things be prepared before you.”*

D&C 100:5 - *“Let all the churches send up wise men, with their moneys, and purchase lands even as I have commanded them.”*

D&C 102:7 - *“Talk not judgment, neither boast of faith, nor of mighty works; but carefully gather together, as much in one region as can be consistently with the feelings of the people: and, behold, I will give unto you favor and grace in their eyes.”*

D&C 108:2 - *“Wherefore prepare ye, prepare ye, O my people; sanctify yourselves; gather ye together, O ye people of my church, upon the land of Zion, all you that have not been commanded to tarry.”*

D&C 127:7 - *“The gathering must not be in haste, nor without due preparation, and must be done in accordance with the revelation given to the church upon Fishing River and in accordance with the counsel and advice of the elders of the church whose duty it has been made to counsel and advise the saints.”*

D&C 3:15; 42:10; 43:6; 45:12; 48:2; 57:6; 83:1; 98:4. 5, 9; 106:2; 117:11; 122:6; 126:10; 128:1; 129:8.

IN THE BOOK OF MORMON

1 Nephi 5:255 - *"All the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth."*

3 Nephi 2:107 - *"As surely as the Lord liveth will he gather in from the four quarters of the earth, all the remnant of the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth."*

3 Nephi 9:67 - *"I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people, and I have covenanted with them, that I would gather them together in mine own due time."*

3 Nephi 9:71 - *"Then will the Father gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance."*

INHERITANCE

HEIRSHIP OF THE RIGHTEOUS

Psalms 25:12, 13 - *"What man is he that feareth the Lord? him shall he teach in the way that he shall choose. His soul shall dwell at ease; and his seed shall inherit the earth."*

Psalms 37:11, 18, 29 - *"The meek shall inherit the earth; and shall delight themselves in the abundance of peace. . . . The Lord knoweth the days of the upright: and their inheritance shall be forever. . . . The righteous shall inherit the land, and dwell therein for ever"*

***Matthew 5:7** - *"Blessed are the meek: for they shall inherit the earth" (5).*

***Matthew 19:29** - *"Every one that has forsaken houses, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for my name's sake, shall receive an hundredfold, and shall inherit everlasting life."*

Matthew 25:35 - *"Then shall the king say unto them on his right hand, Come ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world" (34).*

Acts 20:32 - *"I commend you to God, and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up, and to give you an inheritance among all them which are sanctified."*

Romans 8:16, 17 - *"The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God; and if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together."*

***Galatians 3:29** - *"If ye are Christ's, then are ye Abraham's seed, and heirs according to the promise."*

Galatians 4:6, 7 - *"Because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father. Wherefore thou art no more a servant, but a son; and if a son, then an heir of God through Christ."*

Ephesians 1:13, 14 - *"After that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise, which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession."*

Colossians 1:12 - *"Giving thanks unto the Father, which hath made us meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light."*

Titus 3:7 - *"That being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life."*

Hebrews 6:12, 17 - *"Be not slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises. . . . Wherein God willing more abundantly to show unto the heirs of promise the immutability of his counsel, confirmed it by an oath."*

***Hebrews 9:15** - *"He is the mediator of the new covenant, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first covenant, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance."*

James 2:5 - *"Hath not God chosen the poor of this world rich in faith, and heirs of the kingdom which he hath promised to them that love him?"*

1 Peter 1:4 - *"An inheritance incorruptible, and undefiled, and that fadeth not away, reserved in heaven for you."*

Revelation 21:7 - *"He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son."*

Acts 26:18; Ephesians 1:11; Colossians 3:24; Hebrews 1:14; 11:7, 9; 1 Peter 3:7.

D&C 7:2 - *"I will make him as flaming fire, and a ministering angel; he shall minister for those who shall be heirs of salvation who dwell on the earth."*

D&C 56:6 - *"The Lord shall come, and his recompense shall be with him, and he shall reward every man, and the poor shall rejoice; and their generations shall inherit the earth from generation to generation, for ever and ever."*

D&C 72:1 - *"He who is faithful and wise in time is accounted worthy to inherit the mansions prepared for them of my Father."*

D&C 76:7 - *"Also the telestial receive it of the administering of angels, who are appointed to minister for them, or who are appointed to be ministering spirits for them, for they shall be heirs of salvation."*

D&C 77:4 - *"Ye are the church of the Firstborn, and he will take you up in the cloud, and appoint every man his portion. And he that is a faithful and wise steward shall inherit all things."*

D&C 45:10; 48:2; 52:2, 9; 55:2; 56:4; 57:1, 3; 58:11; 63:6, 8; 70:4; 72:4; 82:1; 85:33; 90:8; 9:14; 98:1, 3, 4.

3 Nephi 10:1 - *"They shall come in unto the covenant, and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance."*

2 Nephi 6:42 - *"The righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, they who have believed in the Holy One of Israel; they who have endured the crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it; they shall inherit the kingdom of God, which was prepared for them from the foundation of the world: and their joy shall be full forever."*

Alma 8:91 - *"No unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of heaven."*

1 Nephi 3:151 - *"I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles; that they did prosper, and obtain the land for their inheritance."*

2 Nephi 1:6, 7 - *"We have obtained a land of promise, a land which is choice above all other lands; A land which the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the inheritance of my seed."*

3 Nephi 7:42 - *"Thus hath the Father commanded me, that I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance."*

THE UNITED ORDER OF ENOCH

See Poor, Stewardship and Storehouse.

†Genesis 7:22, 23 - *"The Lord blessed the land, and they were blessed upon the mountains, and upon the high places, and did flourish. And the Lord called his people, Zion, because they were of one heart and one mind, and dwelt in righteousness; and there were no poor among them."*

D&C 51:1 - *"Hearken unto me, saith the Lord your God, and I will speak unto my servant Edward Partridge, and give unto him directions; for it must needs be that he receive directions how to organize this people, for it must needs be that they are organized according to my laws, if otherwise, they will be cut off; . . . every man equal according to their families, according to their circumstances, and their wants and needs; and let my servant Edward Partridge, when he shall*

appoint a man his portion, give unto him a writing that shall secure unto him his portion, that he shall hold it, even this right and this inheritance in the church, until he transgresses and is not accounted worthy by the voice of the church, according to the laws and covenants of the church, to belong to the church; and if he shall transgress, and is not accounted worthy to belong in the church, he shall not have power to claim that portion which he has consecrated unto the bishop for the poor and the needy of my church; therefore he shall not retain the gift, but shall only have claim on that portion that is deeded unto him. And thus all things shall be made sure according to the laws of the land."

D&C 77:2 - *"Wherefore a commandment I give unto you, to prepare and organize yourselves by a bond or everlasting covenant that can not be broken."*

D&C 101:9 - *"And now a commandment I give unto you concerning Zion, that you shall no longer be bound as an united order to your brethren of Zion . . . your brethren, after they are organized, shall be called the united order of the city of Zion; and they shall be organized in their own names, and in their own name; and they shall do their business in their own name, and their own names; and you shall do your business in your own name, and in your own names."*

D&C 36; 45:12 - 14; 51; 77; 81; 89; 93; 101; 128.

THE STOREHOUSE

Genesis 41:56 - *"The famine was over all the face of the earth; and Joseph opened all the storehouses, and sold unto the Egyptians."*

Deuteronomy 28:8 - *"The Lord shall command the blessing upon thee in thy storehouses, and in all that thou settest thine hand unto."*

1 Chronicles 27:25 - *"And over the storehouses in the fields, in the cities, and in the villages, and in the castles, was Jehonathan the son of Uzziah."*

Malachi 3:10 - *"Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in mine house."*

3 Nephi 11:13 - *"Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in my house, and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing, that there shall not be room enough to receive it."*

D&C 42:14 - *"If thou obtainest more than that which would be for thy support, thou shalt give it unto my storehouse, that all things may be done according to that which I have said."*

D&C 77:1 - *"It must needs be that there be an organization of my people, in regulating and establishing the affairs of the storehouse for the poor of my people, both in this place and in the land of Zion, or in other words, the city of Enoch."*

D&C 81:4 - *"And all this for the benefit of the church of the living God, that every man may improve upon his talent, that every man may gain other talents; yea, even an hundredfold, to be cast into the Lord's storehouse, to become the common property of the whole church, every man seeking the interest of his neighbor, and doing all things with an eye single to the glory of God."*

D&C 58:7; 70:2, 3; 82:2; 87:6; 122:6.

SURPLUS

See Poor, Storehouse.

D&C 42:10 - *"If there shall be properties in the hands of the church, or any individuals of it, more than is necessary for their support, after this first consecration, which is a residue, to be consecrated unto the bishop, it shall be kept to administer unto those who have not."*

D&C 70:2 - *“They receive more than is needful for their necessities, and their wants, it shall be given into my storehouse, and the benefits shall be consecrated unto the inhabitants of Zion.”*

D&C 106:1 - *“In answer to the question, O Lord, show unto thy servants how much thou requirest of the properties of thy people for a tithing? Verily, thus saith the Lord, I require all their surplus property to put into the hands of the bishop of my church of Zion, for the building of mine house, and for the laying the foundation of Zion, and for the priesthood, and for the debts of the presidency of my church; and this shall be the beginning of the tithing of my people.”*

D&C 87:7; 129:8.

Chapter Fourteen

THE SABBATH

THE JEWISH SABBATH

WHY THE SEVENTH DAY WAS INSTITUTED

***Genesis 2:3** - *“And I, God, blessed the seventh day, and sanctified it, because that in it I had rested from all my work, which I, had created and made.”*

TO TEST ISRAEL’S OBEDIENCE

(Given after the Exodus and before the Law)

Exodus 15:25; 16:4 - *“There he made for them a statute and an ordinance, and there he proved them. . . . Behold, I will rain bread from heaven for you; and the people shall go out and gather a certain rate every day, that I may prove them, whether they will walk in my law, or no.”*

Exodus 16:25, 26 - *“And Moses said, Eat that to - day, for to - day is a sabbath unto the Lord; to - day ye shall not find it in the field. Six days ye shall gather it; but on the seventh day, which is the sabbath, in it there shall be none.”*

A COVENANT AND SIGN FOR ISRAEL

Exodus 31:13, 16, 17 - *“Speak thou also unto the children of Israel, saying, Verily my sabbaths ye shall keep; for it is a sign between me and you throughout your generations; that ye may know that I am the Lord that doth sanctify you. . . . Wherefore the children of Israel shall keep the sabbath, to observe the sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual covenant. It is a sign between me and the children of Israel for ever; for in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested, and was refreshed.”*

Ezekiel 20:12 - *“Moreover also I gave them my sabbaths, to be a sign between me and them, that they might know that I am the Lord that sanctify them.”*

A MEMORIAL OF ISRAEL’S DELIVERANCE

Deuteronomy 5:15 - *“And remember that thou wast a servant in the land of Egypt, and that the Lord thy God brought thee out thence through a mighty hand and by a stretched - out arm; therefore the Lord thy God commanded thee to keep the sabbath day.”*

ONE OF THE TEN COMMANDMENTS

Exodus 20:8 - 10 - *“Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy. Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work; but the seventh day is the sabbath of the Lord thy God: in it thou shalt not do any work,*

thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy manservant, nor thy maidservant, nor thy cattle nor thy stranger that is within thy gates.”

Deuteronomy 5:12 - 14 - *“Keep the sabbath day to sanctify it, as the Lord thy God hath commanded thee. Six days thou shalt labor, and do all thy work: but the seventh day is the sabbath of the Lord thy God: in it thou shalt not do any work.”*

THE COVENANT MADE WITH ISRAEL ONLY

Exodus 34:27, 28 - *“After the tenor of these words I have made a covenant with thee and with Israel. . . . And he wrote upon the tables the words of the covenant, the ten commandments.”*

Deuteronomy 5:2, 3 - *“The Lord our God made a covenant with us in Horeb. The Lord made not this covenant with our fathers, but with us, even us, who are all of us here alive this day.”*

SIX DAYS OF WORK, THEN A DAY OF REST

Exodus 23:12 - *“Six days thou shalt do thy work, and on the seventh day thou shalt rest.”*

Leviticus 23:3, 4 - *“Six days shall work be done; but the seventh day is the sabbath of rest, a holy convocation; ye shall do no work therein; it is the sabbath of the Lord in all your dwellings.”*

MUST STAY HOME WITHOUT FIRE ON SABBATH

Exodus 16:29 - *“Abide ye every man in his place, let no man go out of his place on the seventh day.”*

Exodus 35:3 - *“Ye shall kindle no fire throughout your habitations upon the sabbath day.”*

Leviticus 23:31 - *“Ye shall do no manner of work; it shall be a statute for ever throughout your generations in all your dwellings.”*

Numbers 15:32, 35 - *“They found a man that gathered sticks upon the sabbath day. . . . And the Lord said unto Moses, The man shall be surely put to death.”*

Nehemiah 13:19 - *“I commanded that the gates should be shut, and charged that they should not be opened till after the sabbath; and some of my servants set I at the gates that there should no burden be brought in on the sabbath day.”*

Jeremiah 17:21, 22 - *“Thus saith the Lord: Take heed to yourselves, and bear no burden on the sabbath day, nor bring it in by the gates of Jerusalem; neither carry forth a burden out of your houses on the sabbath day, neither do ye any work.”*

BLESSINGS PROMISED IN THE OBSERVANCE OF IT

Isaiah 56:6, 7 - *“Every one that keepeth the sabbath from polluting it, and taketh hold of my covenant, even them will I bring to my holy mountain, and make them joyful in my house of prayer.”*

Isaiah 58:13, 14 - *“If thou turn away thy foot from the sabbath, from doing thy pleasure on my holy day; and call the sabbath a delight, the holy of the Lord, honorable; and shalt honor him not doing thine own ways, nor finding thine own pleasure, nor speaking thine own words; then shalt thou delight thyself in the Lord; and I will cause thee to ride upon the high places of the earth, and feed thee with the heritage of Jacob thy father; for the mouth of the Lord hath spoken it.”*

Jeremiah 17:24, 25 - *“And it shall come to pass, if ye diligently hearken unto me, saith the Lord, to bring in no burden through the gates of this city on the sabbath day, but hallow the sabbath day, to do no work therein; then shall there enter into the gates of this city kings and princes sitting upon the throne of David, riding in chariots and on horses, they, and their princes, the men of Judah, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem; and this city shall remain for ever.”*

OTHER SABBATHS ALSO COMMANDED

Leviticus 23:24, 25 - *"In the seventh month, in the first day of the month, shall ye have a sabbath, a memorial of blowing of trumpets, an holy convocation. Ye shall do no servile work therein."*

Leviticus 23:27, 32 - *"On the tenth day of this seventh month there shall be a day of atonement: . . . It shall be unto you a sabbath of rest, and ye shall afflict your souls."*

Leviticus 23:39 - *"Also in the fifteenth day of the seventh month, when ye have gathered in the fruit of the land, ye shall keep a feast unto the Lord seven days: on the first day shall be a sabbath, and on the eighth day shall be a sabbath."*

Ezekiel 20:12 - *"I gave them my sabbaths, to be a sign between me and them, that they might know that I am the Lord that sanctify them."*

PENALTY FOR BREAKING SABBATH

Jeremiah 17:27 - *"But if ye will not hearken unto me to hallow the sabbath day, . . . then will I kindle a fire in the gates thereof, and it shall devour the palaces of Jerusalem, and it shall not be quenched."*

Ezekiel 20:21 - *"They polluted my sabbaths; then I said, I would pour out my fury upon them."*

Exodus 31:14, 15 - *"Ye shall keep the sabbath therefore; for it is holy unto you. Every one that defileth it shall surely be put to death; for whosoever doeth any work therein, that soul shall be cut off from among his people. Six days may work be done; but in the seventh is the sabbath of rest, holy to the Lord; whosoever doeth any work in the sabbath day, he shall surely be put to death."*

Exodus 35:2 - *"Six days shall work be done, but on the seventh day there shall be to you a holy day, a sabbath of rest to the Lord; whosoever doeth work therein shall be put to death."*

INSTANCES OF TRANSGRESSION

Numbers 15:32, 36 - *"And while the children of Israel were in the wilderness, they found a man that gathered sticks upon the sabbath day. . . . And all the congregation brought him without the camp and stoned him with stones, and he died, as the Lord commanded Moses."*

Nehemiah 13:15, 16 - *"In those days saw I in Judah some treading winepresses on the sabbath, and bringing in sheaves, and lading asses; as also wine, grapes, and figs, and all manner of burdens, which they brought into Jerusalem on the sabbath day; and I testified against them in the day wherein they sold victuals."*

SABBATH TAUGHT IN THE BOOK OF MORMON

Jarom 1:10, 11 - *"The people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land; they observed to keep . . . the sabbath - day holy unto the Lord."*

Mosiah 9:56, 58 - *"And he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy. . . . And there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the people and to worship the Lord their God."*

Mosiah 7:116 - 118.

CHRIST'S TEACHING CONCERNING SABBATH

***Mark 2:21, 22, 25, 26** - *"And it came to pass, that he went through the cornfields on the sabbath day; and his disciples began, as they went, to pluck the ears of corn. And the Pharisees said unto him, Behold, why do thy disciples on the sabbath day that which is not lawful? . . . And he said unto them, The sabbath was made for man, and not man for the sabbath. Wherefore the sabbath was*

given unto man for a day of rest; and also that man should glorify God, and not that man should not eat" (23, 24, 27).

Luke 6:5 - *"And he said unto them, That the Son of Man is Lord also of the sabbath."*

***Matthew 12:1 - 6; *Luke 6:1 - 4.**

WORKS OF NECESSITY AND CHARITY ALLOWED

Matthew 12:8 - 10 - *"And, behold there was a man which had a withered hand. And they asked him, saying, Is it lawful to heal on the sabbath days? that they might accuse him. And he said unto them What man shall there be among you that shall have one sheep, and if it fall into a pit on the sabbath day, will he not lay hold on it and lift it out? How much then is a man better than a sheep? Wherefore it is lawful to do well on the Sabbath day" (10 - 12).*

***Luke 13:15** - *"The Lord then said unto him O hypocrite! Doth not each one of you on the sabbath, loose an ox or an ass from the stall, and lead him away to watering?"*

***Luke 6:5 - 10; John 7:22, 23.**

D&C 119:7 - *"On this day they should refrain from unnecessary work; nevertheless, nothing should be permitted to go to waste on that day; nor should necessary work be neglected."*

SUNDAY, THE LORD'S DAY

Acts 20:7 - *"And upon the first day of the week, when the disciples came together to break bread, Paul preached unto them, ready to depart on the morrow; and continued his speech until midnight."*

1 Corinthians 16:2 - *"Upon the first day of the week let every one of you lay by him in store, as God hath prospered him, that there be no gatherings when I come."*

***Hebrews 4:4 - 9** - *"For he spake in a certain place of the seventh day the seventh on this wise, And God did rest the seventh day from all his works. And in this place again, If they harden not their hearts they shall enter into my rest. Seeing therefore it remaineth that some must enter therein, and they to whom it was first preached entered not in because of unbelief; again, he limiteth a certain day, saying in David, To - day, after so long a time; as it is said, To - day if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts. For if Jesus had given them rest, then would he not afterward have spoken of another day. There remaineth therefore a rest to the people of God."*

NOTE. The statement of Hebrews 4:8 that "another day" of rest was afterward spoken of, refers to another sabbath day rest, as shown by the preceding verses. This new sabbath appears to be meant in the term "first day of the week," as found in Matthew 28:1; Mark 16:9; Luke 24:1, and John 20:1, 19, of the King James Version. This is shown in the fact that in all five of these texts the Greek word for "week" is *sabbaton*, which literally means "sabbath," and is translated "sabbath" in more than fifty New Testament texts, including Matthew 12:1, 2, 8; Mark 1:21; 6:2; Luke 6:6; John 5: 9, and Colossians 2:16. This new first sabbath day was beyond question the day called Sunday, the day on which Jesus rose from the tomb. Professor Crossan, university instructor in Greek, and other Greek scholars state that the five texts first above cited literally mean "the first day of sabbaths" "the first sabbath day" or their equivalent. Thus do the Gospel historians point out the first sabbath day of the christian dispensation, which John (Revelation 1:10) called the Lord's day. It commemorates the triumph of the resurrection, the hope of immortality, and the promise of redemption through Christ.

Young also translates Matthew 28:1 to read: "On the eve of the Sabbath at the dawn before the first of the Sabbath came Mary," literally "the first Sabbath."

Revelation 1:10 - *"I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day, and heard behind me a great voice, as a trumpeter"*

D&C 59:2, 3 (Revelation given on Sunday, August 7, 1831) - *"And that thou mayest more fully keep thyself unspotted from the world, thou shalt go to the house of prayer and offer up thy sacraments upon my holy day; for verily this is a day appointed unto you to rest from your labors, and to pay thy devotions unto the Most High. . . Remember that on this the Lord's day, thou shalt offer thine oblations, and thy sacraments unto the Most High, confessing thy sins unto thy brethren, and before the Lord. And on this day thou shalt do none other thing, only let thy food be prepared with singleness of heart."*

D&C 68:4 - *"And the inhabitants of Zion shall also observe the sabbath day to keep it holy."*

D&C 109:7; 119:5, 6, 7.

SUNDAY, THE SABBATH OF CHRISTIANS

Ignatius, Bishop of Antioch, who lived in the days of the apostles themselves, warned early disciples:

"It is absurd to name Jesus Christ, and to Judaize. For the Christian religion did not embrace the Jewish, but the Jewish the Christian" - *Epistle to the Magnesians*, 3:11.

He also states (3:3) that they were not observing the Jewish sabbath, "but keeping the Lord's day" as his disciples.

Barnabas also states that Jewish sabbaths "are not acceptable," and declares:

"For which cause we observe the eight day with gladness, in which Jesus rose from the dead." - *Epistle of Barnabas*, 13:10

Justin Martyr, early in the second century, bears similar testimony and says:

"But Sunday is the day on which we hold our common assembly, because it is the first day on which God, when he changed the darkness and matter, made the world; and Jesus Christ our Saviour, on the same day, rose from the dead" - "First Apology," page 52, Oxford Edition.

Mosheim's Ecclesiastical History states of Sunday as the Lord's Day:

"For that this day was set apart for religious worship by the apostles themselves, and that, after the example of the church at Jerusalem, it was generally observed, we have unexceptionable testimony." - Book I, Century 1, Part 2, chapter IV, Section 4.

Even the Ebionite heretics, who still clung to Jewish sabbath and other rites, kept the Christian sabbath also, says Eusebius the historian:

"But on the other hand, they also celebrate the Lord's days very much like us, in commemoration of his resurrection." - *Ecclesiastical History*, Book III, chapter 27 (Cruse edition, page 102).

That the Emperor Constantine did not originate the keeping of Sunday, but only emphasized its sacredness, is shown by Mosheim:

"The *first day of the week* (on which Christians were accustomed to meet for the worship of God), *Constantine* required by a special law, to be observed more sacredly than before." - Book II, Century IV, Part II, chapter IV, Section 5.

However it explains this special law as follows:

“Constantine, in the year 321, required the inhabitants of cities and all mechanics to suspend their business on the Lord’s day; but he allowed such as resided in the country, full liberty to pursue their agriculture, because it was supposed necessary for them to sow their fields, and prop their vines when the weather and the season best suited.” - Footnote 9.

THE NEW COVENANT

The fact that Christians are not under the old Jewish covenant, of which the sabbath was a part (Exodus 34:27, 28) and was given solely to ancient Israel to commemorate their deliverance from Egypt (Deuteronomy 5:2, 3, 15); but are under the New Covenant of Christ with its memorial day on which he rose from the dead (Galatians 3:24, 25; 5:21 - 30; Hebrews 8:7, 8, 13), explains why the early Christians kept the immortal day and rejected that of the early Jews in his *Ecclesiastical History*, Mosheim states of the first century:

“The Christians of this century assembled for the worship of God and for their advancement in piety, on the *first day of the week*, the day on which Christ reassumed his life; for that this day was set apart for religious worship by the apostles themselves, and that, after the example of the church at Jerusalem, it was generally observed, we have unexceptionable testimony.” - Part II, chapter IV, Section 4.

Some of the testimony above referred to comes not only from the apostles, but also from men who were their associates. Ignatius, born about A.D. 40, and who was, says Chrysostom, instructed by the apostles themselves, declares:

“Wherefore if they who were brought up in these ancient laws came nevertheless to the newness of hope; no longer observing sabbaths, but keeping the Lord’s day, in which also our life is sprung up by him, and through his death, whom yet some deny: (By which mystery we have been brought to believe, and therefore wait that we may be found the disciples of Jesus Christ, our only master.) How shall we be able to live different from him; whose disciples the very prophets themselves being, did by the spirit expect him as their master.” - The *Genuine Epistles of The Apostolic Fathers* (translated by William, Lord Archbishop of Canterbury, Hartford, 1834 Edition), to the Magnesians, 3:3 - 5.

The witness of Barnabas, in the same work, agrees with Ignatius, and says of the new moons, sabbaths, and feasts:

“These things therefore hath God abolished, that the new law of our Lord Jesus Christ, which is without yoke of any such necessity, might have the spiritual offering of men themselves.” - *Epistle of Barnabas*, 2:8.

Justin Martyr, in his *Dialogue* written about A.D. 150, explicitly declares to Trypho the Jew:

“Our hope is, however, not through Moses, nor through the Law, or there would be no difference between you and ourselves; but I have read that there should hereafter be a final law, and a covenant more mighty than all others, which every one who hopes for the inheritance of God should henceforth observe. The law given at Horeb has become obsolete, and was for you Jews only, but the one of which I speak is for all men alike. A new law passed upon a law abrogates that which is old, and in like manner does a subsequent covenant annul a former one. An everlasting and

perfect law, and a faithful covenant, is given to us, even Christ, after which there shall be no other law, or ordinance, or command.” - *The Works of S. Justin the Martyr*, Oxford Edition, page 84.

The foregoing agrees with the historian, Eusebius. Of those before Abraham, and of Christians, he affirms:

“They did not, therefore, regard circumcision, nor observe the Sabbath, neither do we; neither do we abstain from certain foods, nor regard other injunctions, which Moses subsequently delivered to be observed in types and symbols, because such things as these do not belong to *Christians*.” - *Ecclesiastical History*, Book 1, chapter 4.

The Epistle of Barnabas, already mentioned, says of God’s rejection of the Jewish Sabbaths:

“Consider what he means by it; the sabbaths, says he, which ye now keep, are not acceptable unto me, but those which I have made; when, resting from all things, I shall begin the eighth day, that is, the beginning of the other world. For which cause we observe the eighth day with gladness, in which Jesus rose from the dead, and having manifested himself to his disciples, ascended into heaven.” - *General Epistle* 13:9, 10.

Mosheim’s *History*, Century II, says of views on celebrating *Easter*.

“Now the greater part of the Christians deemed it wrong to consecrate any other day than the Lord’s day in remembrance of Christ’s resurrection.” - Part II, chapter IV, Section 10.

Schaff’s *History of the Christian Church* dates it back to apostolic times:

“The first day was already in the Apostolic age honorably designated as the Lord’s day.” - Page 478. Historically we may note first a day of rest, Genesis 2:3. Second, the Jews’ Sabbath. Third, the Lord’s day, Revelation 1:10. (This is confirmed by the above. Hebrews 4:3) Our observance of the Lord’s day is commanded today (D&C 59:2, 3; 119:7).

Chapter Fifteen

THE FUTURE LIFE

(See also Chapter eight, “The Gospel of Jesus Christ,” section, Resurrection of the Dead.)

THE PROMISE OF ETERNAL LIFE

Matthew 25:47 - “And these [the wicked] shall go away into everlasting punishment: but the righteous into life eternal” (46). **John 3:16** - “For God so loved the world that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.”

John 11:25, 26 - “Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live: and whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die.”

ETERNAL LIFE (AND CONDITIONS)

Luke 18:18, 22 - “What shall I do to inherit eternal life? . . . sell all that thou hast, and distribute unto the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven, and come, follow me.”

John 17:3 - “And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.”

Romans 2:7 - “To them who by patient continuance in well doing seek for glory and honour and immortality, eternal life.”

Romans 6:23 - “For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.”

Galatians 6:8 - *“For he that soweth to his flesh shall of the flesh reap corruption; but he that soweth to the Spirit shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting.*

1 John 3:2 - *“Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be; but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.”*

1 John 3:15 - *“Whosoever hateth his brother is a murderer; and ye know that no murderer hath eternal life abiding in him.”*

1 John 5:11, 20 - *“God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. . . . This is the true God, and eternal life.”*

D&C 28:12 - *“Thus did I, the Lord God, appoint unto man the days of his probation; that by his natural death, he might be raised in immortality unto eternal life, even as many as would believe.”*

Matthew 19:16, 17; Luke 10:26; 20:36; John 4:38; *6:49, 51, 54, 68; 1 Timothy 6:12, 19; Hebrews 7:16; 1 John 1:2; *Revelation 20:6; 21:4.

D&C 10:3; 12:3; 17:5; 22:23; 76:5, 7; 85: 2.

ETERNAL LIFE PROMISED

†Genesis 6:62; Matthew 25:47; Mark 10:29; Luke 18:30; *John 3:15, 16, 36; 5:24; 10:28; 12:50; 1 John 2:25.

CAUTIONS CONCERNING ETERNAL LIFE

Matthew 18:8; Mark 9:43; *John 3:36; *5:40, 41; *6:27; 12:25; Acts 13:46; 1 Timothy 6:12.

2 Nephi 1:120; 6:74; 7:40; 13:25; Enos 1:4; Jacob 4:16; Moroni 7:47.

IMMORTALTY

2 Sam 12:23 - *“But now he is dead, wherefore should I fast? can I bring him back again? I shall go to him, but he shall not return to me.”*

Alma 9:34 - *“What is this that thou hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state, that the soul can never die?”*

2 Nephi 6:32, 36 - *“And the spirit and the body is restored to itself again, and all men become incorruptible, and immortal, and they are living souls, having a perfect knowledge like unto us, in the flesh; . . . And it shall come to pass, that when all men shall have passed from this first death unto life, insomuch as they have become immortal, they must appear before the judgment seat of the Holy One of Israel.”*

Psalms 133:3; Ecclesiastes 12:7; Daniel 12:2, 3; *Mark 12:29 - 32; Luke 20:36; 23:44, *John 6:27, 40, 47; 8:51; 11:25, 26; 1 Corinthians 15:53, 54; 2 Corinthians 5:1 - 8; *Philemon 1:22, 23; *1 Timothy 6:16; 2 Timothy 1:10. Enos 1:46; Mosiah 8:38; Alma 8:105 - 107; 3 Nephi 13:19. D&C 76: 4, 6, 7.

DEATH ABOLISHED

Proverbs 12:28 - *“In the way of righteousness . . . there is no death.*

John 5:24 - *“Believeth hath everlasting life, is passed from death unto life.”*

John 8:51 - *“Verily, verily, I say unto you, If a man keep my saying, he shall never see death.”*

Romans 8:2 - *“For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.”*

1 Corinthians 15:22 - *“In Christ all shall be made alive.”*

1 Corinthians 15:26 - *“Death shall be destroyed.”*

1 Corinthians 15:54 - *"Death is swallowed up in victory."*

2 Timothy 1:10 - *"Jesus Christ has abolished death and brought life and immortality to light through the gospel."*

1 John 3:14 - *"We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren."*

†Genesis 4:10; †6:62; †7:64, 69; †14:32; 2 Kings 2:1 ; John 11:26; Acts 2:24; Romans 6:9; *1 Corinthians 15:52, 53; Colossians 1:21, 22; Hebrews 2:15; 1 John 5:11; Revelation 21:4.

(Also see *Helps to Bible Study*, Topical Index D55, 56, 59; S570, 571.)

RIGHTEOUS CHANGED AT SECOND COMING OF CHRIST

D&C 63:13 - *"But they shall not sleep in the dust, but they shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye."*

D&C 98:5 - *"In that day an infant shall not die until he is old, and his life shall be as the age of a tree, and when he dies he shall not sleep (that is to say in the earth), but shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye, and shall be caught up, and his rest shall be glorious."*

(See Bible Study, Topical Index D55 death abolished; 56 exemption from; 57 penalty; 59 redemption from; 62 second death; 64 spiritual death; 68 of the wicked.)

D&C 85:35 (Sanctified shall not see death).

D&C 98:5 (Fear not death).

2 Nephi 6:11 - 29 (Death and the resurrection).

Mosiah 8:80, 81.

Alma 15:33, 34 (No fear of death).

Mormon 4:73 (Eternal band of death).

HEAVEN

PARADISE THE ABODE OF THE SPIRITS OF THE RIGHTEOUS

Luke 23:44 - *"And Jesus said unto him, Verily I say unto thee; Today shalt thou be with me in paradise" (43).*

John 12:26 - *"If any man serve me, let him follow me; and where I am, there shall also my servant be."*

John 13:36 - *"Jesus answered him, Whither I go, thou canst not follow me now; but thou shalt follow me afterwards."*

John 17:24 - *"Father, I will that they also, whom thou hast given me, be with me where I am; that they may behold my glory, which thou hast given me."*

2 Corinthians 5:8 - *"We are confident, I say, and willing rather to be absent from the body, and to be present with the Lord."*

2 Corinthians 12:4 - *"How that he was caught up into paradise, and heard unspeakable words, which it is not lawful for a man to utter."*

Revelation 2:7 - *"He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the tree of life, which is in the midst of the paradise of God."*

Revelation 14:13 - *"Blessed are the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth; Yea, saith the Spirit, that they may rest from their labors; and their works do follow them."*

***Luke 16:27 - 31.**

Alma 19:44 - *"And then it shall come to pass that the spirits of those who are righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise; a state of rest, a state of peace: where they shall rest from all their troubles, and from all care and sorrow."*

Moroni 10:31 - *"I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, until my spirit and my body shall again reunite."*

2 Nephi 6:31 - *"The paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous."*

3 Nephi 13:12 - 14; 4 Nephi 1:15.

GLORIES OF THE REDEEMED

Matthew 13:45 - *"Then shall the righteous shine forth as the sun, in the kingdom of their Father"(43).*

Matthew 17:1 - *"And was transfigured before them; and his face did shine as the sun, and his raiment was white as the light" (2).*

Isaiah 49:9 - *"That thou mayest say to the prisoners, Go forth; to them that are in darkness, Show yourselves."*

Isaiah 61:1 - *"He hath sent me to bind up the broken - hearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound."*

Matthew 12:34 - *"For as Jonas was three days and three nights in the whale's belly, so shall the Son of Man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth" (40).*

***Luke 4:18** - *"He hath sent me . . . to preach deliverance to the captives, and the recovering of sight to the blind; to set at liberty them who are bruised."*

Ephesians 4:9 - *"Now that he ascended, what is it but that he also descended first into the lower parts of the earth?"*

***1 Peter 3:18, 19** - *"For Christ also once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit, that he might bring us to God. For which cause also, he went and preached unto the spirits in prison."*

***1 Peter 4:6** - *"Because of this, is the gospel preached to them who are dead, that they might be judged according to men in the flesh, but live in the spirit according to the will of God."*

Acts 2:31; Revelation 1:18.

2 Nephi 6: 28, 29 - *"Wherefore, death and hell must deliver up their dead, hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies."*

1 Nephi 4:43 - 62; Alma 9:14 - 32.

D&C 85:28 - *"And after this another angel shall sound, which is the second trump, and then cometh the redemption of those who are Christ's at his coming; who have received their part in that prison which was prepared for them, that they might receive the gospel, and be judged according to men in the flesh."*

D&C 110:22 - *"Let the dead speak forth anthems of eternal praise to the King Immanuel, who hath ordained before the world was that which would enable us to redeem them out of their prisons; for the prisoners shall go free."*

D&C 36:7, 11.

†Mark 8:43 - *"He that layeth down his life for my sake and the gospel's shall come with him, and shall be clothed with his glory in the cloud, on the right hand of the Son of Man."*

***John 14:2, 3** - *"In my Father's house are many mansions; . . . And when I go, I will prepare a place for you, and come again, and receive you unto myself; that where I am, ye may be also."*

John 17:22 - *"And the glory which thou gavest me I have given them; that they may be one, even as we are one."*

***1 Corinthians 15:39 - 42** - *"All flesh is not the same flesh; but there is one kind of flesh of men, another flesh of beast, another of fishes, and another of birds. Also celestial bodies, and bodies*

terrestrial, and bodies telectial; but the glory of the celestial, one; and the terrestrial, another; and the telectial, another. There is one glory of the sun, and another glory of the moon, and another glory of the stars; for one star differeth from another star in glory. So also is the resurrection of the dead."

Philemon 3:21 - *"Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body."*

1 Peter 5:4 - *"And when the chief Shepherd shall appear, ye shall receive a crown of glory that fadeth not away."*

1 John 3:2 - *"But we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is."*

***Revelation 1: 7** - *"For behold, he cometh in the clouds with ten thousands of his saints in the kingdom, clothed with the glory of his Father."*

Revelation 1:13, 14, 15 - *"And in the midst of the seven candlesticks one like unto the Son of Man, clothed with a garment down to the foot, and girt about the paps with a golden girdle. His head and his hairs were white like wool, as white as snow; and his eyes were as a flame of fire; and his feet like unto fine brass, as if they burned in a furnace; and his voice as the sound of many waters."*

Revelation 11:18 - *"That thou shouldest give reward unto thy servants the prophets, and to the saints, and them that fear thy name, small and great."*

Psalms 17:15; 73:24; Matthew 16:30; *25:32 - 35; 2 Corinthians 3:9; 4:17; 12:2 - 4; Colossians 3:4; 1 Thessalonians 2:12.

D&C 76:5 - *"We bear record for we saw and heard, and this is the testimony . . . concerning them who come forth in the resurrection of the just; They are they who received the testimony of Jesus, and believed on his name, and were baptized after the manner of his burial . . . and this according to the commandment which he has given, that by keeping the commandments, they might be washed and cleansed from all their sins, and receive the Holy Spirit by the laying on of the hands of him who is ordained and sealed unto this power; and who overcome by faith, and are sealed by the Holy Spirit of promise. . . . These shall dwell in the presence of God and his Christ forever and ever; these are they whom he shall bring with him when he shall come in the clouds of heaven, to reign on the earth. . . . These are they whose bodies are celestial, whose glory is that of the sun, even the glory of God, the highest of all, whose glory the sun of the firmament is written of as being typical."*

D&C 76:6 - *"And, again we saw the terrestrial world. . . . These are they who died without law; and also they who are the spirits of men kept in prison, whom the Son visited and preached the gospel unto them, . . . who received not the testimony of Jesus in the flesh but afterward received it: these are they who are honorable men of the earth, who are blinded by the craftiness of men; these are they who receive of his glory but not of his fulness; these are they who receive of the presence of the Son, but not the fulness of the Father; wherefore they are bodies terrestrial, and not bodies celestial, and differ in glory as the moon differs from the sun; these are they who are not valiant in the testimony of Jesus; wherefore they obtained not the crown over the kingdom of our God."*

D&C 76:7 - *"And again, we saw the glory of the telectial, which glory is that of the lesser, even as the glory of the stars differs from that . . . of the moon. . . . These are they who received not the gospel of Christ, neither the testimony of Jesus; . . . these are they who are thrust down to hell. . . . who shall not be redeemed from the Devil, until the last resurrection, until the Lord, even Christ the Lamb, shall have finished his work. . . . As one star differs from another in glory even so differs one from another in glory in the telectial world. . . . These are they who say that they are some of one and some of another. . . . but received not the gospel, neither the testimony of Jesus. . . . They shall be servants of the Most High, but where God and Christ dwell they can not come, worlds without end."*

D&C 76:3, 4; 85:4 - 10.

CELESTIAL GLORY

†Genesis 6:62; John 17:22; *Romans 8:18; *1 Corinthians 15:40 - 42; Colossians 3:4; 1 Peter 5:1, 4, 10. D&C 76:5; 85:2, 4, 6; 98:9

TERRESTRIAL GLORY

Matthew 25:35, 42 *1 Corinthians 15:40 - 42.
D&C 76:6; 85:5, 6

TELESTIAL GLORY

1 Corinthians 15:40 - 42.
D&C 76:7; 85:5, 6

HELL

PRISON THE ABODE OF THE ANGELS WHO FELL

2 Peter 2:4 - *"For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment."*

Jude 6 - *"And the angels which kept not their estate, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day."*

†Genesis 3:4; *Luke 10:19.

HELL THE FUTURE ABODE OF THE WICKED

Psalms 9:17 - *"The wicked shall be turned into hell, and all the nations that forget God."*

Proverbs 5:11, 12 - *"And thou mourn at the last, when thy flesh and thy body are consumed, and say, How have I hated instruction, and my heart despised reproof."*

Isaiah 5:14 - *"Therefore hell hath enlarged herself and opened her mouth without measure; and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it."*

Isaiah 24:22 - *"And they shall be gathered together, as prisoners are gathered in the pit, and shall be shut up in the prison, and after many days shall they be visited."*

Ezekiel 32:18, 21 - *"Son of man, wail for the multitude of Egypt, and cast them down, even her, and the daughters of the famous nations, unto the nether parts of the earth, with them that go down into the pit. . . . The strong among the mighty shall speak to him out of the midst of hell."*

Zechariah 9:11 - *"As for thee also, by the blood of thy covenant I have sent forth thy prisoners out of the pit wherein is no water."*

Matthew 5:27 - *"Agree with thine adversary quickly, while thou art in the way with him; lest at any time thine adversary deliver thee to the judge, and the judge deliver thee to the officer, and thou be cast into prison" (25).*

Matthew 12:38 - *"And he said unto them, When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest and finding none" (43).*

*Genesis 3:4; Isaiah 14:9; Isaiah 24:21, 22; Ezekiel 26:19, 20; Luke 10:19; 16:24 - 31; Revelation 20:13 - 15.

Alma 19:47 - *"Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked; yea, in darkness, and in a state of awful, fearful, looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them."*

Alma 19:56.

THE PIT

Job 17:16; *Psalms 30:3, 9; 69:15; 88:4; 143:7; Proverbs 1:12; Isaiah 38:18; Ezekiel 26:20; 28:8; 31:14; 32:23, 24.

BOTTOMLESS PIT

Revelation 9:1, 11; 11:7 17:8; 20:1, 3.

ILLUSTRATIVE TEXTS ON HELL

Psalms 55:15 (The wicked into hell).

Ezekiel 26:20 (The low parts of the earth. Pit).

Ezek 31:16, 17 (The Pit).

Jonah 2:2 (The belly of the whale).

Matthew 5:24 (Hell - fire [9]).

Luke 16:9 (Everlasting habitations).

DEGREES IN HELL

Deuteronomy 32:22; Psalms 86:13; 88:6 (Lowest hell).

Matthew 11:24 - 26 (More tolerable for Sodom [22 - 24]).

***Matthew 23:11** (Greater punishment [141]).

Luke 12:56, 57 (Many stripes [47, 48]).

Romans 2:6; 2 Corinthians 5:10; Revelation 2:23 (According to deeds).

DURATION

†Genesis 7:44, 45 - *“Those that perish in the flood shut up until the day my chosen shall return to me.”*

2 Peter 2:4 (Fallen angels reserved to day of judgment).

Revelation 20:13 (Death and hell deliver up the dead).

Isaiah 24:22; 1 Corinthians 5:5.

D&C 18:2 (Endless punishment is God’s punishment).

D&C 76:4 (The height, depth, length, torment and end thereof).

D&C 76:7 (Whoremongers, murderers and adulterers suffer in hell yet may receive the telestial glory after they have paid the price),

CHRIST TO DELIVER THE CAPTIVES

Psalms 16:10 - *“For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.”*

Isaiah 42:7 - *“To open the blind eyes, to bring out the prisoners from the prison, and them that sit in darkness out of the prison house.”*

HELL AND EQUIVALENT TERMS

Throughout the Old Testament, the word *hell* is translated from the Hebrew word *sheol*. *Strong’s Exhaustive Concordance* defines it: *“hades or the world of the dead (as if a subterranean retreat),*

includ. its accessories and inmates: grave, hell, pit." Young's *Analytical Concordance* defines it "The unseen state."

It is translated "hell" 31 times (examples: Deuteronomy 32:22; Psalms 9:17; 18:5; Proverbs 5:5; 23:14; Isaiah 28:15; Ezek 31:16, 17; 32:21.) In 30 texts it is "grave" (such as: Genesis 37:35; Job 21:13; 24:19; Psalms 30:3; 89:48; Proverbs 1:12; Isaiah 38:10; Ezekiel 31:15); but other Hebrew words are rendered "grave" 29 times. Nor does the Am. Revised Version render *sheol* "grave," or "pit" as in the Authorized Version in Numbers 16:30, 33; and Job 17:16. Examination of these 64 texts indicates that *sheol* had a variable meaning in ancient usage.

In the New Testament, *hell* is from the Greek *geenna* (or gehenna) 11 times (as in Matthew 5:22, 29; 10:28; 18:9; 23:15, 33; Luke 12:5), meaning *valley of Hinnom*, which Strong says is "a valley of Jerus., used (fig.) as a name for the place (or state) of everlasting punishment: hell." it is from *hades* 10 times (as in Matthew 11:23; 16:18; Luke 16:23; Acts 2:27, 31; Revelation 1:18; 6:8; 20:13, 14), "*prop. unseen, i.e., 'Hades' or the place (state) of departed souls: grave, hell,*" says Strong. In 2 Peter 2:4 it is from *tartaroo*, explained by Strong to mean "to incarcerate in eternal torment: cast down to hell."

The Standard Bible Dictionary explains the significance of *sheol and hades* by saying: "The O T Sheol (Hell AV) and the N T Hades must be distinguished from the grave. . . . To what extent even consciousness was believed to continue in the state after death is uncertain. That some degree of mental activity must exist in any condition in which the distinctiveness of man is preserved goes without saying; but it is possible both to exaggerate the amount of feeling implied and to minimize it." - Article "Eschatology," pages 222, 223.

Concerning the doctrine of Jesus that future punishment awaits the wicked, we read:

"Of the duration of this punishment, all that may be said is that it is eternal (*eonian*, or age - long), just as its counterpart is eternal life for the righteous (Matthew 25:46, everlasting, AV). There is, however, an intimation of the modulation of penalty according to the amount of knowledge of the sinner (Luke 12:46, 48)." - *Ibid.*, page 225.

Robinson's *History of the Apostles Creed* shows that in post - apostolic times the belief was common among leading church teachers that Christ's soul went to hell to perform his work of salvation there. He says:

"For farther proof whereof, I might cite St. Jerome, who writes, That it was the soul of Christ which went into hell; as also Epiphinius, Ambrose, Origen, Athanasius, with many others, who all apply this action of our Saviour's to his soul alone." - Page 187, London 1702 edition.

He explains this mission of Christ as set forth by Athanasius, one of the Primitive Fathers, in his tract:

"That whilst his body lay buried in the grave, his soul went into Hell, to perform in that place those several actions and operations which were necessary for the complete redemption and salvation of mankind." - *Ibid.*, page 190.

The doctrine of the punishment of the wicked, Justin Martyr says, they had learned from Christ, and was taught by them in his day (Apol. 1, Par. 8). In his *Dialogue With Trypho the Jew*, he declares: "I affirm, that souls never perish, for this would be indeed a godsend to the wicked. What then befalls them? The souls of the good are consigned to a better place, and those of the evil and unjust to a worse, there to await the day of judgment." - Paragraph 5.

That early Christians did not invent the doctrine of a *hades is* manifest:

The idea of a *Hades* (Hebrews), known to both the Hebrews and the Greeks, was transferred to Christianity, and the assumption that the real happiness, or the final misery, of the departed did not

commence till after the general judgment and the resurrection of the body, appeared to necessitate the belief in an intermediate state." - Hagenbach's *History of Doctrines*, Section 77, page 221.

The story of the rich man and Lazarus emphasized features the Jewish ideas of *sheol* would make clear. The *Popular and Critical Bible Encyclopedia* states:

"According to the notions of the Jews, *sheol or hades* was a vast receptacle where the souls of the dead existed in a separate state until the resurrection of their bodies. The region of the blessed during this interval, or the inferior paradise, they supposed to be in the upper part of this receptacle; while beneath was the abyss or *gehenna (Tartarus)*, in which the souls of the wicked were subjected to punishment." - Article "Hades," page 747.

THE MILLENNIUM AND CHRIST'S COMING

The *Popular and Critical Bible Encyclopedia* notes two views held by Christians concerning the return of Christ. Some have concluded that he will come before the millennium and establish his reign with the Saints, including those to come forth in the first resurrection at his appearing. Others have supposed that his coming will not take place until after the millennial period at the final judgment. On this matter the opinion is expressed that:

"In either case it would seem that we are now very near the opening of the millennial period.

According to the prophecies of Daniel and the statements of the Christ this period is to follow as the next great after the four successive empires which occupy 'the times of the Gentiles.'" - Volume II, Article "Millennium," page 1163.

Of some results to be expected, the further conclusion is reached:

"But Christian intelligence will banish superstition. Idolatry will cease. Apostate churches will be reformed or destroyed. False religions will be overthrown. Enlightened governments, permeated with Christian principles, will displace tyrannies, and religious liberty will become the heritage of all the nations. This much may be expected, and such a millennium will be indescribably glorious." - Ibid., page 1166.

Aside from the Bible, one of the earliest writers on this subject was Barnabas. He held that the creative period symbolized the pre - millennial age of man, saying:

"Consider, my children, what that signifies, he finished them in six days. The meaning of it is this; that in six thousand years the Lord God will bring all things to an end. For with him one day is a thousand years, as himself testifieth, saying, Behold this day shall be as a thousand years. Therefore, children, in six days, that is, in six thousand years, shall all things be accomplished. And what is that he saith, And he rested the seventh day: he meaneth this, that when his Son shall come, and abolish the season of the Wicked One, and judge the ungodly; and shall change the sun and the moon, and the stars; then he shall gloriously rest in that seventh day." - *The General Epistle of Barnabas*, 13:4 - 6.

In his *Dialogue with Trypho*, Justin Martyr quotes considerable Scripture on this subject, and affirms:

"But I, and all other Christians whose belief is in every respect correct, know that there will be both a resurrection of the flesh, and a thousand years in Jerusalem, which will then be rebuilt, adorned, and enlarged, as the Prophets Ezekiel, Isaiah, and others declare." - Paragraph 80, page 175. (See D&C 45:3; 108:4, 5).

The Standard Bible Dictionary states that, whichever view may be correct:

"Only after his earthly work was ended and Jesus had returned as the glorified Messiah would the Kingdom be in full manifestation. Hence the promise of His second coming (Greek, Matthew 24:3,

27, 39) of which the time is concealed from all, even from the Son (Mark 13:22), but of which He gives certain signs that they may recognize it.” - Article “Eschatology,” paragraph 34.

Hagenbach’s *History of Doctrines*, Volume 1, says of early millenarian beliefs:

“The doctrine of the *Messianic Kingdom* ruled the first period. This turned upon the point that the Lord was twice to come; once in his manifestation in the flesh, and in his future coming to judgment.” - First Period, Section 27, page 74, note.

Hagenbach mentions Cerinthus, Papias, Justin, Irenaeus, Tertullian, and Cyprian, of the early church Fathers who taught the coming millennial Kingdom, and Giesler’s *Text Book of Church History* is quoted:

“In all the works of this period (the first two centuries) millenarianism is so prominent, that we can not hesitate to consider it as universal in an age, when such sensuous motives were certainly not unnecessary to animate men to suffer for Christianity.” - Section 75, footnote 6, page 215.

Buck’s *Theological Dictionary* informs us that:

“About the middle of the fourth century the Millenarians held the following tenets: 1st, That the city of Jerusalem should be rebuilt, and that the land of Judea should be the habitation of those who were to reign on the earth a thousand years. 2dly, That the first resurrection was not to be confined to the martyrs, but that, after the fall of Antichrist, all the just were to rise, and all that were on the earth were to continue for that space of time. 3dly, that Christ shall then come down from heaven, and be seen on earth, and reign there with his servants. 4thly, That the saints, during this period, shall enjoy all the delights of a terrestrial paradise.” - Article “Millennium,” page 370. Some, however, opposed the doctrine in some respects, including Origen, Dionysius, Augustine, and Eusebius. The latter viewed the texts as mystical, saying of Papias:

“The same historian also gives other accounts. . . . likewise certain strange parables of our Lord, and of his doctrine, and some other matters rather too fabulous. In these he says there would be a certain millennium after the resurrection, and that there would be a corporeal reign of Christ on this very earth; which things he appears to have imagined, as if they were authorized by the apostolic narrations, not understanding correctly those matters which they propounded mystically in their *representations*.” - *Eccleristical History*, Book III, chapter XXXIX, page 115.

Hagenbach states that after Christianity became connected with the state, the doctrine had but little support by the church, and that:

“Thus the period of Christ’s second coming, and of the destruction of the world was inevitably deferred from time to time, and it was only extraordinary events that caused men for a season to look forward to these events as nigh at hand.” - Second Period, Section 139, page 368.

THE CHANGE OF THE EARTH

†**Genesis 7:70, 72** - “*And righteousness and truth will I cause to sweep the earth as with a flood, to gather out mine own elect from the four quarters of the earth, unto a place which I shall prepare; . . . and it shall be called Zion; a New Jerusalem . . . and for the space of a thousand years shall the earth rest.*”

Isaiah 11:6 - 9 - “*The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them. And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox. And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice’s den. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.*”

Isaiah 35:1, 5 - 7, 10 - *“The wilderness and the solitary place shall be glad for them; and the desert shall rejoice, and blossom as the rose. . . . Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped. Then shall the lame man leap as a hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing; for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert. And the parched ground shall become a pool, and the thirsty land springs of water; . . . and the ransomed of the Lord shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads; they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.”*

Isaiah 65:17 - *“For, behold, I create new heavens and a new earth.”*

Isaiah 66:22 - *“For as the new heavens and the new earth, which I will make, shall remain before me, saith the Lord, so shall your seed and your name remain.”*

†**Luke 17:39, 40** - *“For verily there shall be new heavens, and a new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness. And there shall be no unclean thing; for the earth becoming old, even as a garment, having waxed in corruption, wherefore it vanisheth away.”*

***2 Peter 3:7, 12, 13** - *“But the heavens and the earth, which are now, are kept in store by the same word, reserved unto fire against the day of judgment and perdition of ungodly men. . . . Looking unto, and preparing for the day of the coming of the Lord wherein the corruptible things of the heavens being on fire, shall be dissolved, and the mountains shall melt with fervent heat? . . . And we look for new heavens, and a new earth wherein dwelleth righteousness.”*

Revelation 21:1 - *“And I saw a new heaven and a new earth; for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea.*

†**Genesis 6:43; †7:75; *Psalms 46:6; 102:25, 26; Isaiah 11:5 - 9; Daniel 12:4; * Matthew 5:7; * 13:39; * 24:32; *Acts 3:21.**

Ether 6:9 - *“And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like the old, save the old have passed away and all things have become new.”*

2 Nephi 12:87.

D&C 63:6 - *“When the earth shall be transfigured, even according to the pattern which was shown unto mine apostles upon the mount,”*

D&C 85:4 - *“Therefore, it must needs be sanctified from all unrighteousness, that it may be prepared for the celestial glory; for after it hath filled the measure of its creation, it shall be crowned with glory.”*

D&C 28:6; 36:3; 38:1; 43:7; 49:2; 56:6; 85:6, 29; 100:2.

TIMES OF RESTITUTION

Isaiah 40:3 - 5 - *“Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make straight in the desert a highway for our God. Every valley shall be exalted, and every mountain and hill shall be made low; and the crooked shall be made straight, and the rough places plain; and the glory of the Lord shall be revealed, and all flesh shall see it together; for the mouth of the Lord hath spoken it.”*

Isaiah 65:25 - *“The wolf and the lamb shall feed together, and the lion shall eat straw like the bullock; and dust shall be the serpent’s meat. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, saith the Lord.”*

Ezekiel 47:12 - *“And by the river upon the bank thereof, on this side and on that side, shall grow all trees for meat, whose leaf shall not fade, neither shall the fruit thereof be consumed.”*

Joel 2:23, 25 - *“And rejoice in the Lord your God; for he hath given you the former rain moderately. . . . And I will restore to you the years that the locust hath eaten, the cankerworm, and the caterpillar, and the palmerworm, my great army which I sent among you.”*

Habakkuk 2:14 - *“For the earth shall be filled with the knowledge of the glory of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.”*

***Acts 3:21** - *“Whom the heavens must receive until the times of restitution of all things which God hath spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the world began.”*

Revelation 22:2 - *“In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month; and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations.”*

Isaiah 1:26; 44:3; *51:3, 11; *62:4; Ezek 36:30; Amos 9:13.

THE EARTH THE INHERITANCE OF SAINTS

†Genesis 7:73 - *“And it came to pass, that Enoch saw the day of the coming of the Son of Man, in the last days, to dwell on the earth, in righteousness, for the space of a thousand years.”*

Psalms 37:11 - *“But the meek shall inherit the earth; and shall delight themselves in the abundance of peace.”*

Psalms 115:16 - *“The heaven, even the heavens, are the Lord’s; but the earth hath he given to the children of men.”*

Isaiah 65:21 - *“And they shall build houses, and inhabit them; and they shall plant vineyards, and eat the fruit of them.”*

Daniel 7:27 - *“And the kingdom and dominion, and the greatness of the kingdom under the whole heaven, shall be given to the people of the saints of the Most High, whose kingdom is an everlasting kingdom.”*

***Matthew 5:7** - *“And blessed are the meek; for they shall inherit the earth” (5).*

Revelation 5:10 - *“And hast made us unto our God kings and priests; and we shall reign on the earth.”*

Revelation 21:2, 3 - *“And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband. And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men.”*

Isaiah 45:18; *Matthew 6:11; Ephesians 1:11, 14; Revelation 20:4.

D&C 63:6 - *“He that endureth in faith and doeth my will, the same shall overcome, and shall receive an inheritance upon the earth.”*

D&C 85:6 - *“The earth abideth the law of a celestial kingdom, for it filleth the measure of its creation, and transgresseth not the law. Wherefore it shall be sanctified, . . . and the righteous shall inherit it.”*

D&C 38:4; 45:10, 59:1.

THE GREAT JUDGMENT

Alma 19:56 - *“Until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth and be reunited, both soul and body, and be brought to stand before God, and be judged according to their works.”*

THE RESTORATION OF ALL THINGS

Alma 19:57 - 59 - *“Yea, this bringeth about the restoration of those things of which have been spoken by the mouths of the prophets. The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; yea, and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; yea, even a hair of the head shall not be lost, but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame. And now my son, this is the*

restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets. And then shall the righteous shine forth in the kingdom of God."

THE BOOK OF LIFE

Exodus 32:32, 33 - *"Yet now, if thou wilt forgive their sin - ; and if not, blot me, I pray thee, out of thy book which thou hast written. And the Lord said unto Moses, Whosoever hath sinned against me, him will I blot out of my book."*

Daniel 12:1 - *"And at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book."*

Malachi 3:16, 17 - *"Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another; and the Lord hearkened, and heard it, and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name. And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them, as a man spareth his own son that serveth him."*

Philemon 4:3 - *"And with other my fellowlabourers, whose names are in the book of life."*

Revelation 3:5 - *"He that overcometh, the same shall be clothed in white raiment; and I will not blot out his name out of the book of life."*

Revelation 13:8 - *"And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world."*

Revelation 17:8 - *"And they that dwell on the earth shall wonder, whose names were not written in the book of life."*

Revelation 20:12 - *"And another book was opened, which is the book of life."*

Revelation 20: 15 - *"And whosoever was not found written in the book of life."*

Revelation 21:27 - *"And there shall in no wise enter into it anything that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh a lie; but they which are written in the Lamb's book of life."*

Revelation 22:19 - *"And if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the book of life."*

Luke 10:21.

CHILDREN LIVING IN THE MILLENNIUM

Isaiah 11:6, 8 - *"The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them. . . . And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den."*

***Isaiah 65:20** - *"In those days there shall be no more thence an infant of days, nor an old man that hath not filled his days; for the child shall not die, but shall live to be an hundred years old; but the sinner, living to be an hundred years old, shall be accursed."*

Ezekiel 37:25 - *"And they shall dwell therein, even they, and their children, and their children's children forever."*

D&C 45:10 - *"And their children shall grow up without sin unto salvation, for the Lord shall be in their midst, and his glory shall be upon them, and he will be their King and their lawgiver."*

D&C 63:13 - *"Nevertheless it is appointed to him to die at the age of man; wherefore children shall grow up until they become old, old men shall die; but they shall not sleep in the dust, but they shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye."*

D&C 98:5.

FOREVER, AND EVERLASTING, USED IN A LIMITED SENSE

Deuteronomy 15:17 - *"Thou shalt take an aul, and thrust it through his ear unto the door, and he shall be thy servant for ever."*

1 Kings 9:3 - *"I have hallowed this house, which thou hast built, to put my name there for ever."*

Ecclesiastes 1:4 - *"One generation passeth away, and another generation cometh; but the earth abideth for ever."*

Isaiah 34:10 - *"It shall not be quenched night nor day; the smoke thereof shall go up forever; from generation to generation it shall lie waste; none shall pass through it forever and ever."*

Jonah 2:1, 2, 6 - *"Then Jonah prayed unto the Lord his God out of the fish's belly, and said, . . . I went down to the bottoms of the mountains; the earth with her bars was about me forever; yet hast thou brought up my life from corruption, O Lord, my God."*

Habakkuk 3:6 - *"And the everlasting mountains were scattered, the perpetual hills did bow."*

Jude 7 - *"Even as Sodom and Gomorrah, and the cities about them in like manner, giving themselves over to fornication, and going after strange flesh, are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire."*

Alma 17:9, 10 - *"When I heard the words, If thou wilt be destroyed of thyself, seek no more to destroy the church of God, I was struck with such great fear and amazement, lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth; . . . I was racked with eternal torment."*

Alma 19:87 - *"As they were cut off from the tree of life, they should be cut off from the face of the earth, man became lost forever; yea, they became fallen man."*

Mormon 4:72, 73 - *"The death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection, which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep. . . . and they shall come forth, both small and great."*

D&C 18:1 - 3.

Chapter Sixteen

MISCELLANEOUS ITEMS

CONCERNING WAR

SOME CAUSES OF WAR

†**Genesis 6:13** - *"Satan had great dominion among men, and raged in their hearts; and from thenceforth came wars and bloodshed."*

1 Chronicles 21:1 - 7 - *"Satan stood up against Israel, and provoked David to number Israel. And David said to Joab and to the rulers of the people, Go number Israel . . . And Joab answered. . . . why will he be a cause of trespass to Israel? . . . And God was displeased with this thing; therefore he smote Israel."*

2 Chronicles 13:5 - 16 - *"Jeroboam the son of Nebat. . . rebelled against his lord. And there are gathered unto him vain men, the children of Belial, . . . God smote Jeroboam and all Israel before Abijah and Judah. And the children of Israel fled before Judah; and God delivered them into their hand."*

***Psalms 55:20, 21** - *"They have put forth their hands against such as be at peace with them; they have broken the Lord's covenant. The words of their mouth were smoother than butter, but war was in their heart. Their words were softer than oil, yet they have drawn swords."*

James 4:1 - *"From whence come wars and fightings among you? come they not hence, even of your lusts that war in your members?"*

1 Peter 2:11 - *"Dearly beloved, I beseech you as strangers and pilgrims, abstain from fleshly lusts, which war against the soul."*

MAKING OF WAR CONDEMNED

1 Chronicles 22:8 - *"The word of the Lord came to me, saying, Thou hast shed blood abundantly, and hast made great wars; thou shalt not build an house unto my name, because thou hast shed much blood."*

Psalms 68:30 - *"Rebuke the company of spearmen, scatter thou the people that delight in war."*

Psalms 120:6, 7 - *"My soul hath long dwelt with him that hateth peace. I am for peace: but when I speak, they are for war."*

Psalms 140:1, 2 - *"Preserve me from the violent man; which imagine mischiefs in their heart; continually are they gathered together for war."* ***Matthew 26:50** - *"Then said Jesus unto him, Put up again thy sword into its place; for all they that take the sword shall perish with the sword" (52).*

Revelation 13:10 - *"He that leadeth into captivity shall go into captivity! he that killeth with the sword must be killed with the sword. Here is the patience and the faith of the saints."*

WAR AS JUDGMENTS FOR SIN

Leviticus 26:23 - 25 - *"If ye will not be reformed by me by these things, but will walk contrary unto me; . . . I will bring a sword upon you, that shall avenge the quarrel of my covenant."*

Deuteronomy 28:15 - 25 - *"If thou wilt not hearken unto the voice of the Lord thy God. . . . The Lord shall smite thee with a consumption, . . . and with the sword, . . . The Lord shall cause thee to be smitten before thine enemies."*

2 Chronicles 15:3 - 6 - *"Now for a long season Israel hath been without the true God, And nation was destroyed of nation, and city of city."*

2 Chronicles 24:24 - *"The army of the Syrians came with a small company of men, and the Lord delivered a very great host into their hand, because they had forsaken the Lord God of their fathers."*

WAR COMMANDED OR JUSTIFIED BY GOD

Numbers 31:1, 4 - *"The Lord spake unto Moses, saying, Of every tribe a thousand, throughout all the tribes of Israel, shall ye send to the war."*

Deuteronomy 3:18 - *"The Lord your God hath given you this land to possess it: ye shall pass over armed before your brethren the children of Israel, all that are meet for the war."*

Deuteronomy 20:4 - *"The Lord your God is he that goeth with you, to fight for you against your enemies, to save you."*

Judges 6:16 - *"The Lord said unto him, Surely I will be with thee, and thou shalt smite the Midianites as one man."*

Revelation 17:14 - *"These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings; and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful."*

***Revelation 19:11** - *"Behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war."*

D&C 95:3, 6 - *"Renounce war and proclaim peace. . . . And if any nation, tongue, or people should proclaim war against them, they should first lift a standard of peace unto that people, nation, or tongue, and if that people will not accept the offering of peace, neither the second nor the third time, they should bring these testimonies before the Lord; then, I, the Lord, would give unto them a commandment, and justify them in going out to battle against that nation, tongue, or people."*

PROPHECIES OF WAR

†**Genesis 7:8** - *“Behold the people of Cainan which are numerous shall go forth in battle array against the people of Shum, and shall slay them, that they shall be utterly destroyed.”*

Daniel 7:21, 22 - *“I beheld, and the same horn made war with the saints, and prevailed against them, until the Ancient of days came, and judgment was given to the saints of the most High; and the time came that the saints possessed the kingdom.”*

Zechariah 14:2, 3 - *“For I will gather all nations against Jerusalem to battle; and the city shall be taken, and the houses rifled, and the women ravished; and half of the city shall go forth into captivity. . . . Then shall the Lord go forth, and fight against those nations.”*

***Matthew 24:25** - *“You also shall hear of wars, and rumors of wars; see that ye be not troubled; for all I have told you must come to pass”(6).*

Revelation 6:4 - *“And there went out another horse that was red: and power was given to him that sat thereon to take peace from the earth, and that they should kill one another: and there was given unto him a great sword.”*

***Revelation 12:6, 7** - *“And there was war in heaven; Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon and his angels fought against Michael; and the dragon prevailed not against Michael, neither the child, nor the woman which was the church of God” (7, 8).*

Revelation 16:14, 16 - *“Which go forth unto the kings of the earth and of the whole world, to gather them to the battle of that great day of God Almighty. . . . And he gathered them together into a place called in the Hebrew tongue Armageddon.”*

D&C 1:6 - *“The hour is not yet, but is nigh at hand, when peace shall be taken from the earth, and the Devil shall have power over his own dominion.”*

D&C 38:6 (Great wars in far countries).

D&C 45:4, 11 (Wars and rumors of wars in foreign countries and in your own lands).

D&C 63:9 (War decreed, and wicked shall slay the wicked).

1 Nephi 7:27, 28 (War against Israel).

2 Nephi 11:60 (Great Wars among my people).

WAR TO BE ABOLISHED

Psalms 72:2, 3, 7 - *“He shall judge thy people with righteousness. . . The mountains shall bring peace to the people, and the little hills, by righteousness. . . . In his days shall the righteous flourish; and abundance of peace so long as the moon endureth.”*

Isaiah 2:4 - *“They shall beat their swords into ploughshares, and their spears into pruning hooks; nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.”*

Isaiah 9:6, 7 - *“The government shall be upon his shoulder: . . . Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever.*

Micah 4:3 - *“And they shall beat their swords into ploughshares, and their spears into pruning - hooks; nation shall not lift up a sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.”*

Alma 21:135 - 139 (War only for defense, never give offensive).

Mormon 3:26 (Renounce war).

Psalms 46:9, 10; 68:30; Isaiah 11:9; 65:25; Hosea 2:18. Alma 14:27, 28, 34 - 41, 49, 50; 15:4, seq. 20:12.

PEACE

Psalms 37:37 - *"Mark the perfect man, and behold the upright; for the end of that man is peace."*

Proverbs 16:7 - *"When a man's ways please the Lord, he maketh even his enemies to be at peace with him."*

Romans 12:18 - *"If it be possible, as much as lieth in you, live peaceably with all men."*

Romans 14:17 - *"For the kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but righteousness, and peace, and joy in the Holy Ghost."*

Proverbs 12:20; Isaiah 32:17; Nahum 1:15; *Matthew 5:11; 10:30.

D. and C, 36:6 - *"Peace, justice, and truth is the habitation of your throne. "*

D&C 45:12 - *"A land of peace, a city of refuge, a place of safety for the saints of the most high God; and the glory of the Lord shall be there."*

D&C 95:3 - *"Renounce war and proclaim peace."*

D&C 102:11 - *"I say unto you, Sue for peace, not only the people that have smitten you, but also to all people; and lift up an ensign of peace, and make a proclamation for peace unto the ends of the earth; and make proposals for peace, unto those who have smitten you, according to the voice of the Spirit which is in you, and all things shall work together for your good."*

PEACE OF CHRIST

John 14:27 - *"Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you."*

John 16:33; Acts 10:36; Romans 5:11 1 Corinthians 1:3; 2 Corinthians 1:2; Ephesians 2:14; Colossians 1:20.

SEEK PEACE

Romans 14:19 - *"Let us therefore follow after the things which make for peace, and things wherewith one may edify another."*

Hebrews 12:14 - *"Follow peace with all men, and holiness, without which no man shall see the Lord."*

1 Peter 3:11.

Alma 14:27 - 54; 15:4, 20:12 (Nephi - Lehi would not fight).

Alma 24:74 - 76; 26:54 (Helaman's young sons, for defense only).

Alma 26:66, 101 (Not one lost).

SYMBOLISM

THE NUMBER SEVEN

Dr. Zenos, professor of ecclesiastical history, states:

"Among the Hebrews 7 became the sacred number par excellence. The sacred times of the calendar were based upon it." - *Standard Bible Dictionary*, page 592.

The week of seven days ends in rest. The seven days of Noah in the ark ended in a flood (Genesis 7:4). Seven years of plenty preceded seven years of famine (Genesis 41:1 - 3). Sprinkling of blood seven times (Lev. 4:6; 14:7). Seven animals to be sacrificed (Lev. 23:18; Numbers 23:1). Jericho encompassed seven times by seven priests with seven trumpets (Joshua 6:4). Elisha sought rain seven times (1 Kings 18:43). Naaman dipped seven times in Jordan to be clean (2 Kings 5:14). Ezekiel sees seven steps to temple (Ezekiel 40:22, 26). Seven times passed over Nebuchadnezzar (Daniel 4:25). Seven churches in Asia rebuked (Revelation 2, 3). Seven stars and seven candlesticks (Revelation 1:20). Book sealed with seven seals (Revelation 5:1). Seven angels and seven trumpets in seven periods (Revelation 8:2 - 13; 9:1 - 21; 10:1 - 7). Seven angels with seven plagues (Rev 15:1 -

8; 16:1 - 21). Many hold that the Millennium will complete seven thousand years of the earth's ages."

THE WASHING OF FEET

***John 13:4, 5, 12, 14** - *"He riseth from supper, and laid aside his garments; and took a towel, and girded himself. After that he poureth water into a basin, and he began to wash the disciples' feet, and to wipe them with the towel wherewith he was girded. . . . So after he had washed their feet, and had taken his garments, and was set down again, he said unto them, Know ye what I have done to you? . . . If I then, your Lord and Master, have washed your feet; ye also ought to wash one another's feet."*

D&C 85:45, 46 - *"Ye shall not receive any among you into this school, save he is clean from the blood of this generation; and he shall be received by the ordinance of the washing of feet, for unto this end was the ordinance of the washing of feet instituted. . . . The ordinance . . . is to be administered by the president, or the presiding elder of the church. It is to be commenced with prayer; and after partaking of bread and wine, he is to gird himself, according to the pattern given in the thirteenth chapter of John's testimony concerning me."*

SECRET COMBINATIONS

†Genesis 5:14 - 16, 35 - 37, 39 - *"And Satan said unto Cain, Swear unto me by thy throat, and if thou tell it thou shalt die; and swear thy brethren by their heads, and by the living God, that they tell it not; for if they tell it they shall surely die. . . . And Satan swear unto Cain, that he would do according to his commands. And all these things were done in secret. And Cain said, Truly I am Mahan, the master of this great secret, that I may murder and get gain. Wherefore Cain was called Master Mahan; and he gloried in his wickedness. . . . For, Lamech having entered into a covenant with Satan, after the manner of Cain, wherein he became Master Mahan, master of that great secret which was administered unto Cain by Satan; And Irad, the son of Enoch, having known their secret, began to reveal it unto the sons of Adam; wherefore, Lamech, being angry, slew him, not like unto Cain his brother Abel for the sake of getting gain; but he slew him for the oath's sake; For from the days of Cain, there was a secret combination, and their works were in the dark, and they knew every man his brother. . . . And their works were abominations, and began to spread among all the sons of men."*

2 Nephi 11:90, 93, 94 - *"And the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and have stumbled, . . . and there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil for he is the foundation of all these things, yea, the foundation of murder and works of darkness. . . . He leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever."*

Helaman 2:146 - *"They did have . . . their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do, he should not be injured. . . .by those who did belong to his band."*

Mormon 4:35 - *"And it shall come in a day when the blood of the saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness."*

Ether 3:87 - 89 - *"And it came to pass that they all swear unto him by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that . . . whoso should divulge whatsoever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life. . . . And Akish did administer unto*

them the oaths which were given by them of old, who also sought power, which had been handed down even from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning.”

Alma 17:52 - 58; Helaman 2:141 - 143, 146 - 156; 3:11 - 31; 4:12 - 14; 3 Nephi 2:7 - 12, 86 - 89; 3:31 - 41; 7:34; 4 Nephi 1:50; Ether 3:80 - 82, 83 - 102; John 18:20; Ephesians 5:11 - 13.

WHAT IS “THE ROCK” OF THE SCRIPTURES?

Deuteronomy 32:3, 4 - *“I will publish the name of the Lord; He is the Rock.” (From the Song of Moses).*

2 Samuel 22:1, 2 - *“And David spake unto the Lord the words of this song. . . . The Lord is my rock.”*

Psalms 62:1, 2 - *“Truly my soul waiteth upon God: . . . He only is my rock and my salvation.*

Matthew 16:17 - 19 - *“And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God. And Jesus answered and said unto him, Blessed art thou, Simon Bar - jona; for flesh and blood hath not revealed this unto thee, but my Father who is in heaven. And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter; and upon this rock I will build my church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it” (16 - 18).*

1 Corinthians 10:4 - *“And did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ.”*

1 Nephi 3:186 - *“And in them shall be written my gospel, saith the Lamb, and my rock and my salvation.”*

1 Nephi 4:20 - *“And then at that day, will they not rejoice and give praise unto their everlasting God, their rock and their salvation?”*

Helaman 2:74 - *“Remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your foundation.”*

D&C 10:11 - *“Build upon my rock, which is my gospel.”*

D&C 16:1 - *“The foundation of my church, my gospel, and my Rock.”*

D&C 36:10 - *“I am Messiah, the King of Zion; the rock of heaven.”*